

# International Patent Classification

2011.01

Section A

HUMAN NECESSITIES



World Intellectual Property Organization

---



## SECTION A — HUMAN NECESSITIES

### CONTENTS OF SECTION (References and notes omitted)

#### Subsection AGRICULTURE

<b>A01</b>	<b>AGRICULTURE; FORESTRY; ANIMAL HUSBANDRY; HUNTING; TRAPPING; FISHING.....</b>	<b>4</b>
A01B	Soil working in agriculture or forestry; Parts, details, or accessories of agricultural machines or implements, in general.....	4
A01C	Planting; Sowing; Fertilising.....	7
A01D	Harvesting; Mowing.....	8
A01F	Threshing; Baling of straw, hay or the like; Stationary apparatus or hand tools for forming or binding straw, hay or the like into bundles; Cutting of straw, hay or the like; Storing agricultural or horticultural produce.....	13
A01G	Horticulture; Cultivation of vegetables, flowers, rice, fruit, vines, hops, or seaweed; Forestry; Watering.....	14
A01H	New plants or processes for obtaining them; Plant reproduction by tissue culture techniques.....	16
A01J	Manufacture of dairy products.....	16
A01K	Animal husbandry; Care of birds, fishes, insects; Fishing; Rearing or breeding animals, not otherwise provided for; New breeds of animals.....	18
A01L	Shoeing of animals.....	21
A01M	Catching, trapping or scaring of animals; Apparatus for the destruction of noxious animals or noxious plants.....	21
A01N	Preservation of bodies of humans or animals or plants or parts thereof; Biocides, e.g. as disinfectants, as pesticides or as herbicides; Pest repellants or attractants; Plant growth regulators.....	23
A01P	Biocidal, pest repellant, pest attractant or plant growth regulatory activity of chemical compounds or preparations.....	28

#### Subsection FOODSTUFFS; TOBACCO

<b>A21</b>	<b>BAKING; EQUIPMENT FOR MAKING OR PROCESSING DOUGHS; DOUGHS FOR BAKING.....</b>	<b>30</b>
A21B	Bakers' ovens; Machines or equipment for baking.....	30
A21C	Machines or equipment for making or processing doughs; Handling baked articles made from dough.....	30

A21D	Treatment, e.g. preservation, of flour or dough for baking, e.g. by addition of materials; Baking; Bakery products; Preservation thereof.....	31
<b>A22</b>	<b>BUTCHERING; MEAT TREATMENT; PROCESSING POULTRY OR FISH.....</b>	<b>32</b>
A22B	Slaughtering.....	32
A22C	Processing meat, poultry, or fish.....	32
<b>A23</b>	<b>FOODS OR FOODSTUFFS; THEIR TREATMENT, NOT COVERED BY OTHER CLASSES.....</b>	<b>33</b>
A23B	Preserving, e.g. by canning, meat, fish, eggs, fruit, vegetables, edible seeds; Chemical ripening of fruit or vegetables; The preserved, ripened, or canned products.....	33
A23C	Dairy products, e.g. milk, butter, cheese; Milk or cheese substitutes; Making thereof.....	35
A23D	Edible oils or fats, e.g. margarines, shortenings, cooking oils.....	36
A23F	Coffee; Tea; Their substitutes; Manufacture, preparation, or infusion thereof.....	37
A23G	Cocoa; Cocoa products, e.g. chocolate; Substitutes for cocoa or cocoa products; Confectionery; Chewing gum; Ice-cream; Preparation thereof.....	37
A23J	Protein compositions for foodstuffs; Working-up proteins for foodstuffs; Phosphatide compositions for foodstuffs.....	39
A23K	Feeding-stuffs specially adapted for animals; Methods specially adapted for production thereof.....	40
A23L	Foods, foodstuffs, or non-alcoholic beverages, not covered by subclasses ; Their preparation or treatment, e.g. cooking, modification of nutritive qualities, physical treatment; Preservation of foods or foodstuffs, in general.....	40
A23N	Machines or apparatus for treating harvested fruit, vegetables, or flower bulbs in bulk, not otherwise provided for; Peeling vegetables or fruit in bulk; Apparatus for preparing animal feeding-stuffs.....	42
A23P	Shaping or working of foodstuffs, not fully covered by a single other subclass.....	43
<b>A24</b>	<b>TOBACCO; CIGARS; CIGARETTES; SMOKERS' REQUISITES.....</b>	<b>44</b>
A24B	Manufacture or preparation of tobacco for smoking or chewing; Tobacco; Snuff.....	44

## Section A

A24C	Machines for making cigars or cigarettes.....	45
A24D	Cigars; Cigarettes; Tobacco smoke filters; Mouthpieces for cigars or cigarettes; Manufacture of tobacco smoke filters or mouthpieces.....	45
A24F	Smokers' requisites; Match boxes.....	46

### Subsection **PERSONAL OR DOMESTIC ARTICLES**

<b>A41</b>	<b>WEARING APPAREL.....</b>	<b>48</b>
A41B	Shirts; Underwear; Baby linen; Handkerchiefs.....	48
A41C	Corsets; Brassières.....	49
A41D	Outerwear; Protective garments; Accessories.....	49
A41F	Garment fastenings; Suspenders.....	50
A41G	Artificial flowers; Wigs; Masks; Feathers.....	51
A41H	Appliances or methods for making clothes, e.g. for dress-making, for tailoring, not otherwise provided for.....	51

<b>A42</b>	<b>HEADWEAR.....</b>	<b>52</b>
A42B	Hats; Head coverings.....	52
A42C	Manufacturing or trimming hats or other head coverings.....	52

<b>A43</b>	<b>FOOTWEAR.....</b>	<b>53</b>
A43B	Characteristic features of footwear; Parts of footwear.....	53
A43C	Fastenings or attachments for footwear; Laces in general.....	55
A43D	Machines, tools, equipment or methods for manufacturing or repairing footwear.....	55

<b>A44</b>	<b>HABERDASHERY; JEWELLERY.....</b>	<b>59</b>
A44B	Buttons, pins, buckles, slide fasteners, or the like.....	59
A44C	Jewellery; Bracelets; Other personal adornments; Coins.....	60

<b>A45</b>	<b>HAND OR TRAVELLING ARTICLES.....</b>	<b>61</b>
A45B	Walking sticks; Umbrellas; Ladies' or like fans.....	61
A45C	Purses; Luggage; Hand carried bags.....	62
A45D	Hairdressing or shaving equipment; Manicuring or other cosmetic treatment.....	63
A45F	Travelling or camp equipment; Sacks or packs carried on the body.....	66

<b>A46</b>	<b>BRUSHWARE.....</b>	<b>67</b>
A46B	Brushes.....	67
A46D	Manufacture of brushes.....	68

<b>A47</b>	<b>FURNITURE; DOMESTIC ARTICLES OR APPLIANCES; COFFEE MILLS; SPICE MILLS; SUCTION CLEANERS IN GENERAL.....</b>	<b>68</b>
A47B	Tables; Desks; Office furniture; Cabinets; Drawers; General details of furniture.....	68
A47C	Chairs; Sofas; Beds.....	72
A47D	Furniture specially adapted for children.....	76
A47F	Special furniture, fittings, or accessories for shops, storehouses, bars, restaurants, or the like; Paying counters.....	77
A47G	Household or table equipment.....	78
A47H	Furnishings for windows or doors.....	81
A47J	Kitchen equipment; Coffee mills; Spice mills; Apparatus for making beverages.....	82
A47K	Sanitary equipment not otherwise provided for; Toilet accessories.....	85
A47L	Domestic washing or cleaning; Suction cleaners in general.....	87

### Subsection **HEALTH; LIFE-SAVING; AMUSEMENT**

<b>A61</b>	<b>MEDICAL OR VETERINARY SCIENCE; HYGIENE.....</b>	<b>91</b>
A61B	Diagnosis; Surgery; Identification.....	91
A61C	Dentistry; Apparatus or methods for oral or dental hygiene.....	95
A61D	Veterinary instruments, implements, tools, or methods.....	97
A61F	Filters implantable into blood vessels; Prostheses; Devices providing patency to, or preventing collapsing of, tubular structures of the body, e.g. stents; Orthopaedic, nursing or contraceptive devices; Fomentation; Treatment or protection of eyes or ears; Bandages, dressings or absorbent pads; First-aid kits.....	98
A61G	Transport, personal conveyances, or accommodation specially adapted for patients or disabled persons; Operating tables or chairs; Chairs for dentistry; Funeral devices.....	101
A61H	Physical therapy apparatus, e.g. devices for locating or stimulating reflex points in the body; Artificial respiration; Massage; Bathing devices for special therapeutic or hygienic purposes or specific parts of the body.....	103
A61J	Containers specially adapted for medical or pharmaceutical purposes; Devices or methods specially adapted for bringing pharmaceutical products into particular physical or administering forms; Devices for administering food or medicines orally; Baby comforters; Devices for receiving spittle.....	104
A61K	Preparations for medical, dental, or toilet purposes.....	105
A61L	Methods or apparatus for sterilising materials or objects in general; Disinfection, sterilisation, or deodorisation of air; Chemical aspects of bandages, dressings, absorbent pads, or surgical articles; Materials for bandages, dressings, absorbent pads, or surgical articles.....	119

A61M	Devices for introducing media into, or onto, the body; Devices for transducing body media or for taking media from the body; Devices for producing or ending sleep or stupor.....	123	<b>A63</b>	<b>SPORTS; GAMES; AMUSEMENTS.....</b>	<b>134</b>
A61N	Electrotherapy; Magnetotherapy; Radiation therapy; Ultrasound therapy.....	125	A63B	Apparatus for physical training, gymnastics, swimming, climbing, or fencing; Ball games; Training equipment.....	134
A61P	Specific therapeutic activity of chemical compounds or medicinal preparations.....	126	A63C	Skates; Skis; Roller skates; Design or layout of courts, rinks or the like.....	137
A61Q	Specific use of cosmetics or similar toilet preparations.....	129	A63D	Bowling-alleys; Bowling games; Boccia; Bowls; Bagatelle; Billiards.....	139
<b>A62</b>	<b>LIFE-SAVING; FIRE-FIGHTING.....</b>	<b>129</b>	A63F	Card, board, or roulette games; Indoor games using small moving playing bodies; Games not otherwise provided for.....	140
A62B	Devices, apparatus or methods for life-saving.....	129	A63G	Merry-go-rounds; Swings; Rocking-horses; Chutes; Switchbacks; Similar devices for public amusement.....	141
A62C	Fire-fighting.....	131	A63H	Toys, e.g. tops, dolls, hoops, building blocks.....	142
A62D	Chemical means for extinguishing fires; Processes for making harmful chemical substances harmless, or less harmful, by effecting a chemical change; Composition of materials for coverings or clothing for protecting against harmful chemical agents; Composition of materials for transparent parts of gas-masks, respirators, breathing bags or helmets; Composition of chemical materials for use in breathing apparatus.....	133	A63J	Devices for theatres, circuses, or the like; Conjuring appliances or the like.....	145
			A63K	Racing; Riding sports; Equipment or accessories therefor.....	145
			<b>A99</b>	<b>SUBJECT MATTER NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR IN THIS SECTION.....</b>	<b>146</b>
			A99Z	Subject matter not otherwise provided for in this section.....	146

## AGRICULTURE

### A01 AGRICULTURE; FORESTRY; ANIMAL HUSBANDRY; HUNTING; TRAPPING; FISHING

**A01B SOIL WORKING IN AGRICULTURE OR FORESTRY; PARTS, DETAILS, OR ACCESSORIES OF AGRICULTURAL MACHINES OR IMPLEMENTS, IN GENERAL** (making or covering furrows or holes for sowing, planting or manuring A01C 5/00; machines for harvesting root crops A01D; mowers convertible to soil working apparatus or capable of soil working A01D 42/04; mowers combined with soil working implements A01D 43/12; soil working for engineering purposes E01, E02, E21)

#### Subclass index

HAND TOOLS.....	1/00
PLOUGHS	
General construction.....	3/00, 5/00, 9/00, 11/00
Special adaptations.....	13/00, 17/00
Details.....	15/00
HARROWS	
General construction.....	19/00, 21/00
Special applications.....	25/00
Details.....	23/00
IMPLEMENTS USABLE EITHER AS PLOUGHS OR AS HARROWS OR THE LIKE.....	7/00
OTHER MACHINES.....	27/00-45/00, 49/00, 77/00
ELEMENTS OR PARTS OF MACHINES OR IMPLEMENTS.....	59/00-71/00
TRANSPORT IN AGRICULTURE.....	51/00, 73/00, 75/00
OTHER PARTS, DETAILS OR ACCESSORIES OF AGRICULTURAL MACHINES OR IMPLEMENTS..	76/00
PARTICULAR METHODS FOR WORKING SOIL.....	47/00, 79/00

- 1/00 Hand tools** (edge trimmers for lawns A01G 3/06)
- 1/02 • Spades; Shovels
  - 1/04 • • with teeth
  - 1/06 • Hoes; Hand cultivators
  - 1/08 • • with a single blade
  - 1/10 • • with two or more blades
  - 1/12 • • with blades provided with teeth
  - 1/14 • • with teeth only
  - 1/16 • Tools for uprooting weeds
  - 1/18 • • Tong-like tools
  - 1/20 • Combinations of different kinds of hand tools
  - 1/22 • Attaching the blades or the like to handles (handles for tools, or their attachment, in general B25G); Interchangeable or adjustable blades
  - 1/24 • for treating meadows or lawns [2]

#### Ploughs

- 3/00 Ploughs with fixed plough-shares**
- 3/02 • Man-driven ploughs
  - 3/04 • Animal-drawn ploughs
  - 3/06 • • without alternating possibility, i.e. incapable of making an adjacent furrow on return journey
  - 3/08 • • • Swing ploughs
  - 3/10 • • • Trussed-beam ploughs; Single-wheel ploughs
  - 3/12 • • • Two-wheel beam ploughs
  - 3/14 • • • Frame ploughs
  - 3/16 • • Alternating ploughs, i.e. capable of making an adjacent furrow on return journey
  - 3/18 • • • Turn-wrest ploughs
  - 3/20 • • • Balance ploughs

- 3/22 • • • with parallel plough units used alternately
- 3/24 • Tractor-drawn ploughs (A01B 3/04 takes precedence)
- 3/26 • • without alternating possibility
- 3/28 • • Alternating ploughs
- 3/30 • • • Turn-wrest ploughs
- 3/32 • • • Balance ploughs
- 3/34 • • • with parallel plough units used alternately
- 3/36 • Ploughs mounted on tractors
- 3/38 • • without alternating possibility
- 3/40 • • Alternating ploughs
- 3/42 • • • Turn-wrest ploughs
- 3/421 • • • • with a headstock frame made in one piece [2]
- 3/426 • • • • with a headstock frame made of two or more parts [2]
- 3/44 • • • with parallel plough units used alternately
- 3/46 • Ploughs supported partly by tractor and partly by their own wheels
- 3/50 • Self-propelled ploughs
- 3/52 • • with three or more wheels, or endless tracks
- 3/54 • • • without alternating possibility
- 3/56 • • • Alternating ploughs
- 3/58 • • with two wheels
- 3/60 • • • Alternating ploughs
- 3/62 • • • • Balance ploughs
- 3/64 • Cable ploughs; Indicating or signalling devices for cable plough systems
- 3/66 • • with motor-driven winding apparatus mounted on the plough
- 3/68 • • Cable systems with one or two engines
- 3/70 • • • Systems with one engine for working uphill

- 3/72 • • Means for anchoring the cables
- 3/74 • Use of electric power for propelling ploughs (electric current collectors B60L 5/00)
- 5/00 Ploughs with rolling non-driven tools, e.g. discs** (with rotary driven tools A01B 9/00)
  - 5/02 • drawn by animals
  - 5/04 • drawn by tractors
  - 5/06 • • without alternating possibility
  - 5/08 • • Alternating ploughs
  - 5/10 • mounted or partly-mounted on tractors
  - 5/12 • • without alternating possibility
  - 5/14 • • Alternating ploughs
  - 5/16 • Self-propelled disc or like ploughs
- 7/00 Disc-like soil-working implements usable either as ploughs or as harrows, or the like**
- 9/00 Ploughs with rotary driven tools** (tilling implements with rotary driven tools A01B 33/00)
- 11/00 Ploughs with oscillating, digging or piercing tools**
- 13/00 Ploughs or like machines for special purposes** (for drainage E02B 11/02)
  - 13/02 • for making or working ridges, e.g. with symmetrically arranged mouldboards
  - 13/04 • for working in vineyards, orchards, or the like
  - 13/06 • • Arrangements for preventing damage to the vines, or the like
  - 13/08 • for working subsoil
  - 13/10 • • Special implements for lifting subsoil layers
  - 13/12 • • • Means for distributing the layers on the surface
  - 13/14 • for working soil in two or more layers
  - 13/16 • Machines for combating erosion, e.g. basin-diggers, furrow-dammers
- 15/00 Elements, tools, or details of ploughs**
  - 15/02 • Plough blades; Fixing the blades
  - 15/04 • • Shares
  - 15/06 • • • Interchangeable or adjustable shares
  - 15/08 • • Mouldboards
  - 15/10 • • • Interchangeable or adjustable mouldboards
  - 15/12 • Beams; Handles (handles for tools or their attachment in general B25G)
  - 15/14 • Frames (means or arrangements to facilitate transportation A01B 73/00) [4]
  - 15/16 • Discs (bearings therefor A01B 71/04); Scrapers for cleaning discs; Sharpening attachments (sharpening in general B24)
  - 15/18 • Coulters
  - 15/20 • Special adjusting means for tools of ploughs drawn by, or mounted on tractors working on hillsides or slopes
- 17/00 Ploughs with special additional arrangements, e.g. means for putting manure under the soil, clod-crushers** (A01B 49/00 takes precedence; ploughs for working subsoil A01B 13/08) [2]

## **Harrows**

- 19/00 Harrows with non-rotating tools**
  - 19/02 • with tools rigidly or elastically attached to a tool-frame
  - 19/04 • • with two or more tool-frames

- 19/06 • • with tools or tool-frames moved to-and-fro mechanically
- 19/08 • with link network supporting tooth-like tools
- 19/10 • Lifting or cleaning apparatus
- 21/00 Harrows with rotary non-driven tools** (tilling implements with rotary driven tools A01B 33/00)
  - 21/02 • with tooth-like tools
  - 21/04 • • on horizontally-arranged axles
  - 21/06 • • on vertically-arranged axles
  - 21/08 • with disc-like tools
- 23/00 Elements, tools, or details of harrows**
  - 23/02 • Teeth; Fixing the teeth
  - 23/04 • Frames (means or arrangements to facilitate transportation A01B 73/00); Drawing-arrangements [4]
  - 23/06 • Discs (A01B 15/16 takes precedence; bearings therefor A01B 71/04); Scrapers for cleaning discs; Sharpening attachments (sharpening in general B24) [2]
- 25/00 Harrows with special additional arrangements, e.g. means for distributing fertilisers; Harrows for special purposes** (A01B 39/00 takes precedence)

## **Other machines for working soil**

- 27/00 Clod-crushers**
- 29/00 Rollers**
  - 29/02 • with smooth surface
  - 29/04 • with non-smooth surface formed of rotatably-mounted rings or discs or with projections or ribs on the roller body; Land packers
  - 29/06 • with special additional arrangements
- 31/00 Drags**
- 33/00 Tilling implements with rotary driven tools**
  - 33/02 • with tools on horizontal shaft transverse to direction of travel
  - 33/04 • with tools on horizontal shaft parallel to direction of travel
  - 33/06 • with tools on vertical or steeply-inclined shaft
  - 33/08 • Tools; Details, e.g. adaptations of transmissions or gearings
  - 33/10 • • Structural or functional features of the tools
  - 33/12 • • Arrangement of the tools; Screening of the tools
  - 33/14 • • Attaching the tools to the rotating shaft, e.g. resiliently-attached tools
  - 33/16 • with special additional arrangements (A01B 49/00 takes precedence; for sowing or fertilising A01B 49/06) [2]
- 35/00 Other machines for working soil** (A01B 37/00, A01B 39/00, A01B 77/00 take precedence)
  - 35/02 • with non-rotating tools
  - 35/04 • • drawn by animal or tractor
  - 35/06 • • • with spring tools
  - 35/08 • • • with rigid tools
  - 35/10 • • mounted on tractors
  - 35/12 • • • with spring tools
  - 35/14 • • • with rigid tools
  - 35/16 • with rotating or circulating non-propelled tools
  - 35/18 • with both rotating and non-rotating tools
  - 35/20 • Tools; Details

## A01B

- 35/22 • • Non-rotating tools; Mounting non-rotating tools
- 35/24 • • • Spring tools
- 35/26 • • • Rigid tools
- 35/28 • • Rotating tools; Mounting rotating tools
- 35/30 • • Undercarriages (A01B 23/04 takes precedence) [2]
- 35/32 • with special additional arrangements

### 37/00 Devices for loosening soil compacted by wheels or the like

### 39/00 Other machines specially adapted for working soil on which crops are growing

- 39/02 • with non-rotating tools
- 39/04 • • drawn by animal or tractor
- 39/06 • • Self-propelled machines
- 39/08 • with rotating tools
- 39/10 • with oscillating tools
- 39/12 • for special purposes
- 39/14 • • for working ridges
- 39/16 • • for working in vineyards, orchards, or the like
- 39/18 • • for weeding
- 39/19 • • • Rod weeders, i.e. weeder with rotary rods propelled beneath the soil surface
- 39/20 • Tools; Details
- 39/22 • • Tools; Mounting tools
- 39/24 • • Undercarriages (A01B 23/04 takes precedence) [2]
- 39/26 • • Arrangements for protecting plants
- 39/28 • with special additional arrangements (A01B 49/00 takes precedence) [2]

### 41/00 Thinning machines

- 41/02 • with oscillating tools
- 41/04 • with rotating tools
- 41/06 • with electric, e.g. photo-electric control of thinning operations

### 43/00 Gatherers for removing stones, undesirable roots or the like from the soil, e.g. tractor-drawn rakes [4]

### 45/00 Machines for treating meadows or lawns

- 45/02 • for aerating
- 45/04 • for cutting sods or turf

### 47/00 Soil-working with electric potential applied between tools and soil

### 49/00 Combined machines (auxiliary devices attached to machines of a different kind, e.g. harrows attached to ploughs, see the relevant groups for the machines)

- 49/02 • with two or more soil-working tools of different kind
- 49/04 • Combinations of soil-working tools with non-soil-working tools, e.g. planting tools
- 49/06 • • for sowing or fertilising

## Parts, details or accessories of agricultural machines or implements, in general [3]

### 51/00 Undercarriages specially adapted for mounting on various kinds of agricultural tools or apparatus (general vehicle aspects, see the relevant subclass of class B60 or B62)

- 51/02 • propelled by a motor
- 51/04 • drawn by animal or tractor

### 59/00 Devices specially adapted for connection between animals or tractors and agricultural machines or implements (A01B 63/00 takes precedence; vehicle connections in general B60D; draught assemblies for animal drawn vehicles, in general B62C 5/00) [3]

- 59/02 • for animal-drawn machines
- 59/04 • for machines pulled or pushed by a tractor
- 59/041 • • preventing or limiting side-play of implements (preventing overstrain A01B 61/00) [2]
- 59/042 • • having pulling means arranged on the rear part of the tractor
- 59/043 • • • supported at three points, e.g. by quick-release couplings (A01B 59/06 takes precedence)
- 59/044 • • having pulling means arranged on the middle part of the tractor
- 59/046 • • having pulling or pushing means arranged on the side of the tractor
- 59/048 • • having pulling or pushing means arranged on the front part of the tractor
- 59/06 • for machines mounted on tractors

### 61/00 Devices for, or parts of, agricultural machines or implements for preventing overstrain (preventing overstrain in vehicle connections, in general B60D; preventing overstrain in couplings per se F16D) [3]

- 61/02 • of the coupling devices between tractor and machine
- 61/04 • of the connection between tools and carrier beam or frame

### 63/00 Lifting or adjusting devices or arrangements for agricultural machines or implements (lifting mechanisms for the cutter-bar of a mower A01D 34/24; adjusting devices for the cutter-bar of a mower A01D 34/28; constructional features of lifting devices per se B66F) [3]

- 63/02 • for implements mounted on tractors
- 63/04 • • Hand devices; Hand devices with mechanical accumulators, e.g. springs
- 63/06 • • operated mechanically by tractor motor
- 63/08 • • operated by the movement of the tractor
- 63/10 • • operated by hydraulic or pneumatic means
- 63/102 • • • characterised by the location of the mounting on the tractor, e.g. on the rear part
- 63/104 • • • • on the middle part, i.e. between front and rear wheels
- 63/106 • • • • on the side
- 63/108 • • • • on the front part
- 63/11 • • • for controlling weight transfer between implements and tractor wheels [2]
- 63/111 • • • regulating working depth of implements
- 63/112 • • • • to control draught load, i.e. tractive force [2]
- 63/114 • • • • to achieve a constant working depth [2]
- 63/118 • • • Mounting implements on power-lift linkages (A01B 59/043 takes precedence; preventing or limiting side-play of implements A01B 59/041; preventing overstrain A01B 61/00) [2]
- 63/12 • • operated by an electric motor
- 63/14 • for implements drawn by animals or tractors
- 63/16 • • with wheels adjustable relatively to the frame
- 63/18 • • • with clutch between Z-type axle and wheel
- 63/20 • • • with gear and rack
- 63/22 • • • operated by hydraulic or pneumatic means
- 63/24 • • Tools or tool-holders adjustable relatively to the frame
- 63/26 • • • by man-power
- 63/28 • • • operated by the machine or implement



63/30	• • • operated by motor power through a mechanical transmission	71/08	• Means for protecting against dust or the like, or for cleaning agricultural implements (A01B 15/16, A01B 19/10, A01B 23/06 take precedence; screening of rotary driven tilling tools A01B 33/12; screening of rotary parts in general F16P 1/00) [2]
63/32	• • • operated by hydraulic or pneumatic means		
<b>67/00</b>	<b>Devices for controlling the tractor motor by resistance of tools</b> (preventing overstrain A01B 61/00)	<b>73/00</b>	<b>Means or arrangements to facilitate transportation of agricultural machines or implements, e.g. folding frames to reduce overall width</b> (arrangements of lifting devices for soil working implements A01B 63/00; vehicles adapted for load transportation or to transport, to carry or to comprise special loads or objects B60P; motor vehicles, trailers B62D) [4]
<b>69/00</b>	<b>Steering of agricultural machines or implements; Guiding agricultural machines or implements on a desired track [3]</b>	73/02	• Folding frames [4]
69/02	• Ridge-marking or like devices; Checkrow wires; Accessories therefor	73/04	• • foldable about a horizontal axis [4]
69/04	• Special adaptations of automatic tractor steering, e.g. electric system for contour ploughing	73/06	• • foldable about a vertical axis [4]
69/06	• Lateral steering of machines by an additional operator	<b>75/00</b>	<b>Carriers for supporting persons when working in the field, e.g. while thinning beet</b>
69/08	• Lateral steering of machines derived from the lateral movement of tractor		
<b>71/00</b>	<b>Construction or arrangement of setting or adjusting mechanisms, of implement or tool drive or of power take-off; Means for protecting parts against dust, or the like; Adapting machine elements to or for agricultural purposes</b>	<b>76/00</b>	<b>Parts, details or accessories of agricultural machines or implements, not provided for in groups A01B 51/00-A01B 75/00 [2006.01]</b>
71/02	• Setting or adjusting mechanisms	<b>77/00</b>	<b>Machines for lifting and treating soil</b> (biocides, pest repellants or attractants, plant growth regulators A01N 25/00-A01N 65/00; fertilisers C05; soil-conditioning or soil-stabilising materials C09K 17/00)
71/04	• Bearings of rotating parts, e.g. for soil-working discs (bearings in general F16C)	<b>79/00</b>	<b>Methods for working soil</b> (essentially requiring the use of particular machines, <u>see</u> the relevant groups for the machines)
71/06	• Special adaptations of coupling means between power take-off and transmission shaft to the implement or machine (couplings for transmitting rotation F16D)	79/02	• combined with other agricultural processing, e.g. fertilising, planting
<b>A01C</b>	<b>PLANTING; SOWING; FERTILISING</b> (combined with general working of soil A01B 49/04; parts, details or accessories of agricultural machines or implements, in general A01B 51/00-A01B 75/00)		

### Subclass index

#### FERTILISING

Methods.....	3/00, 21/00
Apparatus.....	3/00, 15/00, 17/00, 19/00, 23/00
WORK PREVIOUS TO SOWING OR PLANTING.....	1/00
PLANTING.....	9/00, 11/00, 13/00, 14/00
SOWING.....	7/00, 17/00, 19/00
COMMON APPARATUS.....	5/00

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Apparatus, or methods of use thereof, for testing or treating seed, roots, or the like, prior to sowing or planting</b> (chemicals therefor A01N 25/00-A01N 65/00)	3/04	• Manure loaders (loaders in general B65G)
1/02	• Germinating apparatus; Determining germination capacity of seeds or the like (germinating in preparation of malt C12C 1/027)	3/06	• Manure distributors, e.g. dung distributors
1/04	• Arranging seed on carriers, e.g. on tapes, on cords	3/08	• • for manure already laying on the soil [2]
1/06	• Coating or dressing seed	<b>5/00</b>	<b>Making or covering furrows or holes for sowing, planting, or manuring</b> (ploughs for making ridges A01B 13/02)
1/08	• Immunising seed	5/02	• Hand tools for making holes for sowing, planting or manuring (transplanting devices for trees A01G 23/02)
<b>3/00</b>	<b>Treating manure; Manuring</b> (dung forks A01D 9/00; organic fertilisers from waste or refuse C05F)	5/04	• Machines for making or covering holes for sowing or planting
3/02	• Storage places for manure, e.g. cisterns for liquid manure; Installations for fermenting manure (sewerage structures E03F 5/00; silos, bunkers E04H 7/22)	5/06	• Machines for making or covering drills or furrows for sowing or planting
		5/08	• Machines for both manuring and sowing or both manuring and planting

## A01C

<b>7/00</b>	<b>Sowing</b> (arrangements for driving working parts A01C 19/00)	<b>15/00</b>	<b>Fertiliser distributors</b> (A01C 7/06 takes precedence; with centrifugal wheels A01C 17/00; arrangements for driving working parts A01C 19/00; sand, gravel or salt spreaders for roads E01C 19/20) [2]
7/02	• Hand sowing implements	15/02	• for hand use
7/04	• Single-grain seeders with or without suction devices	15/04	• using blowers
7/06	• Seeders combined with fertilising apparatus (combinations with soil working tools A01B 49/04)	15/06	• with distributing slots
7/08	• Broadcast seeders; Seeders depositing seeds in rows	15/08	• • with pushers or stirrers in the slots
7/10	• • Devices for adjusting the seed-box	15/10	• • • with reciprocating pushers
7/12	• • Seeders with feeding-wheels	15/12	• with movable parts of the receptacle
7/14	• • • Seeders with spoon or bucket wheels	15/14	• with means for lifting out the fertiliser
7/16	• • Seeders with other distributing devices, e.g. brushes, discs, screws, slides (with endless chains A01C 15/18)	15/16	• with means for pushing out the fertiliser, e.g. by a roller
7/18	• Machines for depositing quantities of seed at intervals	15/18	• with endless chains
7/20	• Parts of seeders for conducting and depositing seed	<b>17/00</b>	<b>Fertilisers or seeders with centrifugal wheels</b> (mechanical throwing machines for articles or solid bulk materials, in general B65G 31/00; sand, gravel, or salt spreaders E01C 19/20) [3]
<b>9/00</b>	<b>Potato planters</b> (combinations with soil-working A01B 49/04)	<b>19/00</b>	<b>Arrangements for driving working parts of fertilisers or seeders</b> [4]
9/02	• with conveyer belts	19/02	• by a motor [4]
9/04	• with bucket wheels	19/04	• by a ground-engaging wheel [4]
9/06	• with piercing or grasping devices		
9/08	• with other distributing devices, e.g. flaps, screws, horizontal turning plates	<b>21/00</b>	<b>Methods of fertilising</b> (fertilisers C05; soil-conditioning or soil-stabilising materials C09K 17/00)
<b>11/00</b>	<b>Transplanting machines</b> (carriers for supporting persons A01B 75/00; transplanting devices for trees A01G 23/02)	<b>23/00</b>	<b>Distributing devices specially adapted for liquid manure or other fertilising liquid, including ammonia, e.g. transport tanks, sprinkling wagons</b> (watering fields in general A01G 25/00; spraying or applying liquids or other fluent materials in general B05)
11/02	• for seedlings	23/02	• Special arrangements for delivering the liquid directly into the soil
11/04	• for deeper setting or shifting of plants	23/04	• Distributing under pressure; Distributing mud; Adaptation of watering systems for fertilising-liquids
<b>13/00</b>	<b>Machines or apparatus for consolidating soil around plants</b>		
<b>14/00</b>	<b>Methods or apparatus for planting not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]</b>		

## A01D HARVESTING; MOWING

### Note(s)

This subclass covers the shredding or pulverising of stubble, e.g. for the purpose of producing mulch, but does not cover other mechanical destruction of unwanted vegetation, which is covered by group A01M 21/02.

### Subclass index

#### HAND IMPLEMENTS

Cutting implements, rakes, forks, others.....	1/00, 7/00, 9/00, 11/00
Accessories.....	3/00, 5/00

#### MACHINES FOR HARVESTING ROOT CROPS

Diggers.....	13/00-19/00, 27/00
Topping.....	23/00, 27/00
For specific products.....	13/00, 21/00, 25/00, 29/00
Other machines.....	31/00
Accessories.....	33/00

#### HARVESTING OR MOWING CEREALS OR GRASS

Harvesters or mowers.....	34/00, 37/00, 41/00, 42/00, 43/00
Binders.....	37/00, 39/00
Headers.....	47/00
For specific products.....	44/00, 45/00
Components.....	57/00-69/00
Accessories.....	75/00, 85/00

#### HAYMAKERS..... 76/00-84/00

#### HARVESTING OTHER CROPS

Underwater plants.....	44/00
Standing crops.....	45/00

Picking or gathering fruits, vegetables, or the like.....	46/00, 51/00
GATHERING, LOADING, TRANSPORT.....	51/00, 85/00-90/00
GENERAL METHODS.....	91/00

### **Hand implements**

#### **1/00 Hand-cutting implements for harvesting** (devices for picking apples or like fruits A01D 46/24; hedge trimming means A01G 3/04)

- 1/02 • Scythes
- 1/04 • Sickles
- 1/06 • Knives
- 1/08 • Attaching means for blades
- 1/10 • • with fastening by means of eccentric levers
- 1/12 • • with blades adjustable in several ways
- 1/14 • Handles; Accessories, e.g. scythe baskets, safety devices

#### **3/00 Non-abrasive sharpening devices for scythes, sickles, or the like**

- 3/02 • with percussive tools
- 3/04 • with pressing jaws
- 3/06 • with pressing rollers or pressing discs
- 3/08 • Details, e.g. scythe anvils, scythe guides

#### **5/00 Containers for whetstones for use during harvesting**

#### **7/00 Rakes** (mowers convertible to rakes or capable of raking A01D 42/02; mowers combined with rakes A01D 43/02)

- 7/02 • with tines rigidly connected to the rake-bar
- 7/04 • with adjustable rake-bar
- 7/06 • with tines specially shaped or attached
- 7/08 • with exchangeable tines
- 7/10 • combined with strippers, grippers, or the like

#### **9/00 Forks**

- 9/02 • with tines rigidly connected to the handle
- 9/04 • with exchangeable tines
- 9/06 • combined with strippers, grippers, or the like

#### **11/00 Other hand implements** (devices for picking apples or like fruits A01D 46/24)

- 11/02 • for lifting or cropping beet, potatoes, or other root crops
- 11/04 • for handling root crops, e.g. shovels, fork-like shovels
- 11/06 • Combined implements, e.g. fork and rake

### **Machines for harvesting root crops**

#### **13/00 Diggers, e.g. potato ploughs**

#### **15/00 Digging machines with sieve graters but without conveying mechanisms**

- 15/02 • with rigid graters
- 15/04 • with moving or vibrating graters

#### **17/00 Digging machines with sieving and conveying mechanisms**

- 17/02 • with conveyers arranged above the sieving device
- 17/04 • with conveyers arranged below the sieving device
- 17/06 • with rollers or disc screens

- 17/08 • with shaker type screens
- 17/10 • with smooth conveyer belts, lath bands, or rake bands
- 17/12 • with bucket conveyers
- 17/14 • with cylindrical screens
- 17/16 • • with a conveyer spiral
- 17/18 • • without a conveyer spiral
- 17/20 • • with several co-operating screens
- 17/22 • • with several co-operating sifter bands

#### **19/00 Digging machines with centrifugal wheels, drums, or spinners**

- 19/02 • with working tools rotating around a horizontal axis arranged transverse to the direction of travel
- 19/04 • with working tools rotating around a horizontal axis arranged parallel to the direction of travel
- 19/06 • • with scoop wheels or drums
- 19/08 • • with scoop tine chains
- 19/10 • • with receiving screens; Implements for depositing the root crops
- 19/12 • with working tools arranged on an approximately vertical axis
- 19/14 • • with one screening wheel
- 19/16 • • with several screening wheels
- 19/18 • • with screen tine chains

#### **21/00 Digging machines with potato-picking implements**

- 21/02 • with picking tools moved up-and-down
- 21/04 • with rotating picking tools

#### **23/00 Topping machines**

- 23/02 • cutting the tops before being lifted
- 23/04 • cutting the tops after being lifted
- 23/06 • with collecting and depositing devices for the tops; Devices for protecting the tops against damage

#### **25/00 Lifters for beet or like crops**

- 25/02 • Machines with rigid tools
- 25/04 • Machines with moving or rotating tools

#### **27/00 Machines with both topping and lifting mechanisms**

- 27/02 • with rigid tools
- 27/04 • with moving or rotating tools

#### **29/00 Harvesters for peanuts**

#### **31/00 Other digging harvesters**

- 31/02 • combined with other agricultural machines, e.g. drilling, planting, hay-harvesting machines

#### **33/00 Accessories for digging harvesters**

- 33/02 • Foliage-separating mechanisms
- 33/04 • Stone-separating mechanisms
- 33/06 • Haulm-cutting mechanisms
- 33/08 • Special sorting and cleaning mechanisms
- 33/10 • Crop collecting devices, with or without weighing apparatus
- 33/12 • Driving mechanisms, with or without motor
- 33/14 • Lifting or lowering mechanisms for the tools

**Harvesters or mowers for grass, cereals or other crops**

**34/00 Mowers** (combined with apparatus performing additional operations while mowing A01D 37/00-A01D 41/00, A01D 43/00; convertible to apparatus for purposes other than mowing or capable of performing operations other than mowing A01D 42/00); **Mowing apparatus of harvesters** [4]

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

In this group, it is desirable to add the indexing code of group A01D 101/00, relating to the use of mowers.

- 34/01 • characterised by features relating to the type of cutting apparatus [7]
- 34/02 • • having reciprocating cutters [4, 7]
- 34/03 • • • mounted on a vehicle, e.g. a tractor, or drawn by an animal or a vehicle [4]
- 34/04 • • • • with cutters at the front [4]
- 34/06 • • • • with cutters at the side [4]
- 34/07 • • • • with cutters at the back [4]
- 34/08 • • • hand-guided by a walking operator [4, 7]
- 34/10 • • • • with motor driven cutters or wheels [4]
- 34/125 • • • with means for discharging mown material (A01D 57/26-A01D 57/30 take precedence; combined with means for gathering or loading mown material A01D 43/06) [7]
- 34/13 • • • Cutting apparatus [4]
- 34/135 • • • • having oppositely movable cooperating knife-bars [7]
- 34/14 • • • • Knife-bars [4]
- 34/16 • • • • Guides for the knife-bar in the ledger-plate [4]
- 34/17 • • • • Holding-down devices for the knife [4]
- 34/18 • • • • Guard fingers; Ledger-plates [4]
- 34/20 • • • • Ledger-plate bars [4]
- 34/22 • • • • Shoes therefor [4]
- 34/23 • • • • with additional vertical cutter-bar [4]
- 34/24 • • • Lifting devices for the cutter-bar [4]
- 34/26 • • • • manually actuated [4]
- 34/27 • • • • Devices for disengaging the knife-driving mechanisms during the lifting of the cutter-bar [4]
- 34/28 • • • Adjusting devices for the cutter-bar [4]
- 34/30 • • • Driving mechanisms for the cutters [4]
- 34/32 • • • • Connecting-rods for knife-driving mechanisms [4]
- 34/33 • • • • • Devices for connecting the rod to the knife-bar [4]
- 34/34 • • • • • Devices for connecting the rod to the crank-pin of the driving mechanism [4]
- 34/36 • • • • actuated by advance of the machine [4]
- 34/37 • • • • electric [4]
- 34/38 • • • • fluid [4]
- 34/40 • • • Other details [4]
- 34/404 • • having cutters driven to oscillate in a horizontal plane [7]
- 34/408 • • • and cooperating with counter-cutters [7]
- 34/412 • • having rotating cutters [7]
- 34/416 • • • Flexible line cutters [7]
- 34/42 • • • having cutters rotating about a horizontal axis, e.g. cutting-cylinders [4, 7]
- 34/43 • • • • mounted on a vehicle, e.g. a tractor, or drawn by an animal or a vehicle [4]
- 34/44 • • • • • with two or more cutters [4]
- 34/46 • • • • hand-guided by a walking operator [4, 7]
- 34/47 • • • • • with motor driven cutters or wheels [4]

- 34/49 • • • • with means for discharging mown material (A01D 57/26-A01D 57/30 take precedence; combined with means for gathering or loading mown material A01D 43/06) [7]
- 34/52 • • • • Cutting apparatus [4]
- 34/53 • • • • • Helically shaped cutting members [4]
- 34/535 • • • • • with cutting members pivotally attached to the rotating axle, e.g. flails [7]
- 34/54 • • • • Cutting-height adjustment [4]
- 34/56 • • • • Driving mechanisms for the cutters [4]
- 34/57 • • • • • actuated by advance of the machine [4]
- 34/58 • • • • • electric [4]
- 34/60 • • • • • fluid [4]
- 34/62 • • • • Other details [4]
- 34/63 • • • having cutters rotating about a vertical axis [4, 7]
- 34/64 • • • • mounted on a vehicle, e.g. a tractor, or drawn by an animal or a vehicle (A01D 34/695 takes precedence) [4, 7]
- 34/66 • • • • • with two or more cutters [4]
- 34/67 • • • • hand-guided by a walking operator [4, 7]
- 34/68 • • • • • with motor driven cutters or wheels [4]
- 34/685 • • • • • with two or more cutters [7]
- 34/69 • • • • • with motor driven wheels [7]
- 34/695 • • • • supported by an air cushion [7]
- 34/71 • • • • with means for discharging mown material (A01D 57/26-A01D 57/30 take precedence; combined with means for gathering or loading mown material A01D 43/06) [7]
- 34/73 • • • • Cutting apparatus [4]
- 34/74 • • • • Cutting-height adjustment [4]
- 34/76 • • • • Driving mechanisms for the cutters [4]
- 34/77 • • • • • actuated by advance of the machine [4]
- 34/78 • • • • • electric [4]
- 34/80 • • • • • fluid [4]
- 34/81 • • • • Casings; Housings (A01D 34/71 takes precedence) [7]
- 34/82 • • • • Other details [4]
- 34/83 • • having cutting members on endless belts or sprocket chains [4]
- 34/835 • specially adapted for particular purposes [7]
- 34/84 • • for edges of lawns or fields, e.g. for mowing close to trees or walls (edge trimmers A01G 3/00) [4]
- 34/86 • • for use on sloping ground, e.g. on embankments (undercarriages or frames specially adapted for harvesters or mowers A01D 67/00; control mechanisms for harvesters or mowers when moving on slopes A01D 75/28) [4, 7]
- 34/90 • • for carrying by the operator [7]
- 37/00 Reaper-binders** (equipment thereon for binding harvested or mown produce, e.g. knotters, A01D 59/00)
- 37/02 • with receiving platform and binding apparatus but without elevating canvases
- 37/04 • conveying the stalks in vertical position
- 37/06 • binding with stalks or straw bands
- 39/00 Independent binders, e.g. for hay; Binders attachable to mowers** (equipment thereon for binding harvested or mown produce, e.g. knotters, A01D 59/00; stationary apparatus or hand tools for forming or binding straw or hay into bundles A01F 1/00)
- 41/00 Combines, i.e. harvesters or mowers combined with threshing devices**
- 41/02 • Self-propelled combines

- 41/04 • Tractor-driven combines
- 41/06 • Combines with headers
- 41/08 • Combines which thresh before the stalk is cut
- 41/10 • Field threshers with windrow pick-up apparatus
- 41/12 • Details of combines
- 41/127 • • Control or measuring arrangements specially adapted for combines [7]
- 41/133 • • Drying devices [7]
- 41/14 • • Mowing tables [2]
- 41/16 • • • Devices for coupling mowing tables to conveyers [7]

**42/00 Mowers convertible to apparatus for purposes other than mowing; Mowers capable of performing operations other than mowing** (mowers combined with apparatus performing additional operations while mowing A01D 43/00) [7]

- 42/02 • Raking [7]
- 42/04 • Soil working [7]
- 42/06 • Sweeping or cleaning lawns or other surfaces [7]
- 42/08 • • Sweeping snow [7]

**43/00 Mowers combined with apparatus performing additional operations while mowing** (A01D 37/00, A01D 39/00, A01D 41/00 take precedence) [3]

- 43/02 • with rakes
- 43/04 • with haymakers, e.g. tedders
- 43/06 • with means for collecting, gathering or loading mown material [1, 7]
- 43/063 • • in or into a container carried by the mower; Containers therefor (A01D 43/077 takes precedence) [7]
- 43/07 • • in or into a trailer (A01D 43/077 takes precedence) [7]
- 43/073 • • • with controllable discharge spout [7]
- 43/077 • • with auxiliary means, e.g. fans, for transporting the mown crop [7]
- 43/08 • with means for cutting up the mown crop
- 43/10 • with means for crushing or bruising the mown crop
- 43/12 • with soil-working implements, e.g. ploughs
- 43/14 • with dispensing apparatus, e.g. for fertilisers, herbicides or preservatives [7]
- 43/16 • with lawn edgers [7]

**44/00 Harvesting of underwater plants, e.g. harvesting of seaweed** [2]

- 44/02 • of laver [2]

**45/00 Harvesting of standing crops** (A01D 44/00 takes precedence; threshing machines adapted for special crops, threshing devices for combines adapted for special crops A01F 11/00) [2]

- 45/02 • of maize
- 45/04 • of rice
- 45/06 • of flax
- 45/10 • of sugar cane
- 45/16 • of tobacco
- 45/22 • of beans
- 45/24 • of peas
- 45/26 • of cabbage or lettuce [2]
- 45/28 • of spinach
- 45/30 • of grass-seeds or like seeds

**46/00 Picking of fruits, vegetables, hops, or the like; Devices for shaking trees or shrubs** [2, 3]

**Note(s)**

Group A01D 46/30 takes precedence over groups A01D 46/02-A01D 46/28

- 46/02 • of hops [2]
- 46/04 • of tea [2]
- 46/06 • of coffee [2]
- 46/08 • of cotton [2]
- 46/10 • • pneumatically [2]
- 46/12 • • using boll-from-plant strippers [2]
- 46/14 • • using lint-from-plant pickers [2]
- 46/16 • • • using rotary or oscillating spindles [2]
- 46/18 • • • • mounted on rotary carrier [2]
- 46/20 • Platforms with lifting and lowering devices [2]
- 46/22 • Baskets or bags attachable to the picker [2]
- 46/24 • Devices for picking apples or like fruit (A01D 46/26 takes precedence) [2, 7]
- 46/247 • • Manually operated fruit-picking tools (A01D 46/253 takes precedence) [7]
- 46/253 • • Portable motorised fruit pickers [7]
- 46/26 • Devices for shaking trees or shrubs; Fruit catching devices to be used therewith (A01D 46/28 takes precedence) [3, 7]
- 46/28 • Vintaging machines, i.e. grape harvesting machines [3]
- 46/30 • Robotic devices for individually picking crops [7]

**47/00 Headers**

**51/00 Apparatus for gathering together crops spread on the soil, e.g. apples, beets, nuts, potatoes**

**Components of harvesters or mowers for grass or cereals** [7]

**57/00 Delivering mechanisms for harvesters or mowers**

- 57/01 • Devices for leading crops to the mowing apparatus [7]
- 57/02 • • using reels
- 57/03 • • • with supplementary controlled movement of the crop-engaging members, e.g. of the tines [3]
- 57/04 • • • Arrangements for changing the position of the reels
- 57/05 • • • Detachable reels for converting a mower into a harvester [7]
- 57/06 • • using endless conveyers
- 57/08 • • using swinging rakes
- 57/10 • • using fans
- 57/12 • Rotating rakes
- 57/14 • Single-platform rakes
- 57/16 • Tilting tables
- 57/18 • Bunching devices, e.g. with tipping bars
- 57/20 • with conveyer belts
- 57/22 • for standing stalks
- 57/24 • Grass-boards
- 57/26 • Plates arranged behind the cutter-bar for guiding the cut grass or straw
- 57/28 • Windrower attachments with tines
- 57/30 • Rotating attachments for forming windrows

**59/00 Equipment for binding harvested or mown produce** (specially adapted for baling presses A01F 15/14)

- 59/02 • Packers
- 59/04 • Knotters
- 59/06 • Needles
- 59/08 • Discharge arms
- 59/10 • Devices for separating cohering sheaves

## A01D

59/12	• Containers for the twine		
59/14	• Sheaf counters		
<b>61/00</b>	<b>Elevators or conveyers for binders or combines</b>		
61/02	• Endless belts		
61/04	• Chains		
<b>63/00</b>	<b>Outside dividers</b>		
63/02	• Rotating dividers		
63/04	• Non-rotating dividers		
<b>65/00</b>	<b>Grain-crop lifters</b>		
65/02	• Lifting fingers		
65/04	• with revolving staffs		
65/06	• Lifting devices arranged on the inner side of the cutter-bar		
65/08	• Guard attachments for the wheels		
<b>67/00</b>	<b>Undercarriages or frames specially adapted for harvesters or mowers</b> (coupling arrangements between animal or tractor and harvester or mower A01B 59/00); <b>Mechanisms for adjusting the frame</b> (adjusting devices for the cutter-bar A01D 34/28); <b>Platforms</b> [3]		
67/02	• Protection against weather		
67/04	• Seats		
<b>69/00</b>	<b>Driving mechanisms or parts thereof for harvesters or mowers</b> (driving mechanisms for the cutters of mowers or harvesters A01D 34/00)		
69/02	• electric		
69/03	• fluid [4]		
69/06	• Gearings		
69/08	• Clutches		
69/10	• Brakes		
69/12	• Lubrication		
<hr/>			
<b>75/00</b>	<b>Accessories for harvesters or mowers</b>		
75/02	• Implements for collecting grain crop		
75/04	• Sheaf carriers		
75/06	• Sheaf shockers or stookers		
75/08	• Sharpening apparatus fixed to the harvester or mower		
75/10	• Devices for reconditioning the knife-bar, e.g. removing the knife from its backing		
75/12	• Instruments for removing the knife-bar from the cutter		
75/16	• Implements for laying-out bands for sheaves		
75/18	• Safety devices for parts of the machines		
75/20	• Devices for protecting men or animals		
75/24	• Special devices for harvesters or mowers drawn by animals		
75/26	• Front trucks; Axle-pivot steering of front trucks		
75/28	• Control mechanisms for harvesters or mowers when moving on slopes; Devices preventing lateral pull		
75/30	• Arrangements for trailing two or more harvesters or mowers		
<hr/>			
<b>76/00</b>	<b>Haymakers with tines that are stationary with respect to the machine during operation but that may be liftable for dumping</b> (haymakers combined with mowers A01D 43/04) [3]		
<b>78/00</b>	<b>Haymakers with tines moving with respect to the machine</b> (haymakers combined with mowers A01D 43/04) [3]		
78/02	• with tine-carrying bars or equivalent members which interconnect heads rotating about horizontal axes, e.g. of rotary-drum type [3]		
78/04	• • the tine-carrying members moving obliquely or at right angles to the direction of travel of the machine [3]		
78/06	• with tine-carrying endless chains or belts [3]		
78/08	• with tine-carrying rotary heads or wheels [3]		
78/10	• • the tines rotating about a substantially vertical axis [3]		
78/12	• • • the tines having an additional movement superimposed upon their rotary movement [3]		
78/14	• • the tines rotating about a substantially horizontal axis [3]		
78/16	• • • with positive drive of the heads or wheels [3]		
78/18	• of the reciprocating tine type [3]		
78/20	• • the tines reciprocating in a direction parallel to the direction of travel of the machine [3]		
<b>80/00</b>	<b>Parts or details of haymakers</b> (parts or details specific for one type of machine, <u>see</u> the relevant groups for these machines) [3]		
80/02	• Tines; Attachment of tines [3]		
<b>82/00</b>	<b>Crop conditioners, i.e. machines for crushing or bruising stalks</b> (mowers combined with means for crushing or bruising the mown crop A01D 43/10) [3]		
82/02	• Rollers for crop conditioners [6]		
<b>84/00</b>	<b>Haymakers not provided for in a single one of groups A01D 76/00-A01D 82/00</b> (haymakers combined with mowers A01D 43/04)		
84/02	• with flexible tools [6]		
<hr/>			
<b>85/00</b>	<b>Arrangements for making or setting stacks</b>		
<b>87/00</b>	<b>Loaders for hay or like field crops</b> (combined with mowers A01D 43/06)		
87/02	• with conveyer belts		
87/04	• • with rakes feeding the crop to the conveyer		
87/06	• with oscillating or reciprocating rake-bars		
87/08	• with sweep rakes		
87/10	• with blowers		
87/12	• Loaders for sheaves, stacks, or bales		
<b>89/00</b>	<b>Pick-ups for loaders, chaff-cutters, balers, field-threshers, or the like</b>		
<b>90/00</b>	<b>Vehicles for carrying harvested crops with means for selfloading or unloading</b> (combined with mowers A01D 43/06) [2]		
90/02	• Loading means [2]		
90/04	• • with additional cutting means [2]		

### Haymakers; Crop conditioners [3]

#### Note(s)

- In groups A01D 76/00-A01D 87/00, the following terms are used with the meanings indicated:
- "hay" includes all mown forage crop in a dry or partially dry state;

- 90/06 • • • with chaff-cutters used as loading and cutting means (A01D 43/08 takes precedence) [2]
- 90/08 • • with bale-forming means additionally used for loading; with means for picking-up bales and transporting them into the vehicle [2]
- 90/10 • Unloading means [2]
- 90/12 • with additional devices or implements (arrangements of coupling devices, A01B 59/00) [2]
- 90/14 • Adaptations of gearing for driving, loading or unloading means [2]
- 90/16 • self-propelled [2]

- 91/00 Methods for harvesting agricultural products** (essentially requiring the use of particular machines, see the relevant groups for the machines)
- 91/02 • Products growing in the soil
  - 91/04 • Products growing above the soil (fruit, hops A01D 46/00)
- 93/00 Harvesting apparatus not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2009.01]**

**Indexing scheme associated with group A01D 34/00, relating to the use of mowers. [6]**

**101/00 Lawn-mowers [6]**

**A01F THRESHING** (combines A01D 41/00); **BALING OF STRAW, HAY OR THE LIKE; STATIONARY APPARATUS OR HAND TOOLS FOR FORMING OR BINDING STRAW, HAY OR THE LIKE INTO BUNDLES; CUTTING OF STRAW, HAY OR THE LIKE; STORING AGRICULTURAL OR HORTICULTURAL PRODUCE** (arrangements for making or setting stacks in connection with harvesting A01D 85/00)

**Subclass index**

**THRESHING**

Functional types of apparatus.....	5/00, 7/00
Special applications.....	11/00
Details.....	12/00
BALING OF STRAW, HAY OR THE LIKE.....	1/00, 13/00, 15/00
ACCESSORIES FOR THRESHING MACHINES OR BALING PRESSES.....	17/00, 19/00, 21/00
STORING AGRICULTURAL OR HORTICULTURAL PRODUCE.....	25/00
MACHINES OR IMPLEMENTS FOR CUTTING STRAW, HAY OR THE LIKE.....	3/00, 29/00

**1/00 Stationary apparatus or hand tools for forming or binding straw, hay or the like into bundles** (baling apparatus or presses A01F 13/00, A01F 15/00; mobile binders for use in the field A01D 37/00, A01D 39/00) [3]

- 1/02 • Hand-operated tools
- 1/04 • Fastening or tying devices
- 1/06 • Ties for bundles

**3/00 Hand-operated implements for cutting-up straw, hay or the like** (mechanically-driven straw cutters A01F 29/00)

**Threshing**

**5/00 Hand-operated implements for threshing**

**7/00 Threshing apparatus**

- 7/02 • with rotating tools (threshing cylinders or concaves A01F 12/18)
- 7/04 • • with axles transverse to the feeding direction
- 7/06 • • with axles in line with the feeding direction
- 7/70 • with flails [2010.01]

**11/00 Threshing apparatus specially adapted for maize; Threshing apparatus specially adapted for particular crops other than cereals**

- 11/02 • for flax
- 11/04 • for clover or like seeds, e.g. lucern
- 11/06 • for maize, e.g. removing kernels from cobs
- 11/08 • for palm fruit, e.g. releasing the fruit from the stalk

**12/00 Parts or details of threshing apparatus** (devices, other than safety devices for feeders, for protecting human beings A01D 75/20, A01F 21/00)

- 12/10 • Feeders
- 12/12 • • without band-cutters
- 12/14 • • with band-cutters
- 12/16 • • Safety devices
- 12/18 • Threshing devices
- 12/20 • • Threshing cylinders with ribs
- 12/22 • • Threshing cylinders with teeth
- 12/24 • • One-part threshing concaves
- 12/26 • • Multi-part threshing concaves
- 12/28 • • Devices for adjusting the concaves
- 12/30 • Straw separators
- 12/32 • • with shaker screens or sieves
- 12/34 • • • Sieve elements; Linings for shakers
- 12/36 • • • Sieve elements specially adapted for handling short straw
- 12/38 • • with juxtaposed and independently-moved shaker bars or the like
- 12/385 • • with endless straw-conveying surface [5]
- 12/39 • • with straw carriers in the form of rotors or drums [5]
- 12/395 • • Conical or cylindrical straw separators with internal working surface [5]
- 12/40 • Arrangements of straw crushers or cutters
- 12/42 • Apparatus for removing awns from the grain
- 12/44 • Grain cleaners; Grain separators
- 12/46 • Mechanical grain conveyers
- 12/48 • Air conduits or blowers for grain
- 12/50 • Sack-filling devices; Counting or weighing devices

## A01F

- 12/52 • Arrangements for returning unthreshed grain to the threshing device
- 12/54 • Arrangements for collecting or removing dust
- 12/56 • Driving mechanisms for the threshing parts
- 12/58 • Control devices; Brakes; Bearings
- 12/60 • Grain tanks

### Baling of straw, hay or the like

- 13/00 Hand-operated baling apparatus**
- 15/00 Baling presses for straw, hay or the like [3]**
  - 15/02 • with press-boxes
  - 15/04 • Plunger presses
  - 15/06 • • with double-action plunger
  - 15/07 • Rotobalers, i.e. machines for forming cylindrical bales by winding and pressing [5]
  - 15/08 • Details
  - 15/10 • • Feeding devices for the crop material [3]
  - 15/12 • • Feeding devices for the ties
  - 15/14 • • Tying devices specially adapted for baling presses
  - 15/16 • • Division blocks
  - 15/18 • • Endless belts, rolls, or the like

### Accessories for threshing machines or baling presses

- 17/00 Straw conveyers for threshing machines or baling presses**
  - 17/02 • Mechanical conveyers
  - 17/04 • Pneumatic conveyers
- 19/00 Devices for securing threshing machines or baling presses to the ground, e.g. for compensating for unevenness of the ground**
- 21/00 Devices for protecting human beings for threshing machines or baling presses** (in combines A01D 75/20; for feeders for threshing apparatus A01F 12/16)

**A01G HORTICULTURE; CULTIVATION OF VEGETABLES, FLOWERS, RICE, FRUIT, VINES, HOPS, OR SEAWEED; FORESTRY; WATERING** (picking of fruits, vegetables, hops, or the like A01D 46/00; plant reproduction by tissue culture techniques A01H 4/00; devices for topping or skinning onions or flower bulbs A23N 15/08; propagating unicellular algae C12N 1/12; plant cell culture C12N 5/00)

### Subclass index

CULTIVATION IN GENERAL.....	1/00, 3/00, 7/00, 9/00, 16/00, 17/00
HYDROPONICS, CULTIVATION WITHOUT SOIL.....	31/00
CULTIVATION OF SEAWEED.....	33/00
PROTECTING PLANTS.....	11/00, 13/00, 15/00
PICKING OR HANDLING FLOWERS, HANDLING FRUIT.....	3/00, 5/00
FORESTRY.....	23/00
WATERING.....	25/00, 27/00, 29/00

**25/00 Storing agricultural or horticultural produce; Hanging-up harvested fruit** (maturing fruit A23N 15/06; arrangements in barns for preparatory treatment of tobacco A24B 1/02; packing or storing hops C12C 3/04) [3]

- 25/02 • Clamps; Pits
- 25/04 • Stacks, ricks, or the like
- 25/08 • • Ventilating means
- 25/10 • • Shelters
- 25/12 • Racks for drying purposes
- 25/13 • Coverings (A01F 25/14 takes precedence) [3]
- 25/14 • Containers specially adapted for storing [3]
- 25/16 • Arrangements in forage silos
- 25/18 • • Loading or distributing arrangements [2]
- 25/20 • • Unloading arrangements [2]
- 25/22 • • Ventilating arrangements [2]

- 29/00 Cutting apparatus specially adapted for cutting hay, straw or the like** (mowers combined with means for cutting up the mown crop A01D 43/08) [3]
- 29/01 • specially adapted for being mounted on or drawn by a tractor, e.g. field choppers [7]
- 29/02 • having rotating knives with their cutting edges in a plane perpendicular to their rotational axis [3]
- 29/04 • • with feeding direction transverse to axis [3]
- 29/06 • having rotating knives with their cutting edges on a cylinder surface, e.g. of the helical-type [3]
- 29/08 • having reciprocating knives [3]
- 29/09 • Details [2010.01]
- 29/10 • • Feeding devices [3]
- 29/12 • • Discharge means (loaders for hay or like field crop having blowers A01D 87/10) [3]
- 29/14 • • Drives [3]
- 29/16 • • Safety devices, e.g. emergency brake arrangements [3]
- 29/18 • • • for protecting human beings [3]
- 29/22 • • Arrangement of knife sharpening devices [3]

- 1/00 Horticulture; Cultivation of vegetables** (labels or name-plates G09F 3/00, G09F 7/00)
- 1/02 • Cultivation of asparagus
- 1/04 • Cultivation of mushrooms (composts or fertilisers for cultivating mushrooms C05)
- 1/06 • Grafting (grafting-wax A01N 3/04)
- 1/08 • Edging for beds, lawns, or the like, e.g. using tiles

- 1/12 • Tools for cultivating turf; Sweeping apparatus for lawns; Gardens rollers (machines for treating meadows or lawns A01B 45/00; lawn-mowers A01D 34/00)



- 3/00 Cutting implements specially adapted for horticultural purposes; Delimbing standing trees** (felling trees A01G 23/08; mowers having rotating flexible line cutters A01D 34/416; special adaptation of mowers for carrying by the operator A01D 34/90; hand-held cutting tools suitable for other use B26B) [5]
- 3/02 • Secateurs; Flower or fruit shears
- 3/025 • • having elongated or extended handles [6]
- 3/033 • • having motor-driven blades [6]
- 3/037 • • • the driving means being an electric motor [6]
- 3/04 • Apparatus for trimming hedges, e.g. hedge shears [6]
- 3/047 • • portable [6]
- 3/053 • • • motor-driven [6]
- 3/06 • Hand-held edge trimmers or shears for lawns (mowers combined with lawn edgers A01D 43/16)
- 3/08 • Other tools for pruning, branching or delimbing standing trees [2, 5]
- 5/00 Floral handling**
- 5/02 • Apparatus for binding bouquets or wreaths
- 5/04 • Mountings for wreaths, or the like; Racks or holders for flowers
- 5/06 • Devices for preserving flowers (chemical substances A01N 3/02; flower vases A47G 7/06)
- 7/00 Botany in general** (cultivation without soil A01G 31/00)
- 7/02 • Treatment of plants with carbon dioxide (greenhouses therefor A01G 9/18)
- 7/04 • Electric or magnetic treatment of plants for promoting growth
- 7/06 • Treatment of growing trees or plants, e.g. for preventing decay of wood, for tingeing flowers or wood, for prolonging the life of plants
- 9/00 Cultivation of flowers, vegetables or rice in receptacles, forcing-frames or greenhouses** (cultivation without soil A01G 31/00)
- 9/02 • Receptacles, e.g. flower-pots or boxes (hanging flower baskets, holders or containers for flower-pots A47G 7/00); Glasses for cultivating flowers
- 9/04 • Flower-pot saucers
- 9/06 • Devices for cleaning flower-pots
- 9/08 • Devices for filling-up flower-pots; Devices for setting plants in pots
- 9/10 • Pots for seedlings; Soil-blocks for seedlings; Means for forming soil-blocks
- 9/12 • Supports for plants; Trellis for strawberries or the like (stays for trees, props for vines A01G 17/14)
- 9/14 • Greenhouses (cloches A01G 13/04)
- 9/16 • • Dismountable or portable greenhouses
- 9/18 • Greenhouses for treating plants with carbon dioxide or the like
- 9/20 • Forcing-frames; Lights
- 9/22 • Shades or blinds for greenhouses, or the like
- 9/24 • Devices for heating, ventilating, regulating temperature, or watering, in greenhouses, forcing-frames, or the like
- 9/26 • • Electric devices
- 11/00 Sterilising soil by steam** (soil-conditioning or soil-stabilising materials C09K 17/00)
- 13/00 Protecting plants** (apparatus for the destruction of vermin or noxious animals A01M; use of chemical materials therefor, composition of protective materials, e.g. grafting wax, A01N)
- 13/02 • Protective coverings for plants; Devices for laying-out coverings
- 13/04 • • Cloches
- 13/06 • Devices for generating heat, smoke, or fog in gardens, orchards, or forests, e.g. to prevent damage by frost (chemical aspects of generating smoke or mist C06D 3/00; heating devices in general, see the appropriate classes, e.g. F24)
- 13/08 • Mechanical apparatus for circulating the air
- 13/10 • Devices for affording protection against animals, birds, or other pests (A01M 29/00 takes precedence; traps A01M 23/00; pesticides A01N) [2]
- 15/00 Devices or methods for influencing weather conditions** (dispersing fog in general E01H 13/00)
- 16/00 Cultivation of rice** (A01G 9/00 takes precedence) [3]
- 17/00 Cultivation of hops, vines, fruit trees, or like trees**
- 17/02 • Cultivation of hops or vines
- 17/04 • Supports for hops, vines, or trees
- 17/06 • • Trellis-work
- 17/08 • • • Tools for attaching hops, vines, or boughs to trellis-work; Tying devices
- 17/10 • • Holders for boughs or branches
- 17/12 • • Tree-bands
- 17/14 • • Props; Stays
- 17/16 • • • Devices for driving-in or pulling-out props
- 17/18 • Means for filling-up wounds in trees
- 23/00 Forestry**
- 23/02 • Transplanting, uprooting, felling or delimbing trees (delimbing standing trees A01G 3/00) [5]
- Note(s)**
- Tree feeding devices are covered by group B27B 25/00.
- 23/04 • • Transplanting trees; Devices for grasping the root ball, e.g. stump forceps; Wrappings or packages for transporting trees
- 23/06 • • Uprooting or pulling up trees; Extracting or eliminating stumps [5]
- 23/08 • • Felling trees (axes B26B 23/00; saws, sawing machines B27B)
- 23/081 • • • Feller-bunchers, i.e. with bunching by felling head (A01G 23/083 takes precedence) [5]
- 23/083 • • • Feller-delimbers [5]
- 23/085 • • • • having the shearing head mounted on a first boom and the delimbing head mounted on a second boom [5]
- 23/087 • • • Shearing apparatus or the like specially adapted for felling trees (A01G 23/081, A01G 23/083, A01G 23/093 take precedence) [5]
- 23/089 • • • • having two or more shears [5]
- 23/09 • • • • of the percussion type [5]
- 23/091 • • • Sawing apparatus specially adapted for felling trees (A01G 23/081, A01G 23/083, A01G 23/093 take precedence) [5]
- 23/093 • • • Combinations of shearing, sawing or milling apparatus specially adapted for felling trees [5]
- 23/095 • • Delimbers (A01G 23/083 takes precedence; manufacture of wood shavings, chips, powder, or the like B27L 11/00) [5]
- 23/097 • • • having a fixed delimbing head [5]
- 23/099 • • Auxiliary devices, e.g. felling wedges [5]
- 23/10 • Tapping of tree-juices, e.g. caoutchouc, gum
- 23/12 • • Knives or axes for tapping
- 23/14 • • Tapping-spouts; Receptacles for juices

## A01G

- 25/00 Watering gardens, fields, sports grounds, or the like** (special apparatus or adaptations for fertilising-liquids A01C 23/00; nozzles or outlets, spraying apparatus B05B; gravity flow, open channel irrigation ditch systems E02B 13/00)
- 25/02 • Watering arrangements located above the soil which make use of perforated pipe-lines or pipe-lines with dispensing fittings, e.g. for drip irrigation (perforated pipes per se B05B 1/20) [4]
- 25/06 • Watering arrangements making use of perforated pipe-lines located in the soil (perforated pipes per se B05B 1/20; similar arrangements for drainage E02B 11/00)
- 25/09 • Watering arrangements making use of movable installations on wheels or the like [2]
- 25/14 • Hand watering devices, e.g. watering cans
- 25/16 • Control of watering (controlling spraying devices B05B) [2]
- 27/00 Self-acting watering devices, e.g. for flower-pots**
- 27/02 • having a water reservoir, the main part thereof being located wholly around or directly beside the growth substrate (A01G 27/06 takes precedence) [6]
- 27/04 • using wicks or the like [6]
- 27/06 • • having a water reservoir, the main part thereof being located wholly around or directly beside the growth substrate [6]
- 29/00 Root feeders; Injecting fertilisers into the roots**
- 31/00 Hydroponics; Cultivation without soil** (A01G 33/00 takes precedence) [2]
- 31/02 • Special apparatus therefor (apparatus for cultivation in receptacles or greenhouses in general A01G 9/00; self-acting watering devices A01G 27/00)
- 31/04 • • Hydroponic culture on conveyers [6]
- 31/06 • • Hydroponic culture on racks or in stacked containers [6]
- 33/00 Cultivation of seaweed** [2]
- 33/02 • of laver [2]

## A01H NEW PLANTS OR PROCESSES FOR OBTAINING THEM; PLANT REPRODUCTION BY TISSUE CULTURE TECHNIQUES [5]

### Subclass index

PROCESSES.....	1/00, 3/00
REPRODUCTION.....	4/00
FLOWERING PLANTS; GYMNOSPERMS.....	5/00, 7/00
OTHER PRODUCTS.....	9/00-17/00

### Processes

- 1/00 Processes for modifying genotypes** (A01H 4/00 takes precedence) [5]
- 1/02 • Methods or apparatus for hybridisation; Artificial pollination
- 1/04 • Processes of selection
- 1/06 • Processes for producing mutations, e.g. treatment with chemicals or with radiation (specific mutations prepared by genetic engineering on plant cell or plant tissues C12N 15/00) [5]
- 1/08 • • Methods or apparatus for producing changes in chromosome number
- 3/00 Processes for modifying phenotypes** (A01H 4/00 takes precedence) [5]
- 3/02 • by controlling duration, wavelength, intensity, or periodicity of illumination
- 3/04 • by treatment with chemicals
- 4/00 Plant reproduction by tissue culture techniques** [5]

### Products

- 5/00 Flowering plants, i.e. angiosperms**
- 5/02 • Flowers
- 5/04 • Stems
- 5/06 • Roots
- 5/08 • Fruits
- 5/10 • Seeds
- 5/12 • Leaves
- 7/00 Gymnosperms, e.g. conifers**
- 9/00 Pteridophytes, e.g. ferns, club-mosses, horse-tails**
- 11/00 Bryophytes, e.g. mosses, liverworts**
- 13/00 Algae** (unicellular algae C12N 1/12)
- 15/00 Fungi; Lichens** (fungal micro-organisms C12N 1/14)
- 17/00 Symbiotic or parasitic combinations including one or more new plants, e.g. mycorrhiza** (lichens A01H 15/00)

## A01J MANUFACTURE OF DAIRY PRODUCTS (preservation, pasteurisation, sterilisation of milk products A23; for chemical matters, see subclass A23C)

### Subclass index

MILKING.....	1/00-9/00
TREATMENT OF MILK OR CREAM.....	11/00, 13/00
MANUFACTURING BUTTER.....	15/00

KNEADING OR FORMING BUTTER, MARGARINE OR BUTTER SUBSTITUTES.....	17/00-23/00
CHEESE-MAKING.....	25/00, 27/00
SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....	99/00

**Milking**

- 1/00 Devices or accessories for milking by hand** (milking stools A47C 9/04)
- 3/00 Milking with catheters**
- 5/00 Milking machines or devices** (A01J 1/00, A01J 3/00 take precedence; milking stations A01K 1/12)
- 5/003 • Movable milking machines [6]
- 5/007 • Monitoring milking processes; Control or regulation of milking machines [6]
- 5/01 • • Milketers; Milk flow sensing devices [6]
- 5/013 • On-site detection of mastitis in milk [6]
- 5/017 • Automatic attaching or detaching of clusters [6]
- 5/02 • with mechanical manipulation of teats
- 5/04 • with pneumatic manipulation of teats
- 5/06 • • Teat-cups with one chamber
- 5/08 • • Teat-cups with two chambers
- 5/10 • • Pulsators arranged otherwise than on teat-cups
- 5/12 • • • with membranes
- 5/14 • • • electromagnetically controlled
- 5/16 • • Teat-cups with pulsating devices
- 7/00 Accessories for milking machines or devices** (milking stations A01K 1/12) [5, 6]
- 7/02 • for cleaning or sanitising milking machines or devices (cleaning the internal surfaces of pipes or tubes of milking machines B08B 9/027) [6]
- 7/04 • for treatment of udders or teats, e.g. for cleaning [6]
- 9/00 Milk receptacles** (containers in general B65D; devices for tilting and emptying of containers B65G 65/23)
- 9/02 • with straining or filtering devices
- 9/04 • with cooling arrangements
- 9/06 • with self-closing valve
- 9/08 • Holding or supporting devices for milking receptacles
- 9/10 • Milking pails connected with milking stools

**Treatment of milk or cream**

- 11/00 Apparatus for treating milk** (preserving or sterilising A23C)
- 11/02 • Appliances for preventing or destroying foam (preventing boiling-over of milk in kitchen cooking vessels A47J 27/56; preventing foaming in boiling apparatus B01B 1/02)
- 11/04 • Appliances for aerating or de-aerating milk (milk centrifuges B04B)
- 11/06 • Strainers or filters for milk (filtering materials B01D)
- 11/08 • • Holders for strainers or cloth filters
- 11/10 • Separating milk from cream (milk centrifuges B04B)
- 11/12 • • Appliances for removing cream
- 11/14 • • • by raising the level of the milk
- 11/16 • Homogenising milk (homogenising in general B01F)
- 13/00 Tanks for treating cream**

**15/00 Manufacturing butter**

- 15/02 • Stationary churns with beating equipment
- 15/04 • Rotating or oscillating churns
- 15/06 • • with beating equipment which is movable in respect of the churn wall
- 15/08 • • without beating equipment which is movable in respect of the churn wall
- 15/10 • Devices for manufacturing butter other than by churns
- 15/12 • • with arrangements for making butter in a continuous process
- 15/14 • Churns with arrangements for making butter by blowing-in air
- 15/16 • Details; Accessories
- 15/18 • • Devices for de-aerating
- 15/20 • • Incorporation of revolution counters; Incorporation of alarm devices
- 15/22 • • Lids or covers for butter churns
- 15/24 • • Beaters for butter churns
- 15/25 • • Means for removing butter from churns or the like (pumps therefor F04)
- 15/26 • Combined appliances for separating, churning and kneading
- 15/28 • Driving mechanisms

**Kneading or forming butter; Kneading or forming margarine or butter substitutes**

- 17/00 Kneading machines for butter, or the like** (mixing or kneading machines for the preparation of dough A21C 1/00)
- 19/00 Hand devices for forming slabs of butter, or the like**
- 21/00 Machines for forming slabs of butter, or the like**
- 21/02 • with extruding arrangements and cutting devices, with or without packing devices
- 23/00 Devices for dividing bulk butter, or the like**

**Cheese-making**

- 25/00 Cheese-making** (coating the cheese A01J 27/02)
- 25/02 • Cheese basins
- 25/04 • • Devices for cleaning cheese basins
- 25/06 • Devices for dividing curdled milk
- 25/08 • Devices for removing cheese from basins
- 25/10 • Devices for removing whey from basins
- 25/11 • Separating whey from curds; Washing the curds
- 25/12 • Forming the cheese
- 25/13 • • Moulds therefor
- 25/15 • • Presses therefor
- 25/16 • Devices for treating cheese during ripening
- 27/00 After-treatment of cheese; Coating the cheese**
- 27/02 • Coating the cheese, e.g. with paraffin wax (applying liquids or other fluent materials to surfaces in general B05)

**A01K ANIMAL HUSBANDRY; CARE OF BIRDS, FISHES, INSECTS; FISHING; REARING OR BREEDING ANIMALS, NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR; NEW BREEDS OF ANIMALS****Note(s)**

This subclass covers:

- equipment for the care, culture or rearing of all animals or for obtaining their products, unless provided for elsewhere, e.g. milking A01J, shoeing animals A01L, veterinary devices A61D, devices in connection with harnesses B68B;
- methods of breeding animals or new animal breeds.

**Subclass index****ANIMAL HUSBANDRY IN GENERAL, ESPECIALLY CATTLE RAISING**

Housing, feeding or watering devices.....	1/00-9/00
Taming; muzzles, leads.....	15/00, 25/00, 27/00
Marking; devices for grooming.....	11/00, 13/00
Removing the fleece.....	14/00
Other apparatus.....	17/00-23/00, 29/00

**AVICULTURE; EGGS**

Housing, feeding or drinking appliances.....	31/00, 39/00
Marking.....	35/00
Other apparatus.....	33/00, 37/00, 41/00, 43/00, 45/00

**APICULTURE**

Housing, feeding or drinking appliances.....	47/00, 53/00
Other devices.....	49/00, 51/00, 55/00, 57/00, 59/00

**PISCICULTURE..... 61/00, 63/00****OTHER REARING OR BREEDING, NEW BREEDS..... 67/00****FISHING WITH NETS..... 69/00-75/00****ANGLING**

Rods; reels.....	87/00, 89/00
Lines; accessories therefor.....	91/00, 83/00, 85/00, 93/00, 95/00
Accessories.....	97/00

**OTHER FISHING..... 69/00, 77/00-81/00, 99/00****Animal husbandry in general, especially cattle-raising**

- 1/00 Housing animals; Equipment therefor** (building construction, features of buildings E04; ventilating buildings F24F)
- 1/01 • Removal of dung or urine (A01K 1/015 takes precedence) [2]
- 1/015 • Floor coverings, e.g. bedding-down sheets [2]
- 1/02 • Pigsties; Dog-kennels; Rabbit-hutches or the like
- 1/03 • • Housing for domestic or laboratory animals [2]
- 1/035 • • Devices for use in keeping domestic animals, e.g. fittings in housings, dog beds [2]
- 1/04 • Tethering-poles or the like
- 1/06 • Devices for fastening animals, e.g. halters, toggles, neck-bars, chain fastenings
- 1/062 • • Neck-bars [2]
- 1/064 • • Chain fastenings [2]
- 1/08 • Arrangements for simultaneously releasing several animals
- 1/10 • Feed racks (devices for impeding movement of animals A01K 15/04)
- 1/12 • Milking stations [2]
- 3/00 Pasturing equipment, e.g. tethering devices; Grids for preventing cattle from straying; Electrified wire fencing** (construction of fencing in general E04H 17/00; electric circuits for fences H05C)

**5/00 Feeding devices for stock or game** (A01K 1/10 takes precedence; for poultry A01K 39/00) [2]

- 5/01 • Feed troughs; Feed pails [2]
- 5/015 • Licking-stone holders (salt blocks A23K 1/16) [2]
- 5/02 • Automatic devices

**7/00 Watering equipment for stock or game**

- 7/02 • Automatic devices (construction of valves F16K)
- 7/04 • • actuated by float [2]
- 7/06 • • actuated by the animal [2]

**9/00 Sucking apparatus for young stock****11/00 Marking of animals** (of poultry A01K 35/00; lead-sealing pliers B25B)**13/00 Devices for grooming or caring of animals, e.g. curry-combs** (scissors B26B); **Fetlock rings** (bandages, poultices A61D); **Tail-holders** (as part of the harness B68B 5/04); **Devices for preventing crib-biting; Washing devices** (milking machine accessories for treatment of udders or teats A01J 7/04; for medical purposes A61D 11/00); **Protection against weather conditions or insects****14/00 Removing the fleece from live sheep or similar animals** (hand-held cutting tools B26B) [5]

- 15/00 Devices for taming animals, e.g. nose-rings or hobbles; Devices for overturning animals in general; Training or exercising equipment; Covering boxes** (devices for veterinary purposes A61D 3/00)
- 15/02 • Training or exercising equipment, e.g. mazes or labyrinths for animals (A01K 15/04 takes precedence) [2]
- 15/04 • Devices for impeding movement; Devices for impeding passage through fencing [2]
- 17/00 Dehorner; Horn trainers**
- 19/00 Weaning apparatus**
- 21/00 Devices for assisting or preventing mating** (covering boxes A01K 15/00)
- 23/00 Manure or urine pouches**
- 25/00 Muzzles**
- 27/00 Leads or collars, e.g. for dogs** (devices specially adapted or mounted for storing and repeatedly paying-out and re-storing lengths of material B65H 75/34)
- 29/00 Other apparatus for animal husbandry**

#### Aviculture; Testing, cleaning, stamping, or grading eggs

- 31/00 Housing birds**
- 31/02 • Door appliances; Automatic door-openers (counters for specific applications G07C 9/00)
- 31/04 • Dropping-boards; Devices for removing excrement
- 31/06 • Cages
- 31/07 • • Transportable cages (A01K 31/08 takes precedence) [2]
- 31/08 • • Collapsible cages
- 31/10 • Doors; Trap-doors
- 31/12 • Perches
- 31/14 • Nest-boxes
- 31/16 • • Laying nests for poultry; Egg collecting [2]
- 31/17 • • • Laying batteries [2]
- 31/18 • Chicken coops or houses; Brooders
- 31/19 • • Brooders [2]
- 31/20 • • Heating arrangements
- 31/22 • Poultry runs
- 31/24 • Dovecots; Pigeonlofts [2]
- 33/00 Nest-eggs**
- 35/00 Marking poultry or other birds**
- 37/00 Constraining birds, e.g. wing clamps**
- 39/00 Feeding or drinking appliances for poultry or other birds [2]**
- 39/01 • Feeding devices (A01K 39/04 takes precedence) [2]
- 39/012 • • filling automatically [2]
- 39/014 • • Feed troughs; Feed throwers [2]
- 39/02 • Drinking appliances (A01K 39/04 takes precedence; construction of valves F16K) [2]
- 39/022 • • with weight-controlled supply [2]
- 39/024 • • with float-controlled supply [2]
- 39/026 • • kept filled to constant level from incorporated storage [2]
- 39/04 • Combined feeding and drinking appliances
- 39/06 • Cramming appliances

- 41/00 Incubators for poultry**
- 41/02 • Heating arrangements
- 41/04 • Controlling humidity in incubators
- 41/06 • Egg-turning appliances for incubators
- 43/00 Testing, sorting, or cleaning eggs** (investigating or analysing eggs, e.g. by candling, G01N 33/08)
- 43/04 • Grading eggs
- 43/06 • • according to size
- 43/08 • • according to weight (sorting according to weight in general B07C 5/16)
- 43/10 • • Grading and stamping
- 45/00 Other aviculture appliances, e.g. devices for determining whether a bird is about to lay**

#### Apiculture

- 47/00 Beehives**
- 47/02 • Construction or arrangement of frames for honeycombs
- 47/04 • Artificial honeycombs
- 47/06 • Other details of beehives, e.g. ventilating devices, entrances to hives, guards, partitions, bee escapes
- 49/00 Rearing-boxes; Queen transporting or introducing cages**
- 51/00 Appliances for treating beehives or parts thereof, e.g. for cleaning or disinfecting**
- 53/00 Feeding or drinking appliances for bees**
- 55/00 Bee-smokers; Bee-keepers' accessories, e.g. veils** (smoking pipes A24F)
- 57/00 Appliances for providing, preventing, or catching swarms; Drone-catching devices**
- 59/00 Honey collection**
- 59/02 • Devices for uncapping honeycombs
- 59/04 • Honey strainers
- 59/06 • Devices for extracting wax

#### Pisciculture; Aquaria; Terraria

- 61/00 Culture of fish, mussels, crayfish, lobsters, sponges, pearls, or the like** (harvesting oysters, mussels, sponges or the like A01K 80/00)
- 61/02 • Feeding devices for fish
- 63/00 Receptacles for live fish, e.g. aquaria** (keepnets or other containers for keeping captured fish A01K 97/20); **Terraria [5]**
- 63/02 • Receptacles specially adapted for transporting live fish
- 63/04 • Arrangements for treating water specially adapted to receptacles for live fish (filters in general B01D; water treatment in general C02F) [3]
- 63/06 • Arrangements for heating or lighting in, or attached to, receptacles for live fish (heating or lighting apparatus *per se* F21, H01, H05B) [3]
- 
- 65/00 Fish stringers**

- 67/00 Rearing or breeding animals, not otherwise provided for; New breeds of animals** (methods for reproduction or fertilisation A61D 19/00; medicinal preparations containing sperm A61K 35/52; tissue- or animal-cell cultivation apparatus C12M 3/00; cultivation or maintenance of tissue or animal cells C12N 5/00; mutation or genetic engineering C12N 15/00)

**Note(s)**

In this group the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

- "breeding" means obtaining animals up to and including their birth or hatching.
- 67/02 • Breeding vertebrates (covering boxes A01K 15/00; devices for assisting or preventing mating A01K 21/00)
- 67/027 • New breeds of vertebrates [5]
- 67/033 • Rearing or breeding invertebrates; New breeds of invertebrates (non-chemical sterilisation of invertebrates A01M) [5]
- 67/04 • • Silkworms [5]

**Fishing**

**69/00 Stationary catching devices for fishing**

- 69/02 • Fixed nets without traps
- 69/04 • Fixed nets with traps
- 69/06 • Traps
- 69/08 • • Rigid traps, e.g. lobster pots
- 69/10 • • Collapsible traps

**71/00 Floating fishing nets**

**73/00 Drawn fishing nets**

- 73/02 • Trawling nets
- 73/04 • • Devices for spreading or positioning, e.g. control thereof [2]
- 73/045 • • • for lateral sheering, e.g. trawl boards [2]
- 73/05 • • • for vertical sheering [2]
- 73/053 • • • Ground-line rollers [4]
- 73/06 • • Hauling devices for the headlines
- 73/10 • • Determining the quantity of the catch, e.g. by the pull or drag on the lines
- 73/12 • Nets held vertically in the water, e.g. seines

**74/00 Other catching nets or the like for fishing [2]**

**75/00 Accessories for fishing nets; Details of fishing nets, e.g. structure [4]**

- 75/02 • Illuminating devices for nets
- 75/04 • Floats (for angling A01K 93/00) [4]
- 75/06 • Sinkers (for angling A01K 95/00) [4]

**77/00 Landing-nets for fishing; Landing-spoons for fishing**

**79/00 Methods or means of catching fish in bulk not provided for in groups A01K 69/00-A01K 77/00**

- 79/02 • by electrocution (electric circuits therefor H05C)

**80/00 Harvesting oysters, mussels, sponges or the like** (fishing nets A01K 73/00, A01K 74/00; dredgers E02F) [3]

**81/00 Fishing with projectiles** (weapons, projectiles other than fish-spears F41, F42)

- 81/04 • Fish-spears
- 81/06 • Equipment for hunting fish under water (swimming equipment A63B 31/00-A63B 35/00)

**Angling**

**83/00 Fish-hooks**

- 83/02 • Expanding fish-hook assembly
- 83/04 • with special gripping arms
- 83/06 • Devices for holding bait on hooks

**85/00 Artificial bait for fishing**

- 85/01 • with light emission, sound emission, scent dispersal or the like [2, 5]
- 85/02 • with means for concealing or protecting hooks, e.g. to prevent entanglement with weeds [5]
- 85/08 • Artificial flies (fly tying devices A01K 97/26) [5]
- 85/10 • with at least one flat rotating body having its axis of rotation substantially non-coincident with the longitudinal axis of the body [5]
- 85/12 • comprising a body rotating around its longitudinal axis, e.g. devons [5]
- 85/14 • with flat, or substantially flat, undulating bodies, e.g. spoons [5]
- 85/16 • with other than flat, or substantially flat, undulating bodies, e.g. plugs [5]
- 85/18 • • in two or more pieces [5]

**87/00 Fishing rods**

- 87/02 • Connecting devices for parts of the rods
- 87/04 • Fishing-line guides on rods
- 87/06 • Devices for fixing reels on rods
- 87/08 • Handgrips [5]

**89/00 Fishing reels**

- 89/01 • with pick-up, i.e. with the guiding member rotating and the spool being stationary during normal retrieval of the line (A01K 89/027 takes precedence) [2, 5]
- 89/012 • • motor-driven [2]
- 89/015 • with rotary drum (A01K 89/033 takes precedence) [2, 5]
- 89/0155 • • Antibacklash devices [5]
- 89/016 • • Fly reels [5]
- 89/0165 • • for trolling [5]
- 89/017 • • motor-driven [2]
- 89/02 • Brake devices for reels
- 89/027 • • with pick-up [5]
- 89/033 • • with rotary drum [5]
- 89/06 • Reversible reels [5]
- 89/08 • Pole-less fishing apparatus, i.e. hand-held reels [5]

**91/00 Fishing lines**

- 91/02 • Devices for casting lines
- 91/03 • Connecting devices (devices for fixing on or removing sinkers from lines A01K 95/02) [5]
- 91/04 • • for connecting lines to hooks or lures [5]
- 91/047 • • for connecting lines to lines [5]
- 91/053 • • Fishing booms, i.e. connecting devices spreading out the leaders, e.g. to avoid tangling thereof [5]
- 91/06 • Apparatus on lines not otherwise provided for, e.g. automatic hookers (floats A01K 93/00) [2, 5]
- 91/08 • • Trolling devices [5]
- 91/10 • • for automatic hook setting [5]
- 91/12 • Fly lines [5]
- 91/14 • Leaders [5]
- 91/16 • • for fly fishing [5]
- 91/18 • Trotlines, longlines; Accessories therefor, e.g. baiting devices, lifters, setting reelers [5]
- 91/20 • Line length or depth measuring devices [5]

<b>93/00</b>	<b>Floats for angling, with or without signalling devices [4, 5]</b>	97/11	• • with automatic hooking devices [5]
93/02	• with signalling devices [5]	97/12	• Signalling devices, e.g. tip-up devices (A01K 91/06 takes precedence) [2]
<b>95/00</b>	<b>Sinkers for angling [4]</b>	97/14	• Gaffs
95/02	• Devices for fixing on or removing sinkers from lines [5]	97/16	• Devices for drying fishing lines
<b>97/00</b>	<b>Accessories for angling</b> (fish stringers A01K 65/00; landing-nets or landing-spoons for fishing A01K 77/00)	97/18	• for removing fish-hooks from the fish [5]
97/01	• for ice-fishing [2]	97/20	• Keepnets or other containers for keeping captured fish (A01K 97/05 takes precedence) [5]
97/02	• Devices for laying ground-bait, e.g. chum dispensers	97/22	• Platforms or seat-boxes specially adapted for angling, e.g. tackle boxes for use as seats [5]
97/04	• Containers for bait; Preparation of bait (feeding-stuffs for particular animals A23K 1/18) [2]	97/24	• Arrangements for disengaging fish-hooks from obstacles [5]
97/05	• • Containers for live bait kept in water, e.g. for minnows, shrimps [5]	97/26	• Fly tying devices [5]
97/06	• Containers or holders for hooks, lines, sinkers, flies or the like [5]	97/28	• • Vices specially adapted therefor [5]
97/08	• Containers for rods		
97/10	• Supports for rods		
<b>A01L</b>	<b>SHOEING OF ANIMALS</b>	<b>99/00</b>	<b>Methods or apparatus for fishing not provided for in groups A01K 69/00-A01K 97/00 [2006.01]</b>

### Subclass index

SHOES.....1/00, 3/00, 5/00, 9/00  
EQUIPMENT AND ACCESSORIES.....7/00, 11/00, 13/00, 15/00

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Shoes for horses or other solipeds fastened with nails</b> (A01L 3/00 takes precedence)	<b>7/00</b>	<b>Accessories for shoeing animals</b>
1/02	• Solid horseshoes consisting of one part	7/02	• Elastic inserts or soles for horseshoes
1/04	• Solid horseshoes consisting of multiple parts	7/04	• Solid calks or studs
<b>3/00</b>	<b>Horseshoes fastened by means other than nails, with or without additional fastening by nailing</b>	7/06	• Elastic calks or studs
3/02	• Horseshoes consisting of one part	7/08	• Ice-spurs for horseshoes
3/04	• Horseshoes consisting of two or more parts connected by hinged joints	7/10	• Horseshoe nails
3/06	• Shoe-like appliances enabling draught animals to walk on bogs or the like	<b>9/00</b>	<b>Shoes for other animals, e.g. oxen</b>
<b>5/00</b>	<b>Horseshoes made of elastic materials</b>	<b>11/00</b>	<b>Farriers' tools or appliances</b> (making horseshoes by rolling B21H 7/12, by forging B21K 15/02)
<b>A01M</b>	<b>CATCHING, TRAPPING OR SCARING OF ANIMALS</b> (apiculture A01K 47/00-A01K 59/00; fishing A01K 69/00-A01K 97/00; pesticides A01N); <b>APPARATUS FOR THE DESTRUCTION OF NOXIOUS ANIMALS OR NOXIOUS PLANTS</b> (equipment fitted in or to aircraft for dropping or releasing powdered, liquid or gaseous matter, e.g. pesticides, herbicides, B64D 1/16)	<b>13/00</b>	<b>Pens for animals while being shod</b>
		<b>15/00</b>	<b>Apparatus or use of substances for the care of hoofs</b>

### Note(s)

In this subclass, terms "killing" and "destruction" cover "non-chemical sterilisation" of invertebrates.

### Subclass index

SPRAYERS; FUMIGATORS; FLAME-THROWERS.....7/00-11/00, 13/00, 15/00  
CATCHING OR KILLING INSECTS.....1/00-5/00, 17/00  
CATCHING OR KILLING ANIMALS OTHER THAN INSECTS.....19/00, 23/00, 25/00, 27/00  
SCARING DEVICES; HUNTING APPLIANCES.....29/00, 31/00  
DESTRUCTION OF UNWANTED VEGETATION.....21/00  
SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....99/00

- 1/00 Stationary means for catching or killing insects**
- 1/02 • with devices attracting the insects
  - 1/04 • • using illumination
  - 1/06 • using a suction effect
  - 1/08 • using combined illumination and suction effects
  - 1/10 • Traps
  - 1/12 • • automatically reset
  - 1/14 • Catching by adhesive surfaces
  - 1/16 • • Fly papers or ribbons
  - 1/18 • • Adhesive bands or coatings for trees
  - 1/20 • Poisoning, narcotising, or burning insects
  - 1/22 • by electric means (electric circuits therefor H05C)
  - 1/24 • Arrangements connected with buildings, doors, windows, or the like
- 3/00 Manual implements, other than sprayers or powder distributors, for catching or killing insects, e.g. butterfly nets**
- 3/02 • Fly-swatters
  - 3/04 • with adhesive surfaces
- 5/00 Catching insects in fields, gardens, or forests by movable appliances**
- 5/02 • Portable appliances
  - 5/04 • Wheeled machines, with means for stripping-off or brushing-off insects
  - 5/06 • • with adhesive surfaces
  - 5/08 • • with fans
- 7/00 Special adaptations or arrangements of liquid-spraying apparatus for purposes covered by this subclass (spraying apparatus in general B05B)**
- 9/00 Special adaptations or arrangements of powder-spraying apparatus for purposes covered by this subclass (spraying apparatus in general B05B)**
- 11/00 Special adaptations or arrangements of combined liquid- and powder-spraying apparatus for purposes covered by this subclass (spraying apparatus in general B05B)**
- 13/00 Fumigators; Apparatus for distributing gases**
- 15/00 Flame-throwers specially adapted for purposes covered by this subclass (flame-throwers in general F41H 9/02)**
- 17/00 Apparatus for the destruction of vermin in soil or in foodstuffs**
- 19/00 Apparatus for the destruction of noxious animals, other than insects, by hot water, steam, hot air, or electricity (electric circuits therefor H05C)**
- 21/00 Apparatus for the destruction of unwanted vegetation, e.g. weeds (biocides, plant growth regulators A01N 25/00-A01N 65/00; spraying or atomising apparatus in general B05B; soil-conditioning or soil-stabilising materials C09K 17/00; control of undesirable vegetation on roads or permanent ways of railways E01H 11/00)**
- 21/02 • Apparatus for mechanical destruction
  - 21/04 • Apparatus for destruction by steam, chemicals, burning, or electricity
- 23/00 Traps for animals**
- 23/02 • Collecting-traps
  - 23/04 • • with tipping platforms
  - 23/06 • • • with locking mechanism for the tipping platform
  - 23/08 • • with approaches permitting entry only
  - 23/10 • • with rotating cylinders or turnstiles
  - 23/12 • • with devices for throwing the animal to a collecting chamber
  - 23/14 • • Other traps automatically reset
  - 23/16 • Box traps
  - 23/18 • • with pivoted closure flaps
  - 23/20 • • with dropping doors or slides
  - 23/22 • • with dropping covers
  - 23/24 • Jaw or like spring traps
  - 23/26 • • of the double-jaw or pincer type
  - 23/28 • • • Jaw trap setting-devices
  - 23/30 • • Break-back traps
  - 23/32 • • Racket net traps
  - 23/34 • • with snares
  - 23/36 • • with arrangements for piercing the victim
  - 23/38 • Electric traps
- 25/00 Devices for dispensing poison for animals (A01M 27/00 takes precedence; for insects A01M 1/20) [3]**
- 27/00 Apparatus having projectiles or killing implements projected to kill the animal, e.g. pierce or shoot, and triggered thereby [3]**
- 29/00 Scaring or repelling devices, e.g. bird-scaring apparatus [1, 2011.01]**
- 29/06 • using visual means, e.g. scarecrows, moving elements, specific shapes, patterns or the like [2011.01]
  - 29/08 • • using reflection, colours or films with specific transparency or reflectivity [2011.01]
  - 29/10 • • using light sources, e.g. lasers or flashing lights [2011.01]
  - 29/12 • using odoriferous substances, e.g. aromas, pheromones or chemical agents [2011.01]
  - 29/14 • using thermal effects [2011.01]
  - 29/16 • using sound waves [2011.01]
  - 29/18 • • using ultrasonic signals [2011.01]
  - 29/20 • • with generation of periodically explosive reports [2011.01]
  - 29/22 • using vibrations (A01M 29/16 takes precedence) [2011.01]
  - 29/24 • using electric or magnetic effects, e.g. electric shocks, magnetic fields or microwaves [2011.01]
  - 29/26 • • specially adapted for birds, e.g. electrified rods, cords or strips [2011.01]
  - 29/28 • • specially adapted for insects [2011.01]
  - 29/30 • preventing or obstructing access or passage, e.g. by means of barriers, spikes, cords, obstacles or sprinkled water [2011.01]
  - 29/32 • • specially adapted for birds, e.g. spikes [2011.01]
  - 29/34 • • specially adapted for insects [2011.01]
- 31/00 Hunting appliances**
- 31/02 • Shooting stands (folding seats A47C)
  - 31/04 • Beater rattles
  - 31/06 • Decoys
- 99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]**



**A01N PRESERVATION OF BODIES OF HUMANS OR ANIMALS OR PLANTS OR PARTS THEREOF** (preservation of food or foodstuff A23); **BIOCIDES, e.g. AS DISINFECTANTS, AS PESTICIDES OR AS HERBICIDES** (preparations for medical, dental or toilet purposes which kill or prevent the growth or proliferation of unwanted organisms A61K); **PEST REPELLANTS OR ATTRACTANTS; PLANT GROWTH REGULATORS** (mixtures of pesticides with fertilisers C05G)

#### Note(s)

1. This subclass covers:
  - compositions, physical forms, methods of application of specific materials or the use of single compounds or compositions;
  - chemosterilants for the sexual sterilisation of invertebrates, e.g. insects (sex sterilants for other purposes A61K).
2. This subclass does not cover materials which affect the growth of a plant solely by supplying nutrients, i.e. plant food, ordinarily required for growth or materials which are used to prevent or cure mineral deficiencies in plants, e.g. addition of iron chelates to cure iron chlorosis, which materials are covered by class C05.
3. In this subclass, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:
  - "plant growth regulators" are those materials which alter the plant through a chemical modification of the plant metabolism, such as auxins.
4. Biocidal, pest repellent, pest attractant or plant growth regulatory activity of compounds or preparations is further classified in subclass A01P.

#### Subclass index

PRESERVATION OF CORPSES OF HUMANS OR ANIMALS, OR OF PLANTS.....	1/00, 3/00
BIOCIDES, PEST REPELLANTS OR ATTRACTANTS, PLANT GROWTH REGULATORS	
Physical form or method of application.....	25/00
containing organic compounds.....	27/00-57/00, 61/00
containing inorganic compounds.....	59/00
containing micro-organisms, enzymes, extracts of animals or plants.....	63/00, 65/00

#### Preservation of bodies of humans or animals, or plants, or parts thereof

- 1/00 Preservation of bodies of humans or animals, or parts thereof**
- 1/02 • Preservation of living parts
- 3/00 Preservation of plants or parts thereof, e.g. inhibiting evaporation, improvement of the appearance of leaves** (preservation or chemical ripening of harvested fruit or vegetables A23B 7/00); **Grafting wax**
- 3/02 • Keeping cut flowers fresh chemically (apparatus therefor A01G 5/06)
- 3/04 • Grafting wax

#### Biocides; Pest repellants or attractants; Plant growth regulators [3]

##### Note(s)

1. Attention is drawn to the definitions of groups of chemical elements following the title of section C.
2. In groups A01N 27/00-A01N 65/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, an active ingredient is classified in the last appropriate place.
3. A composition, i.e. a mixture of two or more active ingredients is classified in the last of groups A01N 27/00-A01N 65/00 that provides for at least one of these active ingredients.
4. Any part of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (3), and which itself is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in the last appropriate place in groups A01N 27/00-A01N 65/00. The part can be either a single ingredient or a composition in itself.

5. Any part of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (3) or (4), and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in the last appropriate place in groups A01N 27/00-A01N 65/00. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as "additional information".
6. Where a compound is described as existing in tautomeric forms, it is classified as if existing in the form which is classified last in the system.
7. Compounds covered by different main groups according to alternatively specified parts of their formulae are classified in every one of the relevant main groups.
8. Salts formed between two or more organic compounds are classified as the compound providing the essential ion and it is also classified as the compound providing the other ion.
9. Salts or metal chelates of an organic compound are classified as that compound.
10. In this subclass, a foodstuff is not considered as an active ingredient.
11. Different materials applied in sequence, at different times, are considered as a mixture of all materials employed.
12. Synergistic or potentiated compositions are classified as if the synergist or potentiator were an active ingredient.
13. In groups A01N 25/00-A01N 65/00, the symbol X means nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur or a halogen; Y means nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur. A dotted line between atoms indicates an optional bond, e.g. ... indicates one or two single bonds or a double bond.

- 25/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators, characterised by their forms, or by their non-active ingredients or by their methods of application** (fungicidal, bactericidal, insecticidal, disinfecting or antiseptic paper D21H); **Substances for reducing the noxious effect of the active ingredients to organisms other than pests** [3]
- 25/02 • containing liquids as carriers, diluents or solvents [3]
  - 25/04 • • Dispersions or gels (foams A01N 25/16) [3]
  - 25/06 • • • Aerosols [3]
  - 25/08 • containing solids as carriers or diluents [3]
  - 25/10 • • Macromolecular compounds [3]
  - 25/12 • Powders or granules (A01N 25/26 takes precedence) [3]
  - 25/14 • • wettable [3]
  - 25/16 • Foams [3]
  - 25/18 • Vapour or smoke emitting compositions with delayed or sustained release [3]
  - 25/20 • Combustible or heat-generating compositions [3]
  - 25/22 • containing ingredients stabilising the active ingredients [3]
  - 25/24 • containing ingredients to enhance the sticking of the active ingredients [3]
  - 25/26 • in coated particulate form [3]
  - 25/28 • • Microcapsules [3]
  - 25/30 • characterised by the surfactants [3]
  - 25/32 • Ingredients for reducing the noxious effect of the active substances to organisms other than pests, e.g. toxicity reducing compositions, self-destructing compositions [3]
  - 25/34 • Shaped forms, e.g. sheets, not provided for in any other group of this main group [3]
- 27/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing hydrocarbons** [3]
- 29/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing halogenated hydrocarbons** [3]
- 29/02 • Acyclic compounds or compounds containing halogen attached to an aliphatic side chain of a cycloaliphatic ring system [3]
  - 29/04 • Halogen directly attached to a carbocyclic ring system [3]
  - 29/06 • • Hexachlorocyclohexane [3]
  - 29/08 • • Halogen directly attached to a polycyclic ring system [3]
  - 29/10 • Halogen attached to an aliphatic side chain of an aromatic ring system [3]
  - 29/12 • • 1,1-Di- or 1,1,1-tri-halo-2-aryl-ethane or -ethene or derivatives thereof, e.g. DDT [3]
- 31/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing organic oxygen or sulfur compounds** [3]
- 31/02 • Acyclic compounds [3]
  - 31/04 • Oxygen or sulfur attached to an aliphatic side chain of a carbocyclic ring system [3]
  - 31/06 • Oxygen or sulfur directly attached to a cycloaliphatic ring system [3]
  - 31/08 • Oxygen or sulfur directly attached to an aromatic ring system [3]
  - 31/10 • • Pentachlorophenol [3]
  - 31/12 • • Bis-chlorophenols [3]
  - 31/14 • • Ethers [3]
  - 31/16 • • with two or more oxygen or sulfur atoms directly attached to the same aromatic ring system [3]
- 33/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing organic nitrogen compounds** [3]
- 33/02 • Amines; Quaternary ammonium compounds [3]
  - 33/04 • • Nitrogen directly attached to aliphatic or cycloaliphatic carbon atoms [3]
  - 33/06 • • Nitrogen directly attached to an aromatic ring system [3]
  - 33/08 • • containing oxygen or sulfur [3]
  - 33/10 • • • having at least one oxygen or sulfur atom directly attached to an aromatic ring system [3]
  - 33/12 • • Quaternary ammonium compounds [3]
  - 33/14 • containing nitrogen-to-halogen bonds [3]
  - 33/16 • containing nitrogen-to-oxygen bonds [3]
  - 33/18 • • Nitro compounds [3]
  - 33/20 • • • containing oxygen or sulfur attached to the carbon skeleton containing the nitro group [3]
  - 33/22 • • • • having at least one oxygen or sulfur atom and at least one nitro group directly attached to the same aromatic ring system [3]
  - 33/24 • • only one oxygen atom attached to the nitrogen atom [3]
  - 33/26 • containing nitrogen-to-nitrogen bonds, e.g. azides, diazo-amino compounds, diazonium compounds, hydrazine derivatives [3]
- 35/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing organic compounds containing a carbon atom having two bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. aldehyde radical** [3]
- 35/02 • containing aliphatically bound aldehyde or keto groups, or thio-analogues thereof; Derivatives thereof, e.g. acetals [3]
  - 35/04 • containing aldehyde or keto groups, or thio-analogues thereof, directly attached to an aromatic ring system, e.g. acetophenone; Derivatives thereof, e.g. acetals [3]
  - 35/06 • containing keto or thioketo groups as part of a ring, e.g. cyclohexanone, quinone; Derivatives thereof, e.g. ketals [3]
  - 35/08 • at least one of the bonds to hetero atoms is to nitrogen [3]
  - 35/10 • • containing a carbon-to-nitrogen double bond [3]
- 37/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing organic compounds containing a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most two bonds to halogen, e.g. carboxylic acids** (containing cyclopropane carboxylic acids or derivatives thereof, e.g. cyclopropane carboxylic acid nitriles, A01N 53/00) [3]
- 37/02 • Saturated carboxylic acids or thio-analogues thereof; Derivatives thereof [3]
  - 37/04 • • polybasic [3]
  - 37/06 • Unsaturated carboxylic acids or thio-analogues thereof; Derivatives thereof [3]
  - 37/08 • containing carboxylic groups or thio-analogues thereof, directly attached by the carbon atom to a cycloaliphatic ring; Derivatives thereof [3]
  - 37/10 • Aromatic or araliphatic carboxylic acids, or thio-analogues thereof; Derivatives thereof [3]
  - 37/12 • containing the group  $\text{-CO-O-}\overset{\cdot\cdot}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\text{C}}}\text{=}\overset{\cdot\cdot}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\text{C}}}_{\text{n}}\text{=}\overset{\cdot\cdot}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\text{Y}}}$ , wherein C<sub>n</sub> means a carbon skeleton not containing a ring; Thio-analogues thereof [3]

- 37/14 • containing the group  $\text{—CO—O—C}\equiv\text{X}$ ; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 37/16 • containing the group  $\text{—CO—O—Y}$ ; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 37/18 • containing the group  $\text{—CO—N}$ , e.g. carboxylic acid amides or imides; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 37/20 • • containing the group  $\text{—CO—N}\equiv\text{C}\equiv\text{C}_n\text{—Y}$ , wherein  $\text{C}_n$  means a carbon skeleton not containing a ring; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 37/22 • • the nitrogen atom being directly attached to an aromatic ring system, e.g. anilides [3]
- 37/24 • • • containing at least one oxygen or sulfur atom being directly attached to the same aromatic ring system [3]
- 37/26 • • containing the group  $\text{—CO—N}\equiv\text{C}\equiv\text{X}$ ; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 37/28 • • containing the group  $\text{—CO—N}\equiv\text{X}$ ; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 37/30 • • containing the groups  $\text{—CO—N}$  and  $\text{—C}\equiv\text{X}$  both being directly attached by their carbon atoms to the same carbon skeleton, e.g.  $\text{H}_2\text{N—NH—CO—C}_6\text{H}_4\text{—COOCH}_3$ ; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 37/32 • • Cyclic imides of polybasic carboxylic acids or thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 37/34 • Nitriles [3]
- 37/36 • containing at least one carboxylic group or a thio-analogue, or a derivative thereof, and a singly bound oxygen or sulfur atom attached to the same carbon skeleton, this oxygen or sulfur atom not being a member of a carboxylic group or of a thio-analogue, or of a derivative thereof, e.g. hydroxy-carboxylic acids [3]
- 37/38 • • having at least one oxygen or sulfur atom attached to an aromatic ring system [3]
- 37/40 • • • having at least one carboxylic group or a thio-analogue, or a derivative thereof, and one oxygen or sulfur atom attached to the same aromatic ring system [3]
- 37/42 • containing within the same carbon skeleton a carboxylic group or a thio-analogue, or a derivative thereof, and a carbon atom having only two bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. keto-carboxylic acids [3]
- 37/44 • containing at least one carboxylic group or a thio-analogue, or a derivative thereof, and a nitrogen atom attached to the same carbon skeleton by a single or double bond, this nitrogen atom not being a member of a derivative or of a thio-analogue of a carboxylic group, e.g. amino-carboxylic acids [3]
- 37/46 • • N-acyl derivatives [3]
- 37/48 • • Nitro-carboxylic acids; Derivatives thereof [3]
- 37/50 • • the nitrogen atom being doubly bound to the carbon skeleton [3]
- 37/52 • containing  $\text{:X—C=N—}$  groups, e.g. carboxylic acid amidines [3]

**39/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing aryloxy- or arylthio-aliphatic or cycloaliphatic compounds, containing the group  $\text{Ar—O—C}_n\text{—Y}$  or  $\text{Ar—S—C}_n\text{—Y}$ , e.g. phenoxyethylamine, phenylthio-acetonitrile, phenoxyacetone [3]**

**Note(s)**

In this group, the symbol  $\text{C}_n$  means a carbon skeleton, not containing an aromatic ring system wherein  $n \geq 2$ .

- 39/02 • Aryloxy-carboxylic acids; Derivatives thereof [3]  
39/04 • • Aryloxy-acetic acids; Derivatives thereof [3]

**41/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing organic compounds containing a sulfur atom bound to a hetero atom [3]**

- 41/02 • containing a sulfur-to-oxygen double bond [3]  
41/04 • • Sulfonic acids; Derivatives thereof [3]  
41/06 • • • Sulfonic acid amides [3]  
41/08 • • • Sulfonic acid halides; alpha-Hydroxy-sulfonic acids; Amino-sulfonic acids; Thiosulfonic acids; Derivatives thereof [3]  
41/10 • • Sulfones; Sulfoxides [3]  
41/12 • not containing sulfur-to-oxygen bonds, e.g. polysulfides [3]

**43/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing heterocyclic compounds** (containing cyclic anhydrides, cyclic imides A01N 37/00; containing compounds of the

formula  $\text{X}_m\text{—C}_n\text{—N}\begin{smallmatrix} \text{C} \\ \diagup \end{smallmatrix} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C} \\ \diagdown \end{smallmatrix}$ , containing only one heterocyclic ring, wherein  $m \geq 1$  and  $n \geq 0$  and  $\text{—N}\begin{smallmatrix} \text{C} \\ \diagup \end{smallmatrix} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{C} \\ \diagdown \end{smallmatrix}$  is unsubstituted or alkylsubstituted pyrrolidine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, piperazine or a polymethyleneimine with four or more  $\text{CH}_2$  groups A01N 33/00-A01N 41/12; containing cyclopropane carboxylic acids or derivatives thereof, e.g. esters having heterocyclic rings, A01N 53/00) [3]

**Note(s)**

- In this group, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
  - "hetero ring" is a ring having at least one halogen, nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur atom as a ring member;
  - "bridged" means the presence of at least one fusion other than ortho, peri and spiro;
  - two rings are "condensed" if they share at least one ring member, i.e. "spiro" and "bridged" are considered as condensed;
  - "condensed ring system" is a ring system in which all rings are condensed among themselves.
- In this group, the number of rings in a condensed ring system equals the number of scissions necessary to convert the ring system into one acyclic chain. The relevant rings in a condensed system are chosen according to the following criteria consecutively:
  - lowest number of ring members,
  - highest number of hetero atoms as ring members.

Ring members shared by two or more rings are regarded as being a member of each of these rings.

- 43/02 • having rings with one or more oxygen or sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atom [3]  
43/04 • • with one hetero atom [3]

- 43/06 • • • five-membered rings [3]
- 43/08 • • • • with oxygen as the ring hetero atom [3]
- 43/10 • • • • with sulfur as the ring hetero atom [3]
- 43/12 • • • • condensed with a carbocyclic ring [3]
- 43/14 • • • six-membered rings [3]
- 43/16 • • • • with oxygen as the ring hetero atom [3]
- 43/18 • • • • with sulfur as the ring hetero atom [3]
- 43/20 • • • three- or four-membered rings [3]
- 43/22 • • • rings with more than six members [3]
- 43/24 • • with two or more hetero atoms [3]
- 43/26 • • • five-membered rings [3]
- 43/28 • • • • with two hetero atoms in positions 1,3 [3]
- 43/30 • • • • • with two oxygen atoms in positions 1,3, condensed with a carbocyclic ring [3]
- 43/32 • • • six-membered rings [3]
- 43/34 • having rings with one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom [3]
- 43/36 • • five-membered rings [3]
- 43/38 • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings [3]
- 43/40 • • six-membered rings [3]
- 43/42 • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings [3]
- 43/44 • • three- or four-membered rings [3]
- 43/46 • • rings with more than six members [3]
- 43/48 • having rings with two nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [3]
- 43/50 • • 1,3-Diazoles; Hydrogenated 1,3-diazoles [3]
- 43/52 • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings, e.g. benzimidazoles [3]
- 43/54 • • 1,3-Diazines; Hydrogenated 1,3-diazines [3]
- 43/56 • • 1,2-Diazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2-diazoles [3]
- 43/58 • • 1,2-Diazines; Hydrogenated 1,2-diazines [3]
- 43/60 • • 1,4-Diazines; Hydrogenated 1,4-diazines [3]
- 43/62 • • three- or four-membered rings or rings with more than six members [3]
- 43/64 • having rings with three nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [3, 4]
- 43/647 • • Triazoles; Hydrogenated triazoles [4]
- 43/653 • • • 1,2,4-Triazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2,4-triazoles [4]
- 43/66 • • 1,3,5-Triazines, not hydrogenated and not substituted at the ring nitrogen atoms [3]
- 43/68 • • • with two or three nitrogen atoms directly attached to ring carbon atoms [3]
- 43/70 • • • • Diamino-1,3,5-triazines with only one oxygen, sulfur or halogen atom or only one cyano, thiocyno ( $-\text{SCN}$ ), cyanato ( $-\text{OCN}$ ) or azido ( $-\text{N}_3$ ) group directly attached to a ring carbon atom [3]
- 43/707 • • 1,2,3- or 1,2,4-Triazines; Hydrogenated 1,2,3- or 1,2,4-triazines [4]
- 43/713 • having rings with four or more nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [4]
- 43/72 • having rings with nitrogen atoms and oxygen or sulfur atoms, as ring hetero atoms [3]
- 43/74 • • five-membered rings with one nitrogen atom and either one oxygen atom or one sulfur atom in positions 1,3 [3]
- 43/76 • • • 1,3-Oxazoles; Hydrogenated 1,3-oxazoles [3]
- 43/78 • • • 1,3-Thiazoles; Hydrogenated 1,3-thiazoles [3]
- 43/80 • • five-membered rings with one nitrogen atom and either one oxygen atom or one sulfur atom in positions 1,2 [3]
- 43/82 • • five-membered rings with three hetero atoms [3]
- 43/824 • • • 1,3,4-Oxa(thia)diazoles; Hydrogenated 1,3,4-oxa(thia)diazoles [6]
- 43/828 • • • 1,2,3-Oxa(thia)diazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2,3-oxa(thia)diazoles [6]
- 43/832 • • • 1,2,5-Oxa(thia)diazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2,5-oxa(thia)diazoles [6]
- 43/836 • • • 1,2,4-Oxa(thia)diazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2,4-oxa(thia)diazoles [6]
- 43/84 • • six-membered rings with one nitrogen atom and either one oxygen atom or one sulfur atom in positions 1,4 [3]
- 43/86 • • six-membered rings with one nitrogen atom and either one oxygen atom or one sulfur atom in positions 1,3 [3]
- 43/88 • • six-membered rings with three ring hetero atoms [3]
- 43/90 • having two or more relevant hetero rings, condensed among themselves or with a common carbocyclic ring system [3]
- 43/92 • having rings with one or more halogen atoms as ring hetero atoms [3]
- 45/00 **Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing compounds having three or more carbocyclic rings condensed among themselves, at least one ring not being a six-membered ring** (halogenated hydrocarbons A01N 29/08; condensed with heterocyclic rings A01N 43/00) [3]
- 45/02 • having three carbocyclic rings [3]
- 47/00 **Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing organic compounds containing a carbon atom not being member of a ring and having no bond to a carbon or hydrogen atom, e.g. derivatives of carbonic acid** (carbon tetrahalides A01N 29/02) [3]
- 47/02 • the carbon atom having no bond to a nitrogen atom [3]
- 47/04 • • containing  $\text{:N}-\text{S}-\text{C}=\text{Hal}_3$  groups [3]
- 47/06 • • containing  $-\text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{O}-$  groups; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 47/08 • the carbon atom having one or more single bonds to nitrogen atoms [3]
- 47/10 • • Carbamic acid derivatives, i.e. containing the group  $-\text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{N}$ ; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 47/12 • • • containing a  $-\text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{N}$  group, or a thio-analogue thereof, neither directly attached to a ring nor the nitrogen atom being a member of a heterocyclic ring [3]
- 47/14 • • • • Di-thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 47/16 • • • the nitrogen atom being part of a heterocyclic ring [3]
- 47/18 • • • containing a  $-\text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{N}$  group, or a thio-analogue thereof, directly attached to a heterocyclic or cycloaliphatic ring [3]
- 47/20 • • • N-Aryl derivatives thereof [3]
- 47/22 • • • O-Aryl or S-Aryl esters thereof [3]
- 47/24 • • • containing the groups  $\begin{array}{c} \text{X} \\ \vdots \\ \text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{N} \end{array}$ ,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{X} \\ \vdots \\ \text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{N} \end{array}$  or  $\begin{array}{c} \text{X} \\ \vdots \\ \text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{S} \end{array}$ ; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 47/26 • • • Oxidation products of dithiocarbamic acid derivatives, e.g. thiuram sulfides [3]
- 47/28 • • Ureas or thioureas containing the groups  $\text{:N}-\text{CO}-\text{N}$  or  $\text{:N}-\text{CS}-\text{N}$  (isoureas, isothiouras A01N 47/42) [3]
- 47/30 • • • Derivatives containing the group  $\text{:N}-\text{CO}-\text{N}$  —aryl or  $\text{:N}-\text{CS}-\text{N}$  —aryl [3]

- 47/32 • • • containing  $\text{>N—CO—N<}$  or  $\text{>N—CS—N<}$  groups directly attached to a cycloaliphatic ring [3]
- 47/34 • • • containing the groups  
 $\text{>N—CO—N—CO—}$ ,  
 $\text{>N—CO—N—C(=O)—O—}$ ,  $\text{>N—CO—N=S—}$ ,  
 $\text{>N—CO—N=N—}$  or  $\text{>N—CO—N—C(=N)—N<}$ , e.g. biuret;  
 Thio-analogues thereof; Urea-aldehyde condensation products [3]
- 47/36 • • • containing the group  $\text{>N—CO—N<}$  directly attached to at least one heterocyclic ring; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 47/38 • • • containing the group  $\text{>N—CO—N<}$  where at least one nitrogen atom is part of a heterocyclic ring; Thio-analogues thereof [3]
- 47/40 • the carbon atom having a double or triple bond to nitrogen, e.g. cyanates, cyanamides (inorganic cyanamides A01N 59/24) [3]
- 47/42 • • containing  $\text{—N=CX}_2$  groups, e.g. isothiourea [3]
- 47/44 • • • Guanidine; Derivatives thereof [3]
- 47/46 • • containing  $\text{—N=C=S}$  groups [3]
- 47/48 • • containing  $\text{—S—C}\equiv\text{N}$  groups (A01N 43/00-A01N 47/38 take precedence) [3]
- 49/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing compounds containing**
- $$\begin{array}{c} \text{C} \\ | \\ \text{[C}_n\text{]—C}^* \text{—C}^* \text{—C}^* \text{—C}^* \text{—[C}_m\text{]} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{X} \quad \text{X} \end{array}$$
- the group wherein  $m+n \geq 1$ ,  
 both X together may also mean  $\text{—Y—}$  or a direct carbon-to-carbon bond, and the carbon atoms marked with an asterisk are not part of any ring system other than that which may be formed by the atoms X, the carbon atoms in square brackets being part of any acyclic or cyclic structure, or the group
- $$\begin{array}{c} \text{A} \quad \text{C} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{—C}^* \text{—C}^* \text{—[C}_n\text{]—C}^* \text{—C}^* \text{—} \end{array}$$
- wherein A means a carbon atom or Y,  $n \geq 0$ , and not more than one of these carbon atoms being a member of the same ring system, e.g. juvenile insect hormones or mimics thereof (containing hydrocarbons A01N 27/00) [3]
- 51/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing organic compounds having the sequences of atoms  $\text{O—N—S}$ ,  $\text{X—O—S}$ ,  $\text{N—N—S}$ ,  $\text{O—N—N}$  or O-halogen, regardless of the number of bonds each atom has and with no atom of these sequences forming part of a heterocyclic ring [3]**
- 53/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing cyclopropane carboxylic acids or derivatives thereof [3]**
- $$\begin{array}{c} \text{—C—} \\ | \\ \text{—C—} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{C} \end{array} \text{—CO—O—C}^*$$
- 53/02 • Esters containing the group  $\begin{array}{c} \text{—C—} \\ | \\ \text{—C—} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{C} \end{array} \text{—CO—O—C}^*$ , wherein the carbon atom marked with an asterisk is acyclic or part of a ring or ring system; Thio-analogues thereof [6]
- 53/04 • • having heterocyclic rings [6]
- 53/06 • • the carbon atom marked with an asterisk being acyclic and directly bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring, e.g. benzyl esters; Thio-analogues thereof [6]
- 53/08 • • • with aryloxy groups bound to the six-membered aromatic ring, e.g. phenoxybenzyl esters; Thio-analogues thereof [6]
- 53/10 • • Esters not provided for in groups A01N 53/04 or A01N 53/06 [6]
- $$\begin{array}{c} \text{—C—} \\ | \\ \text{—C—} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{C} \end{array} \text{—X—} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{—C—} \\ | \\ \text{—C—} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{C} \end{array} \text{—Y—} \quad \text{X, Y}$$
- 53/12 • Compounds containing the group  $\begin{array}{c} \text{—C—} \\ | \\ \text{—C—} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{C} \end{array} \text{—X—}$ , or Y being a nitrogen atom, e.g. cyclopropane carboxylic acid amides [6]
- 53/14 • Cyclopropane carboxylic acid nitriles [6]
- 55/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing organic compounds containing elements other than carbon, hydrogen, halogen, oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur (containing organo-phosphorus compounds A01N 57/00) [3]**
- 55/02 • containing metal atoms [3]
- 55/04 • • Tin [3]
- 55/06 • • Mercury [3]
- 55/08 • containing boron [3]
- 55/10 • containing silicon [6]
- 57/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing organic phosphorus compounds [3]**
- 57/02 • having alternatively specified atoms bound to the phosphorus atom and not covered by a single one of groups A01N 57/10, A01N 57/18, A01N 57/26, A01N 57/34 [3]
- 57/04 • • containing acyclic or cycloaliphatic radicals [3]
- 57/06 • • containing aromatic radicals [3]
- 57/08 • • containing heterocyclic radicals [3]
- 57/10 • having phosphorus-to-oxygen bonds or phosphorus-to-sulfur bonds (A01N 57/02 takes precedence) [3]
- 57/12 • • containing acyclic or cycloaliphatic radicals [3]
- 57/14 • • containing aromatic radicals [3]
- 57/16 • • containing heterocyclic radicals [3]
- 57/18 • having phosphorus-to-carbon bonds (A01N 57/02 takes precedence) [3]
- 57/20 • • containing acyclic or cycloaliphatic radicals [3]
- 57/22 • • containing aromatic radicals [3]
- 57/24 • • containing heterocyclic radicals [3]
- 57/26 • having phosphorus-to-nitrogen bonds (A01N 57/02 takes precedence) [3]
- 57/28 • • containing acyclic or cycloaliphatic radicals [3]
- 57/30 • • containing aromatic radicals [3]
- 57/32 • • containing heterocyclic radicals [3]
- 57/34 • having phosphorus-to-halogen bonds; Phosphonium salts [3]
- 57/36 • having phosphorus as a ring member [3]
- 59/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing elements or inorganic compounds [3]**
- 59/02 • Sulfur; Selenium; Tellurium; Compounds thereof [3]
- 59/04 • Carbon disulfide; Carbon monoxide; Carbon dioxide (treatment of plants with carbon dioxide A01G 7/02) [3]
- 59/06 • Aluminium; Calcium; Magnesium; Compounds thereof [3]
- 59/08 • Alkali metal chlorides; Alkaline earth metal chlorides [3]
- 59/10 • Fluorides [3]
- 59/12 • Iodine, e.g. iodophors; Compounds thereof [3]
- 59/14 • Boron; Compounds thereof [3]
- 59/16 • Heavy metals; Compounds thereof [3]
- 59/18 • • Mercury [3]
- 59/20 • • Copper [3]

## A01N

- 59/22 • • Arsenic [3]
- 59/24 • Cyanogen or compounds thereof, e.g. hydrogen cyanide, cyanic acid, cyanamide, thiocyanic acid [3]
- 59/26 • Phosphorus; Compounds thereof [3]
- 61/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing substances of unknown or undetermined composition, e.g. substances characterised only by the mode of action [3]**
- 61/02 • Mineral oils; Tar oils; Tar; Distillates, extracts or conversion products thereof (containing single chemical compounds isolated from these materials A01N 27/00-A01N 59/00) [3]
- 63/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing micro-organisms, viruses, microbial fungi, animals, e.g. nematodes, or substances produced by, or obtained from micro-organisms, viruses, microbial fungi or animals, e.g. enzymes or fermentates (containing compounds of determined constitution A01N 27/00-A01N 59/00) [3]**
- 63/02 • Substances produced by, or obtained from, micro-organisms or animals [3]
- 63/04 • Microbial fungi; Substances produced thereby or obtained therefrom [3]
- 65/00 Biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators containing material from algae, lichens, bryophyta, multi-cellular fungi or plants, or extracts thereof (containing compounds of determined constitution A01N 27/00-A01N 59/00) [3, 2009.01]**
- 65/03 • Algae [2009.01]
- 65/04 • Pteridophyta [fern allies]; Filicophyta [ferns] [2009.01]
- 65/06 • Coniferophyta [gymnosperms], e.g. cypress [2009.01]
- 65/08 • Magnoliopsida [dicotyledons] [2009.01]
- 65/10 • • Apiaceae or Umbelliferae [Carrot family], e.g. parsley, caraway, dill, lovage, fennel or snakebed [2009.01]
- 65/12 • • Asteraceae or Compositae [Aster or Sunflower family], e.g. daisy, pyrethrum, artichoke, lettuce, sunflower, wormwood or tarragon [2009.01]
- 65/14 • • Celastraceae [Staff-tree or Bittersweet family], e.g. spindle tree, bittersweet or thunder god vine [2009.01]
- 65/16 • • Ericaceae [Heath or Blueberry family], e.g. rhododendron, arbutus, pieris, cranberry or bilberry [2009.01]
- 65/18 • • Euphorbiaceae [Spurge family], e.g. ricinus [castorbean] [2009.01]
- 65/20 • • Fabaceae or Leguminosae [Pea or Legume family], e.g. pea, lentil, soybean, clover, acacia, honey locust, derris or millettia [2009.01]
- 65/22 • • Lamiaceae or Labiatae [Mint family], e.g. thyme, rosemary, skullcap, selfheal, lavender, perilla, pennyroyal, peppermint or spearmint [2009.01]
- 65/24 • • Lauraceae [Laurel family], e.g. laurel, avocado, sassafras, cinnamon or camphor [2009.01]
- 65/26 • • Meliaceae [Chinaberry or Mahogany family], e.g. mahogany, langsat or neem [2009.01]
- 65/28 • • Myrtaceae [Myrtle family], e.g. teatree or clove [2009.01]
- 65/30 • • Polygonaceae [Buckwheat family], e.g. red-knees or rhubarb [2009.01]
- 65/32 • • Ranunculaceae [Buttercup family], e.g. hepatica, hydrastis or goldenseal [2009.01]
- 65/34 • • Rosaceae [Rose family], e.g. strawberry, hawthorn, plum, cherry, peach, apricot or almond [2009.01]
- 65/36 • • Rutaceae [Rue family], e.g. lime, orange, lemon, corktree or pricklyash [2009.01]
- 65/38 • • Solanaceae [Potato family], e.g. nightshade, tomato, tobacco or chilli pepper [2009.01]
- 65/40 • Liliopsida [monocotyledons] [2009.01]
- 65/42 • • Aloeaceae [Aloe family] or Liliaceae [Lily family], e.g. aloe, veratrum, onion, garlic or chives [2009.01]
- 65/44 • • Poaceae or Gramineae [Grass family], e.g. bamboo, lemon grass or citronella grass [2009.01]
- 65/46 • • Stemonaceae [Stemona family], e.g. croomia [2009.01]
- 65/48 • • Zingiberaceae [Ginger family], e.g. ginger or galangal [2009.01]

## A01P BIOCIDAL, PEST REPELLANT, PEST ATTRACTANT OR PLANT GROWTH REGULATORY ACTIVITY OF CHEMICAL COMPOUNDS OR PREPARATIONS [2006.01]

### Note(s) [2006.01]

1. This subclass covers biocidal, pest repellent, pest attractant or plant growth regulatory activity of chemical compounds or preparations already classified as such in subclasses A01N or C12N, or in classes C01, C07 or C08.
2. Attention is drawn to the notes following the title of subclass A01N, which are also applicable to this subclass.
3. In this subclass, activity is classified in all appropriate places.
4. The classification symbols of this subclass are not listed first when assigned to patent documents.

**1/00 Disinfectants; Antimicrobial compounds or mixtures thereof [2006.01]**

**3/00 Fungicides [2006.01]**

**5/00 Nematocides [2006.01]**

**7/00 Arthropodicides [2006.01]**

7/02 • Acaricides [2006.01]

7/04 • Insecticides [2006.01]

**9/00 Molluscicides [2006.01]**

**11/00 Rodenticides [2006.01]**

**13/00 Herbicides; Algicides [2006.01]**

13/02 • selective [2006.01]

**15/00 Biocides for specific purposes not provided for in groups A01P 1/00-A01P 13/00 [2006.01]**

**17/00 Pest repellants [2006.01]**

**19/00 Pest attractants [2006.01]**

**21/00 Plant growth regulators [2006.01]**

23/00 Chemosterilants [2006.01]

## FOODSTUFFS; TOBACCO

### A21 BAKING; EQUIPMENT FOR MAKING OR PROCESSING DOUGHS; DOUGHS FOR BAKING

#### Note(s)

Processes using enzymes or micro-organisms in order to:

- i. liberate, separate or purify a pre-existing compound or composition, or to
- ii. treat textiles or clean solid surfaces of materials

are further classified in subclass C12S.

**A21B BAKERS' OVENS; MACHINES OR EQUIPMENT FOR BAKING** (domestic baking equipment A47J 37/00; combustion apparatus F23; domestic stoves or ranges being wholly or partly ovens F24B, F24C)

#### **1/00 Bakers' ovens**

- 1/02 • characterised by the heating arrangements
- 1/04 • • Ovens heated by fire before baking only
- 1/06 • • Ovens heated by radiators
- 1/08 • • • by steam-heated radiators
- 1/10 • • • by radiators heated by fluids other than steam
- 1/14 • • • Arrangement of radiators
- 1/22 • • • by electric radiators (A21B 2/00 takes precedence; electric heating elements H05B)
- 1/24 • • Ovens heated by media flowing therethrough
- 1/26 • • • by hot air
- 1/28 • • • by gaseous combustion products
- 1/33 • • Ovens heated directly by combustion products (A21B 1/04 takes precedence)
- 1/36 • • Ovens heated directly by hot fluid (A21B 1/06, A21B 1/33 take precedence)
- 1/40 • characterised by the means for regulating the temperature (temperature-sensitive elements G01K)
- 1/42 • characterised by the baking surfaces moving during the baking (conveying in general B65G)
- 1/44 • • with surfaces rotating in a horizontal plane
- 1/46 • • with surfaces suspended from an endless conveyer or a revolving wheel
- 1/48 • • with surfaces in the form of an endless band
- 1/50 • characterised by having removable baking surfaces
- 1/52 • Portable ovens; Collapsible ovens (travelling or camp cookers A47J 33/00)

#### **2/00 Baking apparatus employing high-frequency or infra-red heating**

#### **3/00 Parts or accessories of ovens**

- 3/02 • Doors; Flap gates (general features of doors E06B)
- 3/04 • Air-treatment devices for ovens, e.g. regulating humidity
- 3/07 • Charging or discharging ovens (A21B 3/18 takes precedence)
- 3/10 • Means for illuminating ovens
- 3/13 • Baking-tins; Baking forms
- 3/15 • Baking sheets; Baking boards
- 3/16 • Machines for cleaning or greasing baking surfaces
- 3/18 • Discharging baked goods from tins (unpacking in general B65B 69/00)

#### **5/00 Baking apparatus for special goods; Other baking apparatus**

- 5/02 • Apparatus for baking hollow articles, waffles, pastry, biscuits, or the like
- 5/03 • • for baking pancakes (frying pans A47J 37/10) [3]
- 5/04 • Apparatus for baking cylindrical cakes on spits
- 5/06 • Apparatus for baking in salt solution, e.g. for making pretzels
- 5/08 • Apparatus for baking in baking fat or oil, e.g. for making doughnuts

#### **7/00 Baking plants**

**A21C MACHINES OR EQUIPMENT FOR MAKING OR PROCESSING DOUGHS; HANDLING BAKED ARTICLES MADE FROM DOUGH**

#### Subclass index

#### WORKING DOUGH BEFORE BAKING

- Mixing, kneading, homogenising..... 1/00, 7/00
- Shaping..... 3/00, 11/00
- Dividing; handling..... 5/00, 9/00, 11/00

APPARATUS PERMITTING DOUGH TO RISE..... 13/00

OTHER MACHINES OR EQUIPMENT FOR MAKING OR PROCESSING DOUGH..... 14/00

HANDLING BAKED ARTICLES..... 15/00

#### **1/00 Mixing or kneading machines for the preparation of**

**dough** (domestic mixing or kneading machines A47J 43/00, A47J 44/00)



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1/02 • with vertically-mounted tools; Machines for whipping or beating</p> <p>1/04 • with inclined rotating mixing arms or levers</p> <p>1/06 • with horizontally-mounted mixing or kneading tools; Worm mixers</p> <p>1/08 • with rollers</p> <p>1/10 • with additional aerating apparatus for the manufacture of aerated doughs</p> <p>1/12 • for the preparation of dough directly from grain</p> <p>1/14 • Structural elements of mixing or kneading machines</p> <p><b>3/00 Machines or apparatus for shaping batches of dough before subdivision</b></p> <p>3/02 • Dough-sheeters; Rolling-machines; Rolling-pins</p> <p>3/04 • Dough-extruding machines</p> <p>3/06 • Machines for coiling sheets of dough, e.g. for producing rolls</p> <p>3/08 • Machines for twisting strips of dough, e.g. for making pretzels</p> <p>3/10 • combined with dough-dividing apparatus</p> <p><b>5/00 Dough-dividing machines</b></p> <p>5/02 • with division boxes and ejection plungers</p> <p>5/04 • • with division boxes in a revolving body with radially-working pistons</p> <p>5/06 • • with division boxes in a revolving body with axially-working pistons</p> <p>5/08 • with radial, i.e. star-like, cutter-blades slidable in the slots of, and relatively to, a pressing-plunger</p> <p><b>7/00 Machines which homogenise the subdivided dough by working other than by kneading</b></p> <p>7/01 • with endless bands</p> <p>7/02 • with moulding channels (A21C 7/01 takes precedence)</p> <p>7/04 • with moulding cups (A21C 7/01 takes precedence)</p> <p>7/06 • combined with dividing machines with radial, i.e. star-like, cutter-blades slidable in the slots of, and relatively to, a pressing-plunger</p> <p><b>9/00 Other apparatus for handling dough or dough pieces</b></p> | <p>9/02 • Apparatus for hanging or distributing strings of dough, such as noodles, spaghetti or macaroni, on bars</p> <p>9/04 • Apparatus for spreading granular material on, or sweeping or coating the surfaces of, pieces or sheets of dough</p> <p>9/06 • Apparatus for filling pieces of dough such as doughnuts</p> <p>9/08 • Depositing, arranging and conveying apparatus for handling pieces, e.g. sheets of dough</p> <p><b>11/00 Other machines for forming the dough into its final shape before cooking or baking</b></p> <p>11/02 • Embossing machines</p> <p>11/04 • • with cutting and embossing rollers or drums</p> <p>11/06 • • handling regularly pre-shaped sheets of dough</p> <p>11/08 • • with engraved moulds, e.g. rotary machines with die rolls</p> <p>11/10 • combined with cutting apparatus</p> <p>11/12 • Apparatus for slotting, slitting or perforating the surface of pieces of dough</p> <p>11/14 • • for star-like stamping</p> <p>11/16 • Extruding machines</p> <p>11/18 • • with pistons</p> <p>11/20 • • with worms</p> <p>11/22 • Apparatus with rollers and cutting discs or blades for shaping noodles</p> <p>11/24 • Apparatus for cutting out noodles from a sheet or ribbon of dough by an engaging pair of grooved rollers</p> <p><b>13/00 Provers, i.e. apparatus permitting dough to rise</b></p> <p>13/02 • with endless conveyers</p> <p><b>14/00 Machines or equipment for making or processing dough, not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]</b></p> <p><b>15/00 Apparatus for handling baked articles</b></p> <p>15/02 • Apparatus for shaping or moulding baked wafers; Making multi-layer wafer sheets</p> <p>15/04 • Cutting or slicing machines or devices specially adapted for baked articles other than bread (for cutting or slicing bread B26B, B26D)</p> |
|--|--|

**A21D TREATMENT, e.g. PRESERVATION, OF FLOUR OR DOUGH FOR BAKING, e.g. BY ADDITION OF MATERIALS; BAKING; BAKERY PRODUCTS; PRESERVATION THEREOF [1, 2006.01]**

**Subclass index**

PRODUCTS BEFORE BAKING; TREATMENT OR CONSERVATION THEREOF.....10/00, 2/00-8/00

BAKING OF DOUGH.....8/00

BAKERY PRODUCTS; PRESERVATION OR REFRESHING THEREOF.....13/00, 15/00, 17/00

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>2/00 Treatment of flour or dough by adding materials thereto before or during baking (A21D 10/00 takes precedence) [2, 2006.01]</b></p> <p><b>Note(s)</b></p> <p>In groups A21D 2/02-A21D 2/40, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a substance is classified in the last appropriate place.</p> <p>2/02 • by adding inorganic substances</p> <p>2/04 • • Oxygen; Oxygen-generating compounds, e.g. ozone, peroxides</p> | <p>2/06 • • Reducing agents</p> <p>2/08 • by adding organic substances</p> <p>2/10 • • Hydrocarbons</p> <p>2/12 • • Halohydrocarbons</p> <p>2/14 • • Organic oxygen compounds</p> <p>2/16 • • • Fatty acid esters</p> <p>2/18 • • • Carbohydrates</p> <p>2/20 • • • Peroxides</p> <p>2/22 • • • Ascorbic acid</p> <p>2/24 • • Organic nitrogen compounds</p> |
|---|--|

## A21D

- 2/26 • • • Proteins
- 2/28 • • Organic sulfur compounds
- 2/30 • • Organic phosphorus compounds
- 2/32 • • • Phosphatides
- 2/34 • • Animal material
- 2/36 • • Vegetable material
- 2/38 • • • Seed germs; Germinated cereals; Extracts thereof
- 2/40 • Apparatus for the chemical treatment of flour or dough
- 4/00 Preserving flour or dough before baking by storage in an inert atmosphere**
- 6/00 Other treatment of flour or dough before baking, e.g. cooling, irradiating, heating [2]**
- 8/00 Methods for preparing dough or for baking** (A21D 2/00 takes precedence)
  - 8/02 • Methods for preparing dough; Treating dough prior to baking (machines or equipment for making or processing dough A21C)
  - 8/04 • • treating dough with micro-organisms or enzymes
  - 8/06 • Baking processes (bakers' ovens A21B)
- 8/08 • Prevention of sticking, e.g. to baking plates
- 8/10 • • using dusting powders
- 10/00 Batters, dough or mixtures before baking [2]**
  - 10/02 • Ready-for-oven doughs, e.g. packaged doughs [2]
  - 10/04 • Batters [2]
- 13/00 Finished or partly finished bakery products**
  - 13/02 • Bread from whole meal or containing rough-ground grain or bran
  - 13/04 • Bread from materials other than rye or wheat flour
  - 13/06 • Bread with modified starch or protein content [2]
  - 13/08 • Pastry, e.g. cake, biscuit, puff-pastry (icing or frosting or mixes therefor A23G 3/00)
- 15/00 Preserving finished bakery products; Improving** (refreshing A21D 17/00; packaging or wrapping bakery products B65B, e.g. B65B 23/10, B65B 25/16) [2]
  - 15/02 • by cooling [2]
  - 15/04 • by heat treatment [2]
  - 15/06 • by irradiation [2]
  - 15/08 • by coating [2]
- 17/00 Refreshing bakery products** (improving A21D 15/00) [2]

## A22 BUTCHERING; MEAT TREATMENT; PROCESSING POULTRY OR FISH

### A22B SLAUGHTERING

- 1/00 Apparatus for fettering animals to be slaughtered**
- 3/00 Slaughtering or stunning** (cutting in general B26)
  - 3/02 • by means of bolts, e.g. slaughtering pistols, cartridges
  - 3/04 • Masks for animals to be slaughtered; Masks combined with stunning arrangements
  - 3/06 • Slaughtering or stunning by electric current (electric circuits therefor H05C)
  - 3/08 • for poultry or fish, e.g. slaughtering pliers, slaughtering shears
  - 3/10 • Slaughtering tools; Slaughtering knives
  - 3/12 • Kosher slaughtering devices
- 5/00 Accessories for use during or after slaughtering**
- 5/02 • Slaughtering pens
- 5/04 • Blood-collecting apparatus; Blood-stirring devices
- 5/06 • Slaughtering stands or spreaders for cattle
- 5/08 • Scalding; Scraping; Dehairing; Singeing (treatment of hides or skins C14B)
- 5/10 • • Hand-operated instruments
- 5/12 • • Scalding kettles
- 5/14 • Clips for the tongue; Arrangements for closing the throat
- 5/16 • Skinning instruments or knives
- 5/18 • Cleaning the stomach of slaughtered animals
- 5/20 • Splitting instruments
- 7/00 Slaughterhouse arrangements**

**A22C PROCESSING MEAT, POULTRY, OR FISH** (preserving A23B; obtaining protein compositions for foodstuffs A23J 1/00; fish, meat or poultry preparations A23L; disintegrating, e.g. chopping meat, B02C 18/00; preparation of proteins C07K 1/00)

### Subclass index

#### PROCESSING MEAT

- Apparatus for mixing, pounding, tenderising.....5/00, 7/00, 9/00
- Other apparatus.....11/00-17/00
- Plants, factories, or the like.....18/00

#### PROCESSING POULTRY.....21/00

#### PROCESSING FISH OR SHELLFISH.....25/00, 29/00

**Processing meat**

- 5/00 Apparatus for mixing meat, sausage-meat, or meat products** (mixing in general B01F)
- 7/00 Apparatus for pounding, forming, or pressing meat, sausage-meat, or meat products**
- 9/00 Apparatus for tenderising meat, e.g. ham**
- 11/00 Sausage-making**
- 11/02 • Sausage filling or stuffing machines
  - 11/04 • • with mechanically-operated piston moving to-and-fro
  - 11/06 • • with piston operated by liquid or gaseous means
  - 11/08 • • with pressing-worm or other rotary-mounted pressing-members
  - 11/10 • Apparatus for twisting sausages
  - 11/12 • Apparatus for tying sausage skins
- 13/00 Sausage casings**
- 13/02 • Shirring of sausage casings [2]
- 15/00 Apparatus for hanging-up meat or sausages** (conveyers B65G)
- 17/00 Other devices for processing meat or bones**
- 17/02 • Apparatus for holding meat or bones while cutting
  - 17/04 • Bone cleaning devices
  - 17/06 • Bone-shears; Bone-crushers [2]
  - 17/08 • Cleaning, e.g. washing, meat or sausages [2]
  - 17/10 • Marking meat or sausages
  - 17/12 • Apparatus for cutting-off rind
  - 17/14 • Working-up animal intestines; Apparatus for cutting intestines; Machines for pulling intestines to pieces
  - 17/16 • Cleaning of intestines; Machines for removing fat or slime from intestines

**18/00 Plants, factories, or the like for processing meat** (for processing poultry only A22C 21/00; for processing fish only A22C 25/00)

**21/00 Processing poultry**

- 21/02 • Plucking mechanisms for poultry
- 21/04 • Scalding, singeing, waxing, or dewaxing poultry
- 21/06 • Eviscerating devices for poultry

**Processing fish, including shellfish****25/00 Processing fish**

- 25/02 • Washing or descaling fish
- 25/04 • Sorting fish; Separating ice from fish packed in ice
- 25/06 • Work-tables; Fish-holding or auxiliary devices in connection with work-tables
- 25/08 • Holding, guiding, or conveying fish before, during or after its preparation (A22C 25/06 takes precedence)
- 25/10 • Devices for threading fish on strings or the like
- 25/12 • Arranging fish, e.g. according to the position of head and tail
- 25/14 • Beheading, eviscerating, or cleaning fish
- 25/16 • Removing fish-bones; Filleting fish
- 25/17 • Skinning fish
- 25/18 • Cutting fish into portions
- 25/20 • Shredding; Cutting into cubes; Flaking
- 25/22 • Fish-rolling apparatus

**29/00 Processing shellfish, e.g. oysters, lobsters**

- 29/02 • Processing shrimps, lobsters or the like [2]
- 29/04 • Processing bivalves, e.g. oysters (oyster knives with openers A47G 21/06) [2]

**A23 FOODS OR FOODSTUFFS; THEIR TREATMENT, NOT COVERED BY OTHER CLASSES****Note(s)**

1. Attention is drawn to the following places:
  - C08B.....Polysaccharides, derivatives thereof
  - C11.....Animal or vegetable oils, fats, fatty substances or waxes
  - C12.....Biochemistry, beer, spirits, wine, vinegar
  - C13.....Sugar industry.
2. Processes using enzymes or micro-organisms in order to:
  - i. liberate, separate or purify a pre-existing compound or composition, or to
  - ii. treat textiles or clean solid surfaces of materials
 are further classified in subclass C12S.

**A23B PRESERVING, e.g. BY CANNING, MEAT, FISH, EGGS, FRUIT, VEGETABLES, EDIBLE SEEDS; CHEMICAL RIPENING OF FRUIT OR VEGETABLES; THE PRESERVED, RIPENED, OR CANNED PRODUCTS** (preserving foodstuffs in general A23L 3/00; applying food preservatives in packages B65D 81/28)

- 4/00 General methods for preserving meat, sausages, fish or fish products** [2]
- 4/005 • Preserving by heating [5]
- 4/01 • • by irradiation or electric treatment [5]
- 4/015 • Preserving by irradiation or electric treatment without heating effect [5]
- 4/02 • Preserving by means of inorganic salts (apparatus therefor A23B 4/26, A23B 4/32) [2]
- 4/023 • • by kitchen salt or mixtures thereof with inorganic or organic compounds [5]
- 4/027 • • by inorganic salts other than kitchen salt or mixtures thereof with organic compounds, e.g. biochemical compounds [5]
- 4/03 • Drying; Subsequent reconstitution [5]
- 4/033 • • with addition of chemicals (A23B 4/037 takes precedence) [5]

- 4/037 • • Freeze-drying [5]
- 4/044 • Smoking; Smoking devices [5]
- 4/048 • • with addition of chemicals other than natural smoke [5]
- 4/052 • • Smoke generators [5]
- 4/056 • • Smoking combined with irradiation or electric treatment, e.g. electrostatic smoking [5]
- 4/06 • Freezing; Subsequent thawing; Cooling [2]
- 4/07 • • Thawing subsequent to freezing [5]
- 4/08 • • with addition of chemicals before or during cooling [2]
- 4/09 • • • with direct contact between the food and the chemical, e.g. liquid N<sub>2</sub>, at cryogenic temperature [5]
- 4/10 • Coating with a protective layer; Compositions or apparatus therefor [2]
- 4/12 • Preserving with acids; Acid fermentation [2]
- 4/14 • Preserving with chemicals not covered by groups A23B 4/02 or A23B 4/12 [2]
- 4/16 • • in the form of gases, e.g. fumigation; Compositions or apparatus therefor [5]
- 4/18 • • in the form of liquids or solids (apparatus therefor A23B 4/26, A23B 4/32) [5]
- 4/20 • • • Organic compounds; Micro-organisms; Enzymes (acid fermentation A23B 4/12) [5]
- 4/22 • • • • Micro-organisms; Enzymes [5]
- 4/24 • • • Inorganic compounds [5]
- 4/26 • Apparatus for preserving using liquids [5]
- 4/28 • • by injection of liquids [5]
- 4/30 • • by spraying of liquids [5]
- 4/32 • Apparatus for preserving using solids [5]
- 5/00 Preservation of eggs or egg products** (preserving dough or bakery products A21D)
- 5/005 • Preserving by heating [5]
- 5/01 • • by irradiation or electric treatment [5]
- 5/015 • Preserving by irradiation or electric treatment without heating effect [5]
- 5/02 • Drying; Subsequent reconstitution [5]
- 5/025 • • with addition of chemicals (A23B 5/03, A23B 5/035 take precedence) [5]
- 5/03 • • Freeze-drying [5]
- 5/035 • • Spray-drying [5]
- 5/04 • Freezing; Subsequent thawing; Cooling
- 5/045 • • Thawing subsequent to freezing [5]
- 5/05 • • with addition of chemicals [5]
- 5/055 • • • with direct contact between the food and the chemical, e.g. liquid N<sub>2</sub>, at cryogenic temperature [5]
- 5/06 • Coating eggs with a protective layer; Compositions or apparatus therefor [5]
- 5/08 • Preserving with chemicals [5]
- 5/10 • • in the form of gases, e.g. fumigation; Compositions or apparatus therefor [5]
- 5/12 • • in the form of liquids or solids [5]
- 5/14 • • • Organic compounds; Micro-organisms; Enzymes [5]
- 5/16 • • • • Micro-organisms; Enzymes [5]
- 5/18 • • • Inorganic compounds [5]
- 5/20 • • • Apparatus for preserving using liquids [5]
- 5/22 • • • Apparatus for preserving using solids [5]
- 7/00 Preservation or chemical ripening of fruit or vegetables [3]**
- 7/005 • Preserving by heating [5]
- 7/01 • • by irradiation or electric treatment [5]
- 7/015 • Preserving by irradiation or electric treatment without heating effect [5]
- 7/02 • Dehydrating; Subsequent reconstitution (dried cooked potatoes A23L 1/216)
- 7/022 • • with addition of chemicals (A23B 7/024-A23B 7/028 take precedence) [5]
- 7/024 • • Freeze-drying [5]
- 7/026 • • Spray-drying [5]
- 7/028 • • Thin layer-, drum- or roller-drying [5]
- 7/03 • • Drying raw potatoes
- 7/04 • Freezing; Subsequent thawing; Cooling
- 7/045 • • Thawing subsequent to freezing [5]
- 7/05 • • with addition of chemicals [5]
- 7/055 • • • with direct contact between the food and the chemical, e.g. liquid N<sub>2</sub>, at cryogenic temperature [5]
- 7/06 • Blanching (machines therefor A23N 12/00) [1, 3]
- 7/08 • Preserving with sugars (marmalade, jam, fruit jellies A23L 1/06)
- 7/10 • Preserving with acids; Acid fermentation
- 7/12 • • Apparatus for compressing sauerkraut
- 7/14 • Preserving or ripening with chemicals not covered by group A23B 7/08 or A23B 7/10
- 7/144 • • in the form of gases, e.g. fumigation; Compositions or apparatus therefor [3, 5]
- 7/148 • • • in a controlled atmosphere, e.g. partial vacuum, comprising only CO<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub> or H<sub>2</sub>O [3]
- 7/152 • • • in a controlled atmosphere comprising other gases in addition to CO<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub> or H<sub>2</sub>O [3]
- 7/153 • • in the form of liquids or solids [5]
- 7/154 • • • Organic compounds; Micro-organisms; Enzymes (acid fermentation A23B 7/10) [5]
- 7/155 • • • • Micro-organisms; Enzymes [5]
- 7/157 • • • Inorganic compounds [5]
- 7/158 • • • Apparatus for preserving using liquids [5]
- 7/159 • • • Apparatus for preserving using solids [5]
- 7/16 • Coating with a protective layer; Compositions or apparatus therefor (A23B 7/08 takes precedence) [5]
- 9/00 Preservation of edible seeds, e.g. cereals**
- 9/02 • Preserving by heating [5]
- 9/04 • • by irradiation or electric treatment [5]
- 9/06 • Preserving by irradiation or electric treatment without heating effect [5]
- 9/08 • Drying; Subsequent reconstitution [5]
- 9/10 • Freezing; Subsequent thawing; Cooling [5]
- 9/12 • • Thawing subsequent to freezing [5]
- 9/14 • Coating with a protective layer; Compositions or apparatus therefor [5]
- 9/16 • Preserving with chemicals [5]
- 9/18 • • in the form of gases, e.g. fumigation; Compositions or apparatus therefor [5]
- 9/20 • • • in a controlled atmosphere, e.g. partial vacuum, comprising only CO<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub> or H<sub>2</sub>O [5]
- 9/22 • • • in a controlled atmosphere comprising other gases in addition to CO<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub> or H<sub>2</sub>O [5]
- 9/24 • • in the form of liquids or solids [5]
- 9/26 • • • Organic compounds; Micro-organisms; Enzymes [5]
- 9/28 • • • • Micro-organisms; Enzymes [5]
- 9/30 • • • Inorganic compounds [5]
- 9/32 • • • Apparatus for preserving using liquids [5]
- 9/34 • • • Apparatus for preserving using solids [5]

**A23C DAIRY PRODUCTS, e.g. MILK, BUTTER, CHEESE; MILK OR CHEESE SUBSTITUTES; MAKING THEREOF**  
(obtaining protein compositions for foodstuffs A23J 1/00; preparation of peptides, e.g. of proteins, in general C07K 1/00)

### Note(s)

This subclass covers:

- the chemical aspects of making dairy products;
- the apparatus used for performing techniques provided for therein, e.g. for concentration, evaporation, drying, preservation, or sterilisation, unless such apparatus is specifically provided for in another subclass, e.g. A01J for treatment of milk or cream for manufacture of butter or cheese.

### Subclass index

DAIRY TECHNOLOGY.....	1/00-7/00
MILK PREPARATIONS; MILK SUBSTITUTES; CREAM; BUTTER.....	9/00, 11/00, 13/00, 15/00
CHEESE; CHEESE SUBSTITUTES.....	19/00, 20/00
BUTTERMILK; WHEY; OTHER DAIRY PRODUCTS.....	17/00, 21/00, 23/00

### General dairy technology

- 1/00 Concentration, evaporation or drying** (A23C 3/00 takes precedence; products obtained thereby A23C 9/00; making butter powder A23C 15/14, cheese powder A23C 19/086; evaporating in general B01D 1/00) [3]
- 1/01 • Drying in thin layers [3]
  - 1/03 • • on drums or rollers [3]
  - 1/04 • by spraying into a gas stream
  - 1/05 • • combined with agglomeration [3]
  - 1/06 • Concentration by freezing out the water
  - 1/08 • • Freeze drying [3]
  - 1/10 • Foam drying (A23C 1/04, A23C 1/08 take precedence) [3]
  - 1/12 • Concentration by evaporation [3]
  - 1/14 • combined with other treatment [3]
  - 1/16 • • using additives [3]
- 3/00 Preservation of milk or milk preparations** (of cream A23C 13/08; of butter A23C 15/18; of cheese A23C 19/097)
- 3/02 • by heating (A23C 3/07 takes precedence) [3]
  - 3/023 • • in packages [3]
  - 3/027 • • • progressively transported through the apparatus [3]
  - 3/03 • • the materials being loose unpacked [3]
  - 3/033 • • • and progressively transported through the apparatus [3]
  - 3/037 • • • • in direct contact with the heating medium, e.g. steam [3]
  - 3/04 • by freezing or cooling
  - 3/05 • • in packages [3]
  - 3/07 • by irradiation, e.g. by microwaves [3]
  - 3/08 • by addition of preservatives (additions of micro-organisms or enzymes A23C 9/12, of other substances A23C 9/152)
- 7/00 Other dairy technology**
- 7/02 • Chemical cleaning of dairy apparatus (cleaning in general B08B, e.g. B08B 3/08); Use of sterilisation methods therefor (sterilisation methods per se A61L) [3]
  - 7/04 • Removing unwanted substances from milk (by filtering A01J 9/02, A01J 11/06) [3]

### Dairy products; Processes specially adapted therefor

- 9/00 Milk preparations; Milk powder or milk powder preparations** (A23C 21/06 takes precedence; preservation A23C 3/00; chocolate milk A23G 1/00; ice-cream, mixtures for preparation of ice-cream A23G 9/00; puddings, dry powder puddings A23L 1/187) [3]
- 9/12 • Fermented milk preparations; Treatment using micro-organisms or enzymes (whey preparations A23C 21/00) [3]
  - 9/123 • • using only micro-organisms of the genus lactobacteriaceae; Yoghurt (A23C 9/13 takes precedence) [3]
  - 9/127 • • using micro-organisms of the genus lactobacteriaceae and other micro-organisms or enzymes, e.g. kefir, koumiss (A23C 9/13 takes precedence) [3]
  - 9/13 • • using additives [3]
  - 9/133 • • • Fruit or vegetables [3]
  - 9/137 • • • Thickening substances [3]
  - 9/14 • in which the chemical composition of the milk is modified by non-chemical treatment [3]

### Note(s) [2006.01]

When classifying in this group, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.

- 9/142 • • by dialysis, reverse osmosis or ultrafiltration (A23C 9/144 takes precedence) [3]
- 9/144 • • by electrical means, e.g. electrodialysis [3]
- 9/146 • • by ion-exchange [3]
- 9/148 • • by molecular sieve or gel filtration [3]
- 9/15 • Reconstituted or recombined milk products containing neither non-milk fat nor non-milk proteins (containing thickening substances A23C 9/154; mixtures of whey, with milk products or milk components A23C 21/06) [3]
- 9/152 • containing additives (fermented milk preparations containing additives A23C 9/13) [3]
- 9/154 • • containing thickening substances, eggs or cereal preparations; Milk gels [3]
- 9/156 • • Flavoured milk preparations (A23C 9/154 takes precedence) [3]
- 9/158 • • containing vitamins or antibiotics [3]

## A23C

- 9/16 • Agglomerating or granulating milk powder; Making instant milk powder; Products obtained thereby (A23C 1/05, A23C 9/18 take precedence) [3]
- 9/18 • Milk in dried and compressed or semi-solid form [3]
- 9/20 • Dietetic milk products not covered by groups A23C 9/12-A23C 9/18 [3]

### 11/00 **Milk substitutes, e.g. coffee whitener compositions** (cheese substitutes A23C 20/00; butter substitutes A23D; cream substitutes A23L 1/19)

- 11/02 • containing at least one non-milk component as source of fats or proteins (A23C 19/055, A23C 21/04 take precedence) [3]
- 11/04 • • containing non-milk fats but no non-milk proteins (A23C 11/08, A23C 11/10 take precedence) [3]
- 11/06 • • containing non-milk proteins (A23C 11/08, A23C 11/10 take precedence) [3]
- 11/08 • • containing caseinates but no other milk proteins nor milk fats [3]
- 11/10 • • containing or not lactose but no other milk components as source of fats, carbohydrates or proteins, e.g. soy milk [3]

### 13/00 **Cream; Cream preparations** (ice-cream A23G 9/00); **Making thereof** (coffee whitener compositions A23C 11/00; cream substitutes A23L 1/19)

- 13/08 • Preservation [3]
- 13/10 • • by addition of preservatives (A23C 13/14, A23C 13/16 take precedence) [3]
- 13/12 • Cream preparations
- 13/14 • • containing milk products or milk components [3]
- 13/16 • • containing, or treated with, micro-organisms, enzymes, or antibiotics; Sour cream [3]

### 15/00 **Butter; Butter preparations; Making thereof** (butter substitutes A23D)

- 15/02 • Making thereof
- 15/04 • • from butter oil or anhydrous butter [3]
- 15/06 • • Treating cream prior to phase inversion [3]
- 15/12 • Butter preparations
- 15/14 • • Butter powder; Butter oil, i.e. melted butter, e.g. ghee [3]
- 15/16 • • Butter having reduced fat content [3]
- 15/18 • Preservation [3]
- 15/20 • • by addition of preservatives [3]

### 17/00 **Buttermilk; Buttermilk preparations** (A23C 9/14 takes precedence; preservation A23C 3/00) [3]

- 17/02 • containing, or treated with, micro-organisms or enzymes [3]

### 19/00 **Cheese; Cheese preparations; Making thereof** (cheese substitutes A23C 20/00; casein A23J 1/20)

- 19/02 • Making cheese curd [3]
- 19/024 • • using continuous procedure [3]
- 19/028 • • without substantial whey separation from coagulated milk [3]

## A23D **EDIBLE OILS OR FATS, e.g. MARGARINES, SHORTENINGS, COOKING OILS** (obtaining, refining, preserving C11B, C11C; hydrogenation C11C 3/12)

### 7/00 **Edible oil or fat compositions containing an aqueous phase, e.g. margarines** [5]

- 19/032 • • characterised by the use of specific micro-organisms, or enzymes of microbial origin [3]
- 19/04 • • characterised by the use of specific enzymes of vegetable or animal origin (A23C 19/032 takes precedence) [3]
- 19/045 • • Coagulation of milk without rennet or rennet substitutes [3]
- 19/05 • • Treating milk before coagulation; Separating whey from curd (A23C 19/097 takes precedence) [3]
- 19/055 • • Addition of non-milk fats or non-milk proteins [3]
- 19/06 • Treating cheese curd after whey separation; Products obtained thereby (A23C 19/097 takes precedence) [3]
- 19/064 • • Salting [3]
- 19/068 • • Particular types of cheese [3]
- 19/072 • • • Cheddar type [3]
- 19/076 • • • Soft unripened cheese, e.g. cottage or cream cheese [3]
- 19/08 • • • Process cheese preparations; Making thereof, e.g. melting, emulsifying, sterilizing [3]
- 19/082 • • • • Adding substances to the curd before or during melting; Melting salts [3]
- 19/084 • • • • Treating the curd, or adding substances thereto, after melting (adding non-milk components A23C 19/093) [3]
- 19/086 • • Cheese powder; Dried cheese preparations [3]
- 19/09 • • Other cheese preparations; Mixtures of cheese with other foodstuffs (preservation A23C 19/097) [3]
- 19/093 • • • Addition of non-milk fats or non-milk proteins [3]
- 19/097 • Preservation [3]
- 19/10 • • Addition of preservatives [3]
- 19/11 • • • of antibiotics [3]
- 19/14 • Treating cheese after having reached its definite form, e.g. ripening, smoking (preservation A23C 19/097)
- 19/16 • • Covering the cheese surface, e.g. with paraffin wax

### 20/00 **Cheese substitutes** (A23C 19/055, A23C 19/093 take precedence) [3]

- 20/02 • containing neither milk components, nor caseinate, nor lactose, as sources of fats, proteins or carbohydrates [3]

### 21/00 **Whey; Whey preparations** (A23C 1/00, A23C 3/00, A23C 9/14 take precedence) [3]

- 21/02 • containing, or treated with, micro-organisms or enzymes [3]
- 21/04 • containing non-milk components as source of fats or proteins [3]
- 21/06 • Mixtures of whey with milk products or milk components [3]
- 21/08 • containing other organic additives, e.g. vegetable or animal products [3]
- 21/10 • containing inorganic additives [3]

### 23/00 **Other dairy products**

- 7/005 • characterised by ingredients other than fatty acid triglycerides [6]
- 7/01 • • Other fatty acid esters, e.g. phosphatides [6]

- 7/015 • Reducing calorie content; Reducing fat content [6]
- 7/02 • characterised by the production or working-up [5]
- 7/04 • • Working-up [5]
- 7/05 • • • characterised by essential cooling [6]
- 7/06 • Preservation of finished products [5]
- 9/00 Other edible oils or fats, e.g. shortenings, cooking oils [5]**

- 9/007 • characterised by ingredients other than fatty acid triglycerides [6]
- 9/013 • • Other fatty acid esters, e.g. phosphatides [6]
- 9/02 • characterised by the production or working-up [5]
- 9/04 • • Working-up [5]
- 9/05 • • • Forming free-flowing pieces [6]
- 9/06 • Preservation of finished products [5]

## **A23F COFFEE; TEA; THEIR SUBSTITUTES; MANUFACTURE, PREPARATION, OR INFUSION THEREOF**

- 3/00 Tea; Tea substitutes; Preparations thereof**
- 3/06 • Treating tea before extraction (reducing or removing alkaloid content A23F 3/36); Preparations produced thereby (tea extract preparations A23F 3/16) [3]
- 3/08 • • Oxidation; Fermentation [3]
- 3/10 • • • Fermentation with addition of micro-organisms or enzymes [3]
- 3/12 • • Rolling or shredding tea leaves [3]
- 3/14 • • Tea preparations, e.g. using additives (flavouring A23F 3/40) [3]
- 3/16 • Tea extraction; Tea extracts; Treating tea extract; Making instant tea [3]
- 3/18 • • Extraction of water soluble tea constituents (isolation of tea flavour or tea oil A23F 3/42) [3]
- 3/20 • • Removing unwanted substances (reducing or removing alkaloid content A23F 3/38) [3]
- 3/22 • • Drying or concentrating tea extract [3]
- 3/24 • • • by freezing out the water [3]
- 3/26 • • • by lyophilisation [3]
- 3/28 • • • by spraying into a gas stream [3]
- 3/30 • • Further treatment of dried tea extract; Preparations produced thereby, e.g. instant tea (flavouring A23F 3/40) [3]
- 3/32 • • • Agglomerating, flaking or tableting [3]
- 3/34 • Tea substitutes, e.g. mate; Extracts or infusions thereof [3]
- 3/36 • Reducing or removing alkaloid content; Preparations produced thereby; Extracts or infusions thereof [3]
- 3/38 • • Reducing or removing alkaloid content from tea extract [3]
- 3/40 • Tea flavour; Tea oil; Flavouring of tea or tea extract (synthetic tea flavours A23L 1/226) [3]
- 3/42 • • Isolation of tea flavour or tea oil [3]
- 5/00 Coffee; Coffee substitutes; Preparations thereof [3]**
- 5/02 • Treating green coffee; Preparations produced thereby (roasting A23F 5/04; removing unwanted substances A23F 5/16; reducing or removing alkaloid content A23F 5/20; extraction A23F 5/24) [3]
- 5/04 • Methods of roasting coffee (machines therefor A23N 12/00) [3]

- 5/06 • • of roasting extracted coffee [3]
- 5/08 • Methods of grinding coffee (coffee mills A47J 42/00) [3]
- 5/10 • Treating roasted coffee; Preparations produced thereby (removing unwanted substances A23F 5/16; reducing or removing alkaloid content A23F 5/20; coffee extraction, making instant coffee A23F 5/24) [3]
- 5/12 • • Agglomerating, flaking or tableting (of coffee extract or instant coffee A23F 5/38) [3]
- 5/14 • • using additives, e.g. milk, sugar; Coating, e.g. for preserving (flavouring A23F 5/46) [3]
- 5/16 • Removing unwanted substances (reducing or removing alkaloid content A23F 5/20) [3]
- 5/18 • • from coffee extract [3]
- 5/20 • Reducing or removing alkaloid content; Preparations produced thereby; Extracts or infusions thereof [3]
- 5/22 • • Reducing or removing alkaloid content from coffee extract [3]
- 5/24 • Extraction of coffee (isolation of coffee flavour or coffee oil A23F 5/48); Coffee extracts (with reduced alkaloid content A23F 5/20); Making instant coffee (methods of roasting extracted coffee A23F 5/06) [3]
- 5/26 • • Extraction of water soluble constituents [3]
- 5/28 • • Drying or concentrating coffee extract [3]
- 5/30 • • • by freezing out the water [3]
- 5/32 • • • by lyophilisation [3]
- 5/34 • • • by spraying into a gas stream [3]
- 5/36 • • Further treatment of dried coffee extract; Preparations produced thereby, e.g. instant coffee (removing unwanted substances A23F 5/18; flavouring A23F 5/46) [3]
- 5/38 • • • Agglomerating, flaking or tableting [3]
- 5/40 • • • using organic additives, e.g. milk, sugar [3]
- 5/42 • • • using inorganic additives [3]
- 5/44 • Coffee substitutes [3]
- 5/46 • Coffee flavour; Coffee oil; Flavouring of coffee or coffee extract (synthetic coffee flavours A23L 1/234) [3]
- 5/48 • • Isolation of coffee flavour or coffee oil [3]
- 5/50 • • • from coffee extract [3]

## **A23G COCOA; COCOA PRODUCTS, e.g. CHOCOLATE; SUBSTITUTES FOR COCOA OR COCOA PRODUCTS; CONFECTIONERY; CHEWING GUM; ICE-CREAM; PREPARATION THEREOF [1, 2006.01]**

### **Note(s)**

1. In this subclass, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
  - "ice-cream" includes any edible frozen or congealed semi-liquid or pasty substance, e.g. slush-ice.
2. In this subclass, subject matter which cannot be completely classified in a single one of the main groups should be classified in each relevant main group.

- 1/00 Cocoa; Cocoa products, e.g. chocolate; Substitutes therefor** (kitchen equipment for cocoa preparation A47J, e.g. apparatus for making beverages A47J 31/00)
- 1/02 • Preliminary treatment, e.g. fermentation of cocoa (machines for roasting cocoa A23N 12/00)
- 1/04 • Apparatus specially adapted for manufacture or treatment of cocoa or cocoa products (machines for roasting cocoa A23N 12/00; crushing or grinding apparatus in general B02C) [3]
- 1/06 • • Apparatus for preparing or treating cocoa beans or nibs
- 1/08 • • Cocoa butter presses (presses for squeezing out liquid from liquid-containing material in general B30B)
- 1/10 • • Mixing apparatus; Roller mills for preparing chocolate
- 1/12 • • Chocolate-refining mills, i.e. roll refiners
- 1/14 • • Longitudinal conches
- 1/16 • • Circular conches
- 1/18 • • Apparatus for conditioning chocolate masses for moulding
- 1/20 • • Apparatus for moulding, cutting, or dispensing chocolate
- 1/21 • • • Apparatus for moulding hollow products, open shells or other articles having cavities, e.g. open cavities [3, 7]
- 1/22 • • • Chocolate moulds (A23G 1/21 takes precedence) [3]
- 1/24 • • • Tapping or jolting tables [1, 7]
- 1/26 • • • Conveying devices for chocolate moulds [1, 7]
- 1/28 • • • Apparatus for removing chocolate from the moulds (discharging baked goods from tins A21B 3/18) [1, 7]
- 1/30 • Cocoa products, e.g. chocolate; Substitutes therefor [2006.01]
- 1/32 • • characterised by the composition [2006.01]
- 1/34 • • • Cocoa substitutes [2006.01]
- 1/36 • • • characterised by the fats used (containing dairy products A23G 1/46) [2006.01]
- 1/38 • • • • Cocoa butter substitutes [2006.01]
- 1/40 • • • characterised by the carbohydrates used, e.g. polysaccharides (containing dairy products A23G 1/46) [2006.01]
- 1/42 • • • containing micro-organisms or enzymes; containing paramedical or dietetical agents, e.g. vitamins (containing dairy products A23G 1/46) [2006.01]
- 1/44 • • • containing peptides or proteins (containing dairy products A23G 1/46) [2006.01]
- 1/46 • • • containing dairy products [2006.01]
- 1/48 • • • containing plants or parts thereof, e.g. fruits, seeds, extracts (containing gums A23G 1/40) [2006.01]
- 1/50 • • characterised by shape, structure or physical form, e.g. products with an inedible support (liquid products, solid products in the form of powders, flakes or granules for making liquid products A23G 1/56) [2006.01]
- 1/52 • • • Aerated, foamed, cellular or porous products [2006.01]
- 1/54 • • • Composite products, e.g. layered, coated, filled [2006.01]
- 1/56 • • Liquid products; Solid products in the form of powders, flakes or granules for making liquid products, e.g. for making chocolate milk [2006.01]

- 3/00 Sweetmeats; Confectionery; Marzipan; Coated or filled products** (chewing gum A23G 4/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/02 • Apparatus specially adapted for manufacture or treatment of sweetmeats or confectionery; Accessories therefor
- 3/04 • • Sugar-cookers
- 3/06 • • Batch-rolling, rope-forming, or sizing machines
- 3/08 • • Candy batch cooling tables
- 3/10 • • Candy-pulling machines
- 3/12 • • Apparatus for moulding candy in the plastic state
- 3/14 • • Fondant beating or creaming machines
- 3/16 • • Apparatus for casting fondant in bulk
- 3/18 • • Apparatus for moulding fondants
- 3/20 • • Apparatus for coating or filling sweetmeats or confectionery
- 3/22 • • • Apparatus for coating by casting
- 3/24 • • • Apparatus for coating by dipping
- 3/26 • • • Apparatus for coating by tumbling
- 3/28 • • Apparatus for decorating sweetmeats or confectionery (applying liquids to surfaces in general B05)
- 3/32 • Processes for preparing caramel or sugar colours (colouring or flavouring foodstuffs A23L 1/27)
- 3/34 • Sweetmeats, confectionery or marzipan; Processes for the preparation thereof [2006.01]
- 3/36 • • characterised by the composition [2006.01]
- 3/38 • • • Sucrose-free products [2006.01]
- 3/40 • • • characterised by the fats used (containing dairy products A23G 3/46) [2006.01]
- 3/42 • • • characterised by the carbohydrates used, e.g. polysaccharides (containing dairy products A23G 3/46) [2006.01]
- 3/44 • • • containing peptides or proteins (containing dairy products A23G 3/46) [2006.01]
- 3/46 • • • containing dairy products [2006.01]
- 3/48 • • • containing plants or parts thereof, e.g. fruits, seeds, extracts (containing gums A23G 3/42) [2006.01]
- 3/50 • • characterised by shape, structure or physical form, e.g. products with supported structure (composite structures including chocolate, e.g. as layer, coating or filler A23G 1/54) [2006.01]
- 3/52 • • • Aerated, foamed, cellular or porous products [2006.01]
- 3/54 • • • Composite products, e.g. layered, coated, filled [2006.01]
- 3/56 • • • Products with edible or inedible supports, e.g. lollipops [2006.01]
- 4/00 Chewing gum** (medicinal preparations characterised by chewing gum form A61K 9/68) [2006.01]
- 4/02 • Apparatus specially adapted for manufacture or treatment of chewing gum [2006.01]
- 4/04 • • for moulding or shaping [2006.01]
- 4/06 • characterised by the composition [2006.01]
- 4/08 • • of the chewing gum base [2006.01]
- 4/10 • • characterised by the carbohydrates used, e.g. polysaccharides (containing dairy products A23G 4/16) [2006.01]
- 4/12 • • containing micro-organisms or enzymes; containing paramedical or dietetical agents, e.g. vitamins (containing dairy products A23G 4/16) [2006.01]
- 4/14 • • containing peptides or proteins (containing dairy products A23G 4/16) [2006.01]
- 4/16 • • containing dairy products [2006.01]



- 4/18 • characterised by shape, structure or physical form, e.g. aerated products [2006.01]
- 4/20 • • Composite products, e.g. centre-filled [2006.01]
- 7/00 Other apparatus specially adapted for the chocolate or confectionery industry**
- 7/02 • Cooling or drying apparatus
- 9/00 Frozen sweets, e.g. ice confectionery, ice-cream; Mixtures therefor [2]**
- 9/04 • Production of frozen sweets, e.g. ice-cream (packages B65D 85/78) [2]
- 9/06 • • characterised by using carbon dioxide or carbon dioxide snow as cooling medium [2]
- Note(s)**  
Group A23G 9/06 takes precedence over groups A23G 9/08-A23G 9/14.
- 9/08 • • Batch production (continuous production A23G 9/14) [2]
- 9/10 • • • using containers which are rotated or otherwise moved in a cooling medium [2]
- 9/12 • • • using means for stirring the contents in a non-moving container [2]
- 9/14 • • Continuous production (A23G 9/20 takes precedence) [2]
- 9/16 • • • the products being within a cooled chamber, e.g. drum [2]
- 9/18 • • • the products being on the outer wall of a cooled body, e.g. drum or endless band [2]
- 9/20 • • the products being mixed with gas, e.g. soft-ice [2]
- 9/22 • • Details, component parts or accessories of apparatus insofar as not peculiar to a single one of the preceding groups [2]
- 9/24 • • • for coating or filling the products [2]
- 9/26 • • • for producing frozen sweets on sticks [2]
- 9/28 • • • for portioning or dispensing [2]
- 9/30 • • • Cleaning; Keeping clean; Sterilisation [2]
- 9/32 • characterised by the composition [2006.01]
- 9/34 • • characterised by carbohydrates used, e.g. polysaccharides (characterised by the dairy products used A23G 9/40) [2006.01]
- 9/36 • • containing micro-organisms or enzymes; containing paramedical or dietetical agents, e.g. vitamins (characterised by the dairy products used A23G 9/40) [2006.01]
- 9/38 • • containing peptides or proteins (characterised by the dairy products used A23G 9/40) [2006.01]
- 9/40 • • characterised by the dairy products used [2006.01]
- 9/42 • • containing plants or parts thereof, e.g. fruits, seeds, extracts (containing gums A23G 9/34) [2006.01]
- 9/44 • characterised by shape, structure or physical form (liquid products, solid products in the form of powders, flakes or granules for making liquid products A23G 9/52) [2006.01]
- 9/46 • • Aerated, foamed, cellular or porous products [2006.01]
- 9/48 • • Composite products, e.g. layered, coated, filled [2006.01]
- 9/50 • • Products with edible or inedible supports, e.g. cornets [2006.01]
- 9/52 • Liquid products; Solid products in the form of powders, flakes or granules for making liquid products [2006.01]

## A23J PROTEIN COMPOSITIONS FOR FOODSTUFFS; WORKING-UP PROTEINS FOR FOODSTUFFS; PHOSPHATIDE COMPOSITIONS FOR FOODSTUFFS [4]

- 1/00 Obtaining protein compositions for foodstuffs; Bulk opening of eggs and separation of yolks from whites [4]**
- 1/02 • from meat
- 1/04 • from fish or other sea animals
- 1/06 • from blood [2]
- 1/08 • from eggs
- 1/09 • • separating yolks from whites
- 1/10 • from hair, feathers, horn, skins, leather, bones, or the like
- 1/12 • from cereals, wheat, bran, or molasses
- 1/14 • from leguminous or other vegetable seeds; from press-cake or oil-bearing seeds
- 1/16 • from waste water of starch-manufacturing plant or like wastes
- 1/18 • from yeasts
- 1/20 • from milk, e.g. casein (curds or cheese A23C); from whey
- 1/22 • • Drying casein
- 3/00 Working-up of proteins for foodstuffs**
- Note(s)**  
In groups A23J 3/04-A23J 3/20, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
- 3/04 • Animal proteins [5]
- 3/06 • • Gelatine [5]
- 3/08 • • Dairy proteins [5]
- 3/10 • • • Casein (drying casein A23J 1/22) [5]
- 3/12 • • from blood [5]
- 3/14 • Vegetable proteins [5]
- 3/16 • • from soybean [5]
- 3/18 • • from wheat [5]
- 3/20 • Proteins from micro-organisms or unicellular algae [5]
- Note(s)**  
Subject matter classified in groups A23J 3/22-A23J 3/30 is also classified in groups A23J 3/04-A23J 3/20, if the nature of the protein is of interest.
- 3/22 • by texturising [5]
- 3/24 • • using freezing [5]
- 3/26 • • using extrusion or expansion [5]
- 3/28 • • using coagulation from or in a bath, e.g. spun fibres [5]
- 3/30 • by hydrolysis [5]
- 3/32 • • using chemical agents [5]
- 3/34 • • • using enzymes [5]
- 7/00 Phosphatide compositions for foodstuffs, e.g. lecithin [4]**

## A23K FEEDING-STUFFS SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR ANIMALS; METHODS SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR PRODUCTION THEREOF

### 1/00 Animal feeding-stuffs

- 1/02 • from molasses
- 1/04 • from blood
- 1/06 • from distillers' or brewers' waste
- 1/08 • from waste products of dairy plant
- 1/10 • from meat, fish, or bones; from kitchen waste
- 1/12 • from hydrolysates of wood or straw
- 1/14 • from vegetable materials, e.g. potatoes or roots without ensilaging
- 1/16 • supplemented with accessory food factors; Salt blocks
- 1/165 • • with steroids, hormones, or enzymes
- 1/17 • • with antibiotics

- 1/175 • • with inorganic substances; Salt blocks
- 1/18 • specially adapted for particular animals
- 1/20 • Cakes or briquettes
- 1/22 • containing chemicals which are converted to proteins by cattle, e.g. ammonium salts, urea
- 1/24 • Poultry grit [2]

### 3/00 Processes specially adapted for preservation of materials in order to produce animal feeding-stuffs

- 3/02 • of green fodder (mechanical aspects of methods specially adapted for storing agricultural or horticultural crops A01F 25/00)
- 3/03 • • using chemicals for ensilaging
- 3/04 • of potatoes; of roots

## A23L FOODS, FOODSTUFFS, OR NON-ALCOHOLIC BEVERAGES, NOT COVERED BY SUBCLASSES A21D OR A23B-A23J; THEIR PREPARATION OR TREATMENT, e.g. COOKING, MODIFICATION OF NUTRITIVE QUALITIES, PHYSICAL TREATMENT (shaping or working, not fully covered by this subclass, A23P); PRESERVATION OF FOODS OR FOODSTUFFS, IN GENERAL (preservation of flour or dough for baking A21D) [4, 2006.01]

### 1/00 Foods or foodstuffs; Their preparation or treatment (preservation thereof in general A23L 3/00) [4]

- 1/01 • General methods of cooking foods, e.g. by roasting or frying (methods specialized to particular food, see the relevant subgroups) [2]
- 1/015 • Removal of unwanted matter, e.g. deodorisation, detoxification (A23L 1/211 takes precedence) [4]
- 1/025 • Physical treatment, e.g. with wave energy, irradiation, electrical means, magnetic fields (cooking A23L 1/01; preserving A23L 3/00, A23B) [4]
- 1/03 • containing additives (A23L 1/05, A23L 1/30, A23L 1/308 take precedence) [4, 5]
- 1/035 • • Emulsifiers [4]
- 1/05 • containing gelling or thickening agents (A23L 1/06 takes precedence) [5]
- 1/052 • • of vegetable origin [5]
- 1/0522 • • • Starch; Modified starch; Starch derivatives, e.g. esters, ethers [5]
- 1/0524 • • • Pectin; Derivatives thereof [5]
- 1/0526 • • • from seeds, e.g. locust bean gum, guar gum (A23L 1/0522, A23L 1/0524 take precedence) [5]
- 1/0528 • • • from corms, tubers or roots, e.g. glucomannan (A23L 1/0522 takes precedence) [5]
- 1/053 • • • Exudates, e.g. gum arabic, gum acacia, gum karaya, tragacanth [5]
- 1/0532 • • • from seaweeds, e.g. alginates, agar, carrageenan [5]
- 1/0534 • • • Cellulose; Derivatives thereof, e.g. ethers [5]
- 1/054 • • of microbial origin, e.g. xanthan, dextran [5]
- 1/056 • • of animal origin, e.g. chitin [5]
- 1/0562 • • • Proteins, e.g. gelatin, collagen [5]
- 1/058 • • Synthetic resins, e.g. polyvinylpyrrolidone [5]
- 1/059 • • Inorganic additives, e.g. silica [5]
- 1/06 • Marmalades; Jams; Jellies; Other similar fruit or vegetable compositions; Simulated fruit products [4]
- 1/064 • • derived from fruit or vegetable solids [4]
- 1/068 • • derived from fruit or vegetable juices [4]
- 1/072 • • Simulated fruit products [4]

- 1/076 • Products from apiculture, e.g. royal jelly or pollen; Substitutes therefor [4]
- 1/08 • • Honey; Honey substitutes [2]
- 1/09 • containing carbohydrate syrups; containing sugars; containing sugar alcohols, e.g. xylitol; containing starch hydrolysates, e.g. dextrin (A23L 1/076, A23L 1/236 take precedence) [4, 5]
- 1/10 • containing cereal-derived products [2]
- 1/105 • • Fermentation of farinaceous cereal or cereal material; Addition of enzymes or micro-organisms (A23L 1/16, A23L 1/185, A23L 1/238 take precedence) [4]
- 1/16 • • Types of pasta, e.g. macaroni, noodles [2]
- 1/162 • • • Par-boiled or instant pasta [4]
- 1/164 • • Flakes or other shapes of the ready-to-eat type (A23L 1/18 takes precedence) [2]
- 1/168 • • Cereal granules or flakes to be cooked and eaten hot, e.g. oatmeal [2]
- 1/172 • • Cereal germ products [2]
- 1/176 • • Farinaceous granules for dressing meat, fish or the like [2]
- 1/18 • • Puffed cereals, e.g. popcorn, puffed rice
- 1/182 • • Products in which the original granular shape is maintained, e.g. par-boiled rice [2]
- 1/185 • Malt products (malt products of pulse A23L 1/202; preparation of malt for brewing C12C) [2]
- 1/186 • • Fermentation of cereal malt, or of cereal by malting [4]
- 1/187 • Puddings; Dry powder puddings [2]
- 1/19 • Cream substitutes [2]
- 1/20 • Treatment of pulse, i.e. fruits of leguminous plants, for production of fodder or food; Preparation of products from legumes; Chemical means for rapid cooking of these foods, e.g. treatment with phosphates [2]
- 1/201 • • Rapid cooking pulse [4]
- 1/202 • • Malt products; Fermented malt products (A23L 1/22 takes precedence; malt products of cereals A23L 1/185) [2]

- 1/211 • • Removing bitter or other undesirable substances [4]
- 1/212 • Preparation of fruits or vegetables (of pulse A23L 1/20; treating harvested fruit or vegetables in bulk A23N) [2]
- 1/214 • • of tuberous or like starch containing root crops [2]
- 1/216 • • • of potatoes [2]
- 1/2165 • • • • Unshaped dry products, e.g. powders, flakes, granules or agglomerates [4]
- 1/217 • • • • Roasted or fried products, e.g. snacks or chips [4]
- 1/218 • • by pickling, e.g. sauerkraut, pickles [2]
- 1/22 • Spices; Flavouring agents or condiments; Artificial sweetening agents; Table salts; Dietetic salt substitutes [2, 5]
- 1/221 • • Natural spices, flavouring agents, or condiments; Extracts thereof [2]
- 1/222 • • • from fruit, e.g. essential oils [2]
- 1/223 • • • Dried spices [2]
- 1/224 • • • • Onions [2]
- 1/225 • • • Mustard [2]
- 1/226 • • Synthetic spices or flavouring agents or condiments [2]
- 1/227 • • • containing amino acids [2]
- 1/228 • • • • containing glutamic acids [2]
- 1/229 • • • containing nucleotides [2]
- 1/23 • • • prepared by fermentation [2]
- 1/231 • • • Meat flavours [2]
- 1/232 • • • Smoke flavours [2]
- 1/234 • • • Coffee or cocoa flavours [2]
- 1/235 • • • Fruit flavours [2]
- 1/236 • • Artificial sweetening agents [2]
- 1/237 • • Table salts; Dietetic salt substitutes [2]
- 1/238 • • Soya sauce [2]
- 1/24 • • Salad dressings; Mayonnaise; Ketchup [2]
- 1/27 • Colouring or decolouring of foods [2]
- 1/272 • • Retaining or modifying natural colour by use of additives, e.g. optical brighteners (A23L 1/275 takes precedence) [2]
- 1/275 • • Addition of dyes or pigments with or without optical brighteners [2]
- 1/277 • • Removing colour by chemical reaction, e.g. bleaching [2]
- 1/28 • Edible extracts or preparations of fungi (for medicinal purposes A61K)
- 1/29 • Modifying nutritive qualities of foods; Dietetic products (A23L 1/09 takes precedence; dietetic salt substitutes A23L 1/22) [4, 5]
- 1/30 • • containing additives (A23L 1/308 takes precedence) [2]
- 1/302 • • • Vitamins [4]
- 1/303 • • • • Vitamins A or D [4]
- 1/304 • • • Inorganic salts, minerals, trace elements [4]
- 1/305 • • • Amino acids, peptides or proteins [4]
- 1/307 • • Reducing nutritive value; Dietetic products with reduced nutritive value [4]
- 1/308 • • • Addition of substantially indigestible substances, e.g. dietary fibres (A23L 1/05 takes precedence) [4, 5]
- 1/31 • Meat products; Meat meal [4]
- 1/311 • • Meat meal or powder; Granules, agglomerates or flakes [4]
- 1/312 • • from offal, e.g. rinds, skins, marrow, tripes, feet, ears or snouts (glands or bones as ingredients of processed meat A23L 1/317) [4]
- 1/313 • • Meat extracts [2]
- 1/314 • • containing additives [4]
- 1/315 • • Poultry products, e.g. poultry sausages [2]
- 1/317 • • Comminuted or emulsified meat products, including sausages; Reformed meat from comminuted meat products [4]
- 1/318 • • Tenderised or flavoured meat pieces, e.g. obtained by injecting solutions; Macerating solutions [4]
- 1/32 • Egg products [2]
- 1/322 • • Egg rolls [4]
- 1/325 • Food-from-the-sea products; Fish products; Fish meal; Fish-egg substitutes [4]
- 1/326 • • Fish meal or powder; Granules, agglomerates or flakes [4]
- 1/327 • • Fish extracts [4]
- 1/328 • • Fish eggs, e.g. caviar; Fish-egg substitutes [4]
- 1/33 • • Shell-fish [2]
- 1/333 • • Molluscs [2]
- 1/337 • • Edible seaweed [2]
- 1/36 • Food consisting mainly of nut meats or seeds [2]
- 1/38 • • Peanut butter
- 1/39 • Soups; Sauces (A23L 1/238, A23L 1/24 take precedence) [4]
- 1/40 • • Soup concentrates, e.g. powders, cakes
- 1/48 • Food compositions or treatment thereof not covered by the preceding subgroups [4]
- 2/00 Non-alcoholic beverages; Dry compositions or concentrates therefor; Their preparation** (soup concentrates A23L 1/40; preparation of non-alcoholic beverages by removal of alcohol C12H 3/00) [2]
- 2/02 • containing fruit or vegetable juices [2]
- 2/04 • • Extraction of juices (machines or apparatus for extracting juice A23N 1/00, A47J 19/00) [2]
- 2/06 • • • from citrus fruits [2]
- 2/08 • • Concentrating or drying of juices [2]
- 2/10 • • • by heating or contact with dry gases [2]
- 2/12 • • • by freezing [2]
- 2/14 • • • • and sublimation [2]
- 2/38 • Other non-alcoholic beverages [2, 6]
- 2/385 • Concentrates of non-alcoholic beverages [6]
- 2/39 • • Dry compositions [6]
- 2/395 • • • in a particular shape or form [6]
- 2/40 • Effervescence-generating compositions [2]
- 2/42 • Preservation of non-alcoholic beverages [6]
- 2/44 • • by adding preservatives [6]
- 2/46 • • by heating [6]
- 2/48 • • • by irradiation or electric treatment [6]
- 2/50 • • by irradiation or electric treatment without heating [6]
- 2/52 • Adding ingredients (adding preservatives A23L 2/44) [6]
- 2/54 • • Mixing with gases [6]
- 2/56 • • Flavouring or bittering agents (sweeteners A23L 2/60) [6]
- 2/58 • • Colouring agents [6]
- 2/60 • • Sweeteners [6]
- 2/62 • • Clouding agents; Agents to improve the cloud-stability [6]
- 2/64 • • Re-adding volatile aromatic ingredients [6]
- 2/66 • • Proteins [6]
- 2/68 • • Acidifying substances [6]
- 2/70 • Clarifying or fining of non-alcoholic beverages; Removing unwanted matter [6]
- 2/72 • • by filtration [6]

## A23L

- 2/74 • • • using membranes, e.g. osmosis, ultrafiltration [6]
- 2/76 • • by removal of gases [6]
- 2/78 • • by ion-exchange [6]
- 2/80 • • by adsorption [6]
- 2/82 • • by flocculation [6]
- 2/84 • • using micro-organisms or biological material, e.g. enzymes [6]

### 3/00 Preservation of foods or foodstuffs, in general, e.g. pasteurising, sterilising, specially adapted for foods or foodstuffs (preserving foods or foodstuffs in association with packaging B65B 55/00)

- 3/005 • by heating using irradiation or electric treatment (drying or kilning A23L 3/40) [5]
- 3/01 • • using micro-waves or dielectric heating [5]
- 3/015 • by treatment with pressure variation, shock, acceleration or shear stress [5]
- 3/02 • by heating materials in packages which are progressively transported, continuously or stepwise, through the apparatus (A23L 3/005 takes precedence) [5]
- 3/04 • • with packages on endless chain or band conveyers
- 3/06 • • with packages transported along a helical path
- 3/08 • • with packages on a revolving platform
- 3/10 • by heating materials in packages which are not progressively transported through the apparatus (A23L 3/005 takes precedence) [5]
- 3/12 • • with packages in intercommunicating chambers through which the heating medium is circulated
- 3/14 • • with packages moving on the spot
- 3/16 • by heating loose unpacked materials (A23L 3/005 takes precedence) [5]
- 3/18 • • while they are progressively transported through the apparatus
  - 3/20 • • • with transport along plates
  - 3/22 • • • with transport through tubes
  - 3/24 • • with the materials in spray form
  - 3/26 • by irradiation without heating
  - 3/28 • • with ultra-violet light
  - 3/30 • • by treatment with ultrasonic waves
  - 3/32 • by treatment with electric currents without heating effect
  - 3/34 • by treatment with chemicals
  - 3/3409 • • in the form of gases, e.g. fumigation; Compositions or apparatus therefor [5]
  - 3/3418 • • • in a controlled atmosphere, e.g. partial vacuum, comprising only CO<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub> or H<sub>2</sub>O [5]

- 3/3427 • • • • in which an absorbent is placed or used (packages for foodstuffs with provision for absorbing fluids B65D 81/26) [5]
- 3/3436 • • • • • Oxygen absorbent [5]
- 3/3445 • • • in a controlled atmosphere comprising other gases in addition to CO<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>2</sub> or H<sub>2</sub>O [5]
- 3/3454 • • in the form of liquids or solids [5]
- 3/3463 • • • Organic compounds; Micro-organisms; Enzymes [5]

### Note(s)

In groups A23L 3/3472-A23L 3/3562, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

- 3/3472 • • • • Compounds of undetermined constitution obtained from animals or plants [5]
- 3/3481 • • • • Organic compounds containing oxygen [5]
- 3/349 • • • • • with singly-bound oxygen [5]
- 3/3499 • • • • • with doubly-bound oxygen [5]
- 3/3508 • • • • • containing carboxyl groups [5]
- 3/3517 • • • • • • Carboxylic acid esters [5]
- 3/3526 • • • • • Organic compounds containing nitrogen [5]
- 3/3535 • • • • • Organic compounds containing sulfur [5]
- 3/3544 • • • • • Organic compounds containing hetero rings [5]
- 3/3553 • • • • Organic compounds containing phosphorus [5]
- 3/3562 • • • • Sugars; Derivatives thereof [5]
- 3/3571 • • • • Micro-organisms; Enzymes [5]
- 3/358 • • • Inorganic compounds [5]
- 3/3589 • • • Apparatus for preserving using liquids [5]
- 3/3598 • • • Apparatus for preserving using solids [5]
- 3/36 • Freezing; Subsequent thawing; Cooling [5]
- 3/365 • • Thawing subsequent to freezing [5]
- 3/37 • • with addition of chemicals [5]
- 3/375 • • • with direct contact between the food and the chemical, e.g. liquid N<sub>2</sub>, at cryogenic temperature [5]
- 3/40 • by drying or kilning; Subsequent reconstitution [4, 5]
- 3/42 • • with addition of chemicals before or during drying [5]
- 3/44 • • Freeze-drying [5]
- 3/46 • • Spray-drying [5]
- 3/48 • • Thin layer-, drum- or roller-drying [5]
- 3/50 • • Fluidised-bed drying [5]
- 3/52 • • Foam-drying [5]
- 3/54 • • using irradiation or electric treatment, e.g. ultrasonic waves [5]

## A23N MACHINES OR APPARATUS FOR TREATING HARVESTED FRUIT, VEGETABLES, OR FLOWER BULBS IN BULK, NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR; PEELING VEGETABLES OR FRUIT IN BULK; APPARATUS FOR PREPARING ANIMAL FEEDING-STUFFS (machines for cutting straw or fodder A01F 29/00; disintegrating, e.g. shredding, B02C; severing, e.g. cutting, splitting, slicing, B26B, B26D)

### Subclass index

APPARATUS FOR DRAINING.....	1/00
MACHINES FOR STONING OR REMOVING SEED CONTAINING SECTIONS.....	3/00, 4/00
MACHINES FOR HULLING, HUSKING, CRACKING, OR PEELING.....	5/00, 7/00
APPARATUS FOR PREPARING ANIMAL FEEDING-STUFFS.....	17/00
MACHINES FOR OTHER TREATMENT.....	11/00-15/00

### 1/00 Machines or apparatus for extracting juice

(preparation of non-alcoholic beverages, e.g. by adding

	ingredients to fruit or vegetable juices, A23L 2/00; apparatus for making beverages A47J 31/00; extracting presses B30B)	7/04	• Peeling asparagus (A23N 7/01 takes precedence) [3]
1/02	• combined with disintegrating or cutting	7/08	• for peeling fruit and removing seed-containing sections
		7/10	• Driving mechanisms
<b>3/00</b>	<b>Machines for coring or stoning fruit, characterised by their feeding device</b> (A23N 4/00 takes precedence) [2]	<b>11/00</b>	<b>Removing pith from stems</b>
3/02	• with feeder-drums	<b>12/00</b>	<b>Machines for cleaning, blanching, drying or roasting fruits or vegetables, e.g. coffee, cocoa, nuts</b> (methods for treating, e.g. roasting, coffee or cocoa A23F, A23G; cleaning, e.g. washing, or drying grain B02B 1/00; separating solids from solids for cleaning B07B; cleaning in general B08B; heating devices <i>per se</i> , <i>see</i> the relevant classes, e.g. F24; drying machines in general F26B) [3]
3/04	• with endless feeder-belts	12/02	• for washing or blanching (A23N 12/06 takes precedence; blanching methods A23B 7/06) [3]
3/06	• with feeder-tables	12/04	• • for blanching [3]
		12/06	• for washing or blanching, combined with subsequent drying [3]
<b>4/00</b>	<b>Machines for stoning fruit or removing seed-containing sections from fruit, characterised by their stoning or removing device</b> (for peeling fruit and removing seed-containing sections A23N 7/08; domestic devices for stoning fruit A47J 23/00, for coring fruit A47J 25/00) [2, 3]	12/08	• for drying or roasting (A23N 12/06 takes precedence) [3]
4/02	• for stoning fruit [2]	12/10	• • Rotary roasters [3]
4/04	• • for peaches, plums, apricots or the like [2]	12/12	• • Auxiliary devices for roasting machines [3]
4/06	• • for cherries or the like (A23N 4/04 takes precedence) [2]		
4/08	• • for dates, olives or the like oblong fruits [2]	<b>15/00</b>	<b>Machines or apparatus for other treatment of fruits or vegetables for human purposes; Machines or apparatus for topping or skinning flower bulbs</b> [2]
4/10	• • for fruit with very small pips e.g. raisins [2]	15/01	• for stripping brussels' sprouts from stalks [2]
4/12	• for coring fruit [2]	15/02	• for stemming, piercing or stripping fruit; Removing sprouts of potatoes
4/14	• • for apples, pears or the like [2]	15/04	• Devices for topping fruit or vegetables (topping onions A23N 15/08) [2]
4/16	• • for tomatoes or the like [2]	15/06	• Devices for other treatment of fruit, e.g. marking, maturing, polishing
4/18	• • for citrus fruits [2]	15/08	• Devices for topping or skinning onions or flower bulbs [2]
4/20	• • for pineapples [2]	15/10	• for shelling peas or beans [2]
4/22	• for both splitting and stoning [2]	15/12	• for snipping or stringing beans [3]
4/24	• for removing seed-containing sections from cut fruit [2]		
		<b>17/00</b>	<b>Apparatus specially adapted for preparing animal feeding-stuffs</b>
<b>5/00</b>	<b>Machines for hulling, husking, or cracking nuts</b>	17/02	• Fodder mashers (household implements for mashing potatoes or other foodstuffs A47J 19/04)
5/01	• for peanuts [2]		
5/03	• for coconuts (A23N 5/08 takes precedence) [2]		
5/08	• for removing fleshy or fibrous hulls of nuts (for peanuts A23N 5/01)		
<b>7/00</b>	<b>Peeling vegetables or fruit</b> (devices for skinning onions A23N 15/08; peeling machines of the household type A47J 17/00) [3]		
7/01	• using chemical substances, e.g. lye [2, 3]		
7/02	• Peeling potatoes, apples or similarly shaped vegetables or fruit (A23N 7/01 takes precedence) [3]		
<b>A23P</b>	<b>SHAPING OR WORKING OF FOODSTUFFS, NOT FULLY COVERED BY A SINGLE OTHER SUBCLASS</b> (shaping substances in a plastic state in general B29C)		

**Note(s)**

Attention is drawn to subclasses A01J, A21C, A22C, A47J, B02C, in addition to other subclasses of A23, in connection with the shaping or working of foodstuffs.

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Shaping or working of foodstuffs</b>	1/10	• Other shaping methods, e.g. moulding [4]
1/02	• Agglomerating; Granulating; Tableting [4]	1/12	• • Extruding [4]
1/04	• Encapsulation of particles, e.g. foodstuff additives (flavouring agents A23L 1/22) [4]	1/14	• • Puffing or expanding (A23L 1/164, A23L 1/18, A23L 1/217 take precedence) [4]
1/06	• Making free-flowing or instant powder (A23P 1/02, A23P 1/04 take precedence) [4]	1/16	• • Foaming or whipping (cream substitutes A23L 1/19) [4]
1/08	• Coating of foodstuffs; Coatings therefor; Making of laminated, multilayered or stuffed foodstuffs [4]		

**A24 TOBACCO; CIGARS; CIGARETTES; SMOKERS' REQUISITES****A24B MANUFACTURE OR PREPARATION OF TOBACCO FOR SMOKING OR CHEWING; TOBACCO; SNUFF****Subclass index**

PREPARATION.....	1/00, 3/00
STRIPPING; CUTTING; HUMIDIFYING.....	5/00, 7/00, 3/00, 9/00
TWISTING MACHINES.....	11/00
CHEMICAL TREATMENT.....	15/00
TOBACCO.....	13/00

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Preparation of tobacco on the plantation</b> (harvesters for tobacco A01D 45/16)	7/10	• • • with cutter axes parallel to the feeding direction
1/02	• Arrangements in barns for preparatory treatment of the tobacco, e.g. with devices for drying	7/12	• • • with cutter axes transverse to the feeding direction
1/04	• Sifting, sorting, cleaning or removing impurities from tobacco (purifying by sifting or sorting in general B07B)	7/14	• Feeding or regulating devices for tobacco-cutting apparatus
1/06	• Stringing tobacco leaves	<b>9/00</b>	<b>Control of the moisture content of tobacco products, e.g. cigars, cigarettes, pipe tobacco</b> (devices for use by the smoker for controlling the moisture content of tobacco products A24F 25/00)
1/08	• Suspending devices for tobacco leaves		
1/10	• Packing or pressing tobacco		
<b>3/00</b>	<b>Preparing tobacco in the factory</b>	<b>11/00</b>	<b>Tobacco-twisting machines</b>
3/02	• Humidifying packed raw tobacco (containers for packaging contents in moist condition B65D 81/22)	<b>13/00</b>	<b>Tobacco for pipes, for cigars, e.g. cigar inserts, or for cigarettes; Chewing tobacco; Snuff</b> (mechanical treatment A24B 3/00-A24B 11/00; reconstituted tobacco products A24B 3/14; chemical features or treatment of tobacco A24B 15/00)
3/04	• Humidifying or drying tobacco bunches or cut tobacco (A24B 3/12 takes precedence)	13/02	• Flakes or shreds of tobacco
3/06	• Loosening tobacco leaves or cut tobacco (A24B 3/07 takes precedence)	<b>15/00</b>	<b>Chemical features or treatment of tobacco; Tobacco substitutes</b> (A24B 3/00 takes precedence)
3/07	• Cutting or removing tie leaves; Cutting-off stem butts	15/10	• Chemical features of tobacco products or tobacco substitutes [3]
3/08	• Blending tobacco	15/12	• • of reconstituted tobacco [3]
3/10	• Roasting or cooling tobacco	15/14	• • • made of tobacco and a binding agent not derived from tobacco [3]
3/12	• Steaming, curing, or flavouring tobacco	15/16	• • of tobacco substitutes [3]
3/14	• Forming reconstituted tobacco products, e.g. wrapper materials, sheets, imitation leaves, rods, cakes; Forms of such products (delustering A24C 1/40; tobacco or cigarette paper D21H)	15/18	• Treatment of tobacco products or tobacco substitutes [3]
3/16	• Classifying or aligning leaves	15/20	• • Biochemical treatment [3]
3/18	• Other treatment of leaves, e.g. puffing, crimpling, cleaning	15/22	• • by application of electric or wave energy or particle radiation [3]
<b>5/00</b>	<b>Stripping tobacco; Treatment of stems or ribs</b>	15/24	• • by extraction; Tobacco extracts [3]
5/02	• by plucking out the stem	15/26	• • • Use of organic solvents for extraction [3]
5/04	• by cutting out the stem	15/28	• • by chemical substances [3]
5/06	• by stripping leaf-parts from the stem		
5/08	• by cutting-off, shaving off, pressing flat the thick parts of stems or ribs		
5/10	• by crushing the leaves with subsequent separating		
5/12	• Auxiliary devices for stripping		
5/14	• Flattening machines for leaves or stems		
5/16	• Other treatment of stems or ribs, e.g. bending, chopping, incising (humidifying A24B 3/04)		
<b>7/00</b>	<b>Cutting tobacco</b> (hand-cutting tools B26B; slicing in general B26D 1/00, B26D 3/00)	<b>Note(s)</b>	In groups A24B 15/30-A24B 15/42, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place for a substance.
7/02	• by machines with reciprocating knives	15/30	• • • by organic substances [3]
7/04	• by machines with revolving knives	15/32	• • • by acyclic compounds [3]
7/06	• • with two co-operating sets of knife discs	15/34	• • • containing a carbocyclic ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [3]
7/08	• • with several knives which act one after the other	15/36	• • • containing a heterocyclic ring [3]
		15/38	• • • • having only nitrogen as hetero-atoms [3]
		15/40	• • • • having only oxygen or sulfur as hetero-atoms [3]
		15/42	• • • by organic and inorganic substances [3]

## A24C MACHINES FOR MAKING CIGARS OR CIGARETTES

**Making cigars**

**1/00 Elements of cigar manufacture** (combinations of two or more elements of cigar manufacture A24C 3/00; attaching or incorporating filters or mouthpieces A24C 5/47, A24C 5/52; cutting machines in general B26D)

- 1/02 • Tobacco-feeding devices with or without means for dividing the tobacco into measured quantities
- 1/04 • Devices for cutting cigar binders or wrappers
- 1/08 • Making tobacco bunches
- 1/10 • • Bunch-making machines with aprons and tables for wrapping
- 1/12 • • Bunch-making machines with wrapping rollers
- 1/14 • • Bunch-making machines with grippers
- 1/16 • Treating bunches
- 1/18 • • Moulds or presses for cigar bunches
- 1/20 • • • Rotating moulds for cigar bunches
- 1/22 • • Rolling formed bunches
- 1/24 • • Cutting bunches to length
- 1/26 • Applying the wrapper
- 1/28 • • Wrapper transferring mechanisms
- 1/30 • • Devices for applying the wrapper to the bunch
- 1/32 • • Devices for forming the tips of cigars (filter tips, mouthpieces A24D 3/00)
- 1/34 • • Adhesive-applying means
- 1/36 • • Cutting wrapped bunches to length
- 1/38 • Final treatment of cigars, e.g. sorting (drying cigars A24B 9/00)
- 1/40 • • Delustering or powdering cigars
- 1/42 • • Marking, printing, or decorating cigars
- 1/44 • • Bundling and pressing devices for cigars

**3/00 Complete manufacture of cigars; Combinations of two or more elements of cigar manufacture**

**5/00 Making cigarettes; Making tipping materials for, or attaching filters or mouthpieces to, cigars or cigarettes [3]**

- 5/02 • Cigarette-filling machines
- 5/04 • • with continuous rod (A24C 5/14 takes precedence)
- 5/06 • • with pressing-chamber
- 5/08 • Machines with aprons and tables for wrapping
- 5/10 • Machines with wrapping rollers
- 5/12 • Cutting the ends of filled and rolled cigarettes
- 5/14 • Machines of the continuous-rod type (tobacco feeding devices A24C 5/39)
- 5/18 • • Forming the rod
- 5/20 • • Reels; Supports for bobbins; Other accessories
- 5/22 • • Creasing the paper seam
- 5/24 • • Pasting the seam
- 5/26 • • Drying the seam

- 5/28 • • Cutting-off the tobacco rod
- 5/30 • • • Machines combined with devices for grinding the knives
- 5/31 • • with special arrangements coming into operation during starting, slowing-down, or breakdown of the machine, e.g. for diverting or breaking the continuous rod
- 5/32 • Separating, ordering, counting, or examining cigarettes (in relation to packaging B65B 19/00); Regulating the feeding of tobacco according to rod or cigarette condition (investigating or analysing materials by determining their chemical or physical properties G01N; controlling in general G05)
- 5/33 • • Catching or ordering devices
- 5/34 • • Examining cigarettes or the rod, e.g. for regulating the feeding of tobacco; Removing defective cigarettes
- 5/343 • • • by mechanical means, e.g. feelers
- 5/345 • • • Removing defective cigarettes (A24C 5/31 takes precedence)
- 5/35 • Adaptations of conveying apparatus for transporting cigarettes from making machine to packaging machine
- 5/352 • • using containers, i.e. boats
- 5/354 • • • Filling the boats at the making machine
- 5/356 • • • Emptying the boats into the hopper of the packaging machine (hopper construction B65B 19/04)
- 5/358 • • • Boat constructions
- 5/36 • Removing papers or other parts from defective cigarettes
- 5/38 • Machines combined with printing devices
- 5/39 • Tobacco feeding devices (regulating feed according to rod or cigarette condition A24C 5/34)
- 5/40 • Hand-driven apparatus for making cigarettes
- 5/42 • • Pocket cigarette-fillers
- 5/44 • • Pocket cigarette-rollers
- 5/46 • Making paper tubes for cigarettes (making paper tubes in general B31C)
- 5/47 • Attaching filters or mouthpieces to cigars or cigarettes, e.g. inserting filters into cigarettes or their mouthpieces (A24C 5/52 takes precedence; filters, their manufacture, mouthpieces A24D 3/00) [3]
- 5/52 • Incorporating filters or mouthpieces into a cigarette rod or a tobacco rod (filters, their manufacture, mouthpieces A24D 3/00)
- 5/54 • Folding the ends of cigarette paper tubes after filling them with tobacco
- 5/56 • Making tipping materials, e.g. sheet cork for mouthpieces of cigars or cigarettes, by mechanical means (chemical part of making tipping material C08; wrapping papers for cigarettes D21H)
- 5/58 • • Applying the tipping materials
- 5/60 • Final treatment of cigarettes, e.g. marking, printing, branding, decorating

## A24D CIGARS; CIGARETTES; TOBACCO SMOKE FILTERS; MOUTHPIECES FOR CIGARS OR CIGARETTES; MANUFACTURE OF TOBACCO SMOKE FILTERS OR MOUTHPIECES

**1/00 Cigars; Cigarettes**

- 1/02 • with special covers

## A24D

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1/04 • with mouthpieces or filter-tips (mouthpieces, filter-tips <u>per se</u> A24D 3/00)</p> <p>1/08 • with lighting means (pyrophoric compositions C06C 15/00; lighters <u>per se</u> F23Q)</p> <p>1/10 • with extinguishers</p> <p>1/12 • with ash-retaining attachments, holders, or other equipment</p> <p>1/14 • Tobacco cartridges for pipes</p> <p>1/16 • Bands for cigars or cigarettes (machines for applying bands B65C)</p> <p>1/18 • Selection of materials, other than tobacco, suitable for smoking</p> <p><b>3/00 Tobacco smoke filters, e.g. filter-tips, filtering inserts</b> (filters in general B01D); <b>Mouthpieces for cigars or cigarettes</b> (for pipes, for cigar or cigarette holders A24F 7/00) [3]</p> <p>3/02 • Manufacture of tobacco smoke filters (manufacture of paper or cellulosic materials for filters D21) [3]</p> | <p>3/04 • Tobacco smoke filters characterised by their shape or structure [3]</p> <p>3/06 • Use of materials for tobacco smoke filters [3]</p> <p>3/08 • • of organic materials as carrier or major constituent (of ion exchange materials A24D 3/12) [3]</p> <p>3/10 • • • of cellulose or cellulose derivatives [3]</p> <p>3/12 • • of ion exchange materials [3]</p> <p>3/14 • • of organic materials as additive (of ion exchange materials A24D 3/12) [3]</p> <p>3/16 • • of inorganic materials [3]</p> <p>3/18 • Mouthpieces for cigars or cigarettes; Manufacture thereof (A24D 3/02 takes precedence; making tipping materials for, or attaching them to mouthpieces of, cigars or cigarettes A24C 5/56; producing cigar or cigarette holders from plastics or from substances in a plastic state B29D 23/14; manufacture from metal, <u>see</u> the relevant subclasses of Section B) [3]</p> |
|--|---|

## A24F SMOKERS' REQUISITES; MATCH BOXES (lighters F23Q)

### Subclass index

#### TOBACCO PIPES; MOUTHPIECES

General structure.....	1/00
Special pipes.....	1/28, 1/30, 3/00
Bowls; mouthpieces.....	5/00, 7/00
Accessories; seasoning.....	9/00, 11/00
APPLIANCES FOR SMOKING CIGARS OR CIGARETTES.....	13/00, 15/00, 17/00
MATCH RECEPTACLES OR BOXES.....	27/00, 29/00
OTHER SMOKERS' REQUISITES.....	19/00-25/00, 31/00, 47/00

### Tobacco pipes

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>1/00 Tobacco pipes</b> (bee-keepers' pipes A01K 55/00)</p> <p>1/02 • with arrangements for cleaning or cooling the smoke (hookahs A24F 1/30)</p> <p>1/04 • • with smoke chamber or slobber traps</p> <p>1/06 • • • inside the pipe</p> <p>1/08 • • • • inside the stem</p> <p>1/10 • • • • inside the bowl</p> <p>1/12 • • • outside the pipe</p> <p>1/14 • • • • with liquid-container</p> <p>1/16 • • with zigzag or like passages for the smoke</p> <p>1/18 • • with non-absorbent linings</p> <p>1/20 • • with absorbent linings</p> <p>1/22 • • with arrangements for cooling by air, e.g. pipes with double walls</p> <p>1/24 • for burning the tobacco from below</p> <p>1/26 • with filling devices</p> <p>1/28 • Tubular pipes, e.g. in the form of cigars</p> <p>1/30 • Hookahs</p> <p>1/32 • Selection of materials for pipes</p> <p><b>3/00 Tobacco pipes combined with other objects</b> (smoking appliances on walking sticks or canes A45B 3/16)</p> <p>3/02 • with cleaning appliances</p> | <p>5/02 • with arrangements for keeping upright, when put aside</p> <p>5/04 • with holes for admitting air</p> <p>5/06 • with insets of clay or the like</p> <p>5/08 • • with grates, sieves, or the like</p> <p>5/10 • Bowl-covers, attached and removable</p> <p>5/12 • • with attached stoppers</p> <p>5/14 • • with wind screens</p> <p><b>7/00 Mouthpieces for pipes; Mouthpieces for cigar or cigarette holders</b></p> <p>7/02 • with detachable connecting members</p> <p>7/04 • with smoke filters (filters therefor A24D 3/00)</p> <p><b>9/00 Accessories for smokers' pipes</b></p> <p>9/02 • Tobacco stoppers, i.e. devices for tamping tobacco down into the pipe (combined with tobacco cases A24F 23/04)</p> <p>9/04 • Cleaning devices for pipes (combined with pipes A24F 3/02)</p> <p>9/06 • • for stems, e.g. brushes, needles, strings</p> <p>9/08 • • Cleaning-sets</p> <p>9/10 • • for bowls, e.g. scrapers, bowl-cleaners with cutting-teeth</p> <p>9/12 • • Devices for cleaning tobacco pipes by steam, air, or water</p> <p>9/14 • Stands or supports for tobacco pipes</p> <p>9/16 • Protective coverings or cases for pipes or parts thereof</p> |
|--|--|

### Component parts or accessories for pipes; Mouthpieces

#### 5/00 Bowls for pipes



**11/00 Seasoning of tobacco pipes****13/00 Appliances for smoking cigars or cigarettes**

- 13/02 • Cigar or cigarette holders (mouthpieces A24F 7/00)
- 13/04 • • with arrangements for cleaning or cooling the smoke (hookahs A24F 1/30)
- 13/06 • • • with smoke filters (filters therefor A24D 3/00)
- 13/08 • • with special devices, e.g. spikes or grippers, for holding the cigars or cigarettes
- 13/10 • • with end-ejectors
- 13/12 • • combined with other objects, e.g. writing utensils (combined with walking or umbrella sticks A45B 3/16)
- 13/14 • • Protecting cases
- 13/16 • Safety sleeves for cigars or cigarettes preventing damage by glowing ash
- 13/18 • Extinguishers for cigars or cigarettes
- 13/20 • • Means for cutting-off the glowing ash
- 13/22 • Supports for holding cigars or cigarettes while smoking
- 13/24 • Cigar cutters, slitters, or perforators, e.g. combined with lighters (combined with hand-shears or scissors B26B 13/22)
- 13/26 • • formed as pocket devices
- 13/28 • Devices for blowing through cigars
- 13/30 • Arrangements for producing smoke images or rings (smoke toys A63H 33/28)

**15/00 Cigar or cigarette receptacles or boxes** (adaptations for use in vehicles B60N 3/12; packages B65D)

- 15/02 • for domestic use
- 15/04 • • with appliances for releasing a single cigar or cigarette
- 15/06 • • with means for offering (A24F 15/04 takes precedence) [2]
- 15/08 • • combined with other objects
- 15/10 • • • with lighters
- 15/12 • for pocket use
- 15/14 • • with appliances for releasing a single cigar or cigarette
- 15/16 • • with means for offering (A24F 15/14 takes precedence) [2]
- 15/18 • • combined with other objects
- 15/20 • with separate compartments for each cigar or cigarette

**17/00 Receptacles for cigarette papers****Other smokers' requisites**

- 19/00 Ash-trays** (arrangements in vehicle passenger accommodation B60N 3/08)

- 19/02 • with removable insets
- 19/04 • with depressible false floor
- 19/06 • with tiltable bowl or false floor
- 19/08 • with slidably mounted false floor
- 19/09 • with automatically-acting safety devices, e.g. heat-responsive
- 19/10 • combined with other articles (A24F 15/08 takes precedence)
- 19/12 • • with match-boxes
- 19/14 • • with extinguishers

**21/00 Stands for smokers' requisites****23/00 Cases for tobacco, snuff, or chewing tobacco**

- 23/02 • Tobacco pouches
- 23/04 • • combined with other objects, e.g. with filling devices for pipes

**25/00 Devices used by the smoker for controlling the moisture content of, or for scenting, cigars, cigarettes or tobacco** (humidifying in the factory A24B 3/04)

- 25/02 • Moistening devices

**27/00 Match receptacles or boxes** (packages B65D; composition of strike-surfaces, matches C06F)

- 27/02 • with means for storing the matches separately
- 27/04 • Protective coverings for match receptacles
- 27/06 • with wind-guards
- 27/08 • Stands for match-boxes (A24F 27/10 takes precedence)
- 27/10 • Receptacles for matches or match-boxes to be supported on the wall
- 27/12 • Match-books
- 27/14 • Match dispensers; Dispensers for matches arranged on strips (dispensing aspects in general B65D 83/00)
- 27/16 • • for pocket use
- 27/18 • • • with means preventing spontaneous ignition
- 27/20 • • • with means for igniting the match as it is dispensed
- 27/22 • • for domestic use
- 27/24 • • • with means preventing spontaneous ignition
- 27/26 • • • with means for igniting the match as it is dispensed; Match strip lighters

**29/00 Devices for igniting matches; Holders for ignited matches****31/00 Pipe-spills; Devices for splitting matches****47/00 Smokers' requisites not provided for elsewhere**

## PERSONAL OR DOMESTIC ARTICLES

### A41 WEARING APPAREL

#### A41B SHIRTS; UNDERWEAR; BABY LINEN; HANDKERCHIEFS

##### Subclass index

SELECTION OF SPECIAL MATERIALS.....	17/00
SHIRTS.....	1/00-7/00
UNDERGARMENTS; BABY LINEN; HANDKERCHIEFS.....	9/00, 11/00, 13/00, 15/00

<b>1/00 Shirts</b>		
1/02 • with front inserts		9/04 • Knickers for ladies, with or without inserted crotch or seat parts
1/04 • convertible into cami-knickers		9/06 • Undershirts; Chemises
1/06 • exchangeably attached to underbodices, drawers, or the like		9/08 • Combined undergarments (panti-hose, body-stockings A41B 11/14)
1/08 • Details		9/10 • Petticoats
1/10 • • Closures (buttons A44B 1/00; sleeve links A44B 5/00)		9/12 • Protective undergarments (combined with swabs or absorbent pads or specially adapted for supporting them A61F 13/15)
1/12 • • Neckbands		9/14 • Waistbands forming part of the undergarments; Closures thereof
1/14 • • • Stiffeners for neckbands		9/16 • Shoulder-straps forming part of the undergarments (shoulder-straps in general A41F 15/00)
1/16 • • • Adjustable neckbands		
1/18 • • Shirt-fronts		<b>11/00 Hosiery; Panti-hose</b> (elastic stockings for curative purposes A61F 13/08) [2]
1/20 • • • Stiffeners for shirt-fronts		11/01 • Seams [2]
1/22 • • • False shirt-fronts, e.g. dickeys, with or without attached collars; Means for attaching or stretching		11/02 • Reinforcements
		11/04 • • of the stocking top
<b>3/00 Collars</b> (A41B 1/00 takes precedence)		11/06 • with interchangeable foot parts
3/02 • Closures, e.g. tabs		11/08 • Stockings without foot parts
3/04 • fastening to shirts (collar-studs A44B 3/00)		11/10 • Stocking protectors (to be put in footwear A43B 23/28)
3/06 • Stiffeners for collars		11/12 • Means at the upper end to keep the stockings up (A41B 11/04 takes precedence; suspenders A41F 11/00) [2]
3/08 • Combined stiffening and fastening devices		11/14 • Panti-hose; Body-stockings [2]
3/10 • chemically stiffened (processes for stiffening D06)		
3/12 • with supports for neckties or cravats		<b>13/00 Baby linen</b> (babies' napkins or holders therefor A61F 13/15) [5]
3/14 • Reversible collars		13/04 • Babies' pants (combined with swabs or absorbent pads or specially adapted for supporting them A61F 13/15) [5]
3/16 • Plastic collars; Paper collars		13/06 • Slip-in bags; Swaddling clothes
3/18 • Protectors for collars		13/08 • Bodices [5]
		13/10 • Bibs
<b>5/00 Fold-line formings for collars or cuffs</b> (folding collar or cuff edges while manufacturing A41H 33/00)		<b>15/00 Handkerchiefs</b>
		15/02 • Simulations of breast pocket handkerchiefs; Their attachment [2]
<b>7/00 Cuffs</b> (A41B 1/00, A41B 3/00 take precedence; cuff links A44B 5/00)		<b>17/00 Selection of special materials for underwear</b>
7/02 • Closures for cuffs		
7/04 • Fastening cuffs to shirts		
7/06 • Fastening cuffs to the sleeves of jackets		
7/08 • Stiffeners for cuffs		
7/10 • Reversible cuffs		
7/12 • Protectors for cuffs		
<b>9/00 Undergarments</b> (corsets, brassières A41C)		
9/02 • Drawers or underpants for men, with or without inserted crotch or seat parts		

**A41C CORSETS; BRASSIÈRES**

**1/00 Corsets or girdles** (corset fasteners A41F 1/04; orthopaedic corsets A61F 5/02)

- 1/02 • Elastic corsets
- 1/04 • • made of rubber
- 1/06 • with brassières
- 1/08 • Abdominal supports
- 1/10 • • Maternity corsets
- 1/12 • Component parts
- 1/14 • • Stays; Steels
- 1/16 • • • made of wire
- 1/18 • • • of built-up type
- 1/20 • • • with protective caps

**3/00 Brassières**

- 3/02 • with front closures
- 3/04 • for nursing mothers
- 3/06 • Strapless brassières
- 3/08 • combined with other garments (with corsets A41C 1/06)
- 3/10 • with stiffening or bust-forming inserts (inserts per se A41C 3/14) [2]
- 3/12 • Component parts [2]
- 3/14 • • Stiffening or bust-forming inserts [2]

**5/00 Machines, appliances, or methods for manufacturing corsets or brassières**

**A41D OUTERWEAR; PROTECTIVE GARMENTS; ACCESSORIES** (eye or ear protectors A61F 9/00, A61F 11/00; sweating suits A61H 36/00)

**Note(s)**

In this subclass, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

- "outerwear" covers dressing-gowns, bathing costumes and pyjamas.

**Subclass index**

SELECTION OF SPECIAL MATERIALS.....	31/00
OUTERWEAR	
Outerwear in general.....	1/00, 3/00, 5/00, 11/00, 15/00
Outerwear for particular use.....	7/00, 10/00, 13/00, 29/00
Details of garments.....	27/00
ACCESSORIES.....	17/00-25/00

**1/00 Garments** (for children A41D 11/00)

- 1/02 • Jackets
- 1/04 • Vests, jerseys, sweaters, or the like
- 1/06 • Trousers
- 1/08 • • for sporting purposes, e.g. ski trousers, riding breeches
- 1/10 • • Means for maintaining the crease
- 1/12 • • Means for hiding bandy legs
- 1/14 • Skirts
- 1/16 • • Hooped skirts; Crinolines
- 1/18 • Blouses
- 1/20 • Maternity clothing
- 1/22 • Other garments for ladies

**3/00 Overgarments** (fur garments A41D 5/00; for children A41D 11/00; professional or sporting protective garments A41D 13/00)

- 3/02 • Overcoats
- 3/04 • • Raincoats
- 3/06 • • • with leg-protecting means
- 3/08 • Capes

**5/00 Fur garments; Garments of fur substitutes**

**7/00 Bathing gowns; Swim-suits, drawers, or trunks; Beach suits** (bathing caps A42B 1/12)

**10/00 Pyjamas; Nightdresses [3]**

**11/00 Garments for children**

**13/00 Professional, industrial or sporting protective garments, e.g. garments affording protection against blows or punches, surgeons' gowns** (helmets A42B 3/00; clothing affording protection against chemical agents or for use at high altitudes A62B 17/00; life-saving garments for use at sea, diving suits B63C; bulletproof or armoured clothing F41H; clothing affording protection against radiation G21F 3/02; electric heating elements H05B)

- 13/002 • with controlled internal environment [7]
- 13/005 • • with controlled temperature [7]
- 13/008 • protecting against electric shocks or static electricity [7]
- 13/01 • with reflective or luminous safety means [7]
- 13/012 • for aquatic activities, e.g. with buoyancy aids [7]
- 13/015 • with shock-absorbing means (A41D 13/05 takes precedence) [7]
- 13/018 • • inflatable automatically [7]
- 13/02 • Overalls
- 13/04 • Aprons; Fastening devices for aprons
- 13/05 • protecting only a particular body part (sports brassières A41C 3/00) [7]
- 13/06 • • Knee or foot [1, 7]
- 13/08 • • Arm or hand (protective gloves A41D 19/015) [1, 7]

A41D

13/11	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Protective face masks, e.g. for surgical use, or for use in foul atmospheres (eye-masks A61F 9/04) [7]</li></ul>	25/04	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Fastening devices for the bands</li></ul>
13/12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Surgeons' or patients' gowns or dresses [3]</li></ul>	25/06	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• with knot, bow, or like tied by the user</li></ul>
15/00	<b>Convertible garments</b> (for travelling or camp articles A45F 4/00)	25/08	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Means for forming or tying the knot, or the like</li></ul>
15/02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Skirts convertible into trousers</li></ul>	25/10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Means for holding the knot, or the like</li></ul>
15/04	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Garments convertible into other articles</li></ul>	25/12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• • attachable to the collar or stud</li></ul>
17/00	<b>Gaiters; Spats</b>	25/14	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Means for forming and holding simultaneously</li></ul>
17/02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Leggings</li></ul>	25/16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Linings; Stiffening-pieces</li></ul>
17/04	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Puttees</li></ul>	27/00	<b>Details of garments or of their making</b> (haberdashery A44)
19/00	<b>Gloves</b> (operating gloves A61B 19/04; swimming gloves A63B 31/02; as accessories for games or sports, e.g. baseball, boxing or golf gloves, A63B 71/14; gloves for glove-boxes B25J 21/02) [1, 7]	27/02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Linings</li></ul>
19/01	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• with undivided covering for all four fingers, i.e. mittens (A41D 19/015 takes precedence) [2, 7]</li></ul>	27/04	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Removable linings</li></ul>
19/015	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Protective gloves [7]</li></ul>	27/06	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Stiffening-pieces</li></ul>
19/02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Arrangements for cutting-out, or shapes of, glove blanks</li></ul>	27/08	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Trimmings; Ornaments (trimmings in general D04D)</li></ul>
19/04	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Appliances for making gloves; Measuring devices for glove-making</li></ul>	27/10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sleeves; Armholes</li></ul>
20/00	<b>Wristbands or headbands, e.g. for absorbing sweat</b> (hat fittings A42C 5/02) [5]	27/12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Shields or protectors</li></ul>
23/00	<b>Scarves; Head-scarves; Neckerchiefs</b>	27/13	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Under-arm shields [2]</li></ul>
25/00	<b>Neckties</b>	27/14	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• on the underedge of the garment</li></ul>
25/02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• with ready-made knot or bow, with or without bands</li></ul>	27/16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Collar-shields</li></ul>
		27/18	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Cloth collars</li></ul>
		27/20	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Pockets; Making or setting-in pockets</li></ul>
		27/22	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Loops or hooks for hanging-up (with locking devices E05B 69/00)</li></ul>
		27/24	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hems; Seams</li></ul>
		27/26	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Shoulder-pads; Hip-pads; Bustles</li></ul>
		27/28	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Means for ventilation [2]</li></ul>
		29/00	<b>Uniforms; Parts or accessories of uniforms</b>
		31/00	<b>Selection of special materials for outerwear</b>
		31/02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• of layered materials [2]</li></ul>

A41F GARMENT FASTENINGS; SUSPENDERS

Subclass index

FASTENING DEVICES.....	1/00
SUSPENDERS FOR TROUSERS OR SKIRTS.....	3/00, 5/00, 7/00, 9/00, 18/00
STOCKING OR SOCK SUSPENDERS.....	11/00, 13/00, 18/00
OTHER GARMENT SUSPENDERS; SHOULDER STRAPS.....	18/00, 19/00, 15/00
MEANS FOR HOLDING-DOWN GARMENTS.....	17/00

1/00	<b>Fastening devices specially adapted for garments</b> (fastening devices in general A44B)	9/00	<b>Belts, girdles, or waistbands for trousers or skirts</b>
1/02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Buttonholes; Eyelets for buttonholes</li></ul>	9/02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Expansible or adjustable belts or girdles</li></ul>
1/04	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Corset fasteners</li></ul>	11/00	<b>Stocking or sock suspenders</b>
1/06	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Glove fasteners</li></ul>	11/02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Devices for attaching the stocking or sock to the suspender</li></ul>
1/08	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Garter fasteners</li></ul>	11/04	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• of the stud-and-loop type</li></ul>
		11/06	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Pivoted-jaw clips</li></ul>
		11/08	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• consisting of one part</li></ul>
		11/10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Shields or like intermediate members</li></ul>
		11/12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• with devices for adjusting the length</li></ul>
		11/14	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Means for fastening the suspender to the garment, e.g. trousers, underpants</li></ul>
		11/16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Garters</li></ul>
		11/18	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Means for fastening the stocking directly to the undergarment</li></ul>
		13/00	<b>Other devices for supporting or holding stockings or socks during wear</b>
		15/00	<b>Shoulder or like straps</b>
3/00	<b>Braces</b>		
3/02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Strips, tongues, or the like, for attaching to the trousers</li></ul>		
3/04	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Means for joining the strips, tongues, or the like, to the body of the braces</li></ul>		
3/06	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Means for rendering braces pliable; Elastic elements for braces; Braces completely made of rubber</li></ul>		
5/00	<b>Trouser supports attached to the shirt, waistcoat, or the like</b>		
7/00	<b>Devices for connecting underpants to trousers</b>		

- |              |   |       |   |
|--------------|---|-------|---|
| 15/02        | • Means for retaining the straps in position                  | 18/00 | <b>Garment suspenders covered by two or more of groups A41F 3/00-A41F 17/00</b> |
| <b>17/00</b> | <b>Means for holding-down garments</b>                        | 19/00 | <b>Garment suspenders not otherwise provided for</b>                            |
| 17/02        | • Clips or the like for trousers or skirts, e.g. for cyclists |       |   |
| 17/04        | • Straps on the lower end of legs of trousers                 |       |   |

## A41G ARTIFICIAL FLOWERS; WIGS; MASKS; FEATHERS

### Subclass index

ARTIFICIAL FLOWERS.....	1/00
WIGS.....	3/00, 5/00
MASKS.....	7/00
FEATHERS.....	9/00, 11/00

- |             |   |              |   |
|-------------|---|--------------|---|
| <b>1/00</b> | <b>Artificial flowers, fruit, leaves, or trees</b> (artificial christmas trees A47G 33/06); <b>Garlands</b> | <b>7/00</b>  | <b>Masks or dominoes for concealing identity, e.g. for theatrical use</b>                                   |
| 1/02        | • Implements, apparatus, or machines for making artificial flowers, or the like                             | 7/02         | • with parts for producing a special effect   |
| 1/04        | • Garlands; Assembly of garlands  | <b>9/00</b>  | <b>Adornments of natural feathers; Working natural feathers</b> (treatment of bed feathers B68G 3/00, D06M) |
| <b>3/00</b> | <b>Wigs</b> (for dolls only A63H 3/44)  | <b>11/00</b> | <b>Artificial feathers</b>  |
| <b>5/00</b> | <b>Hair pieces, inserts, rolls, pads, or the like; Toupées</b>  | 11/02        | • Implements or machines for making artificial feathers   |
| 5/02        | • Artificial eyelashes; Artificial eyebrows   |              |   |

**A41H APPLIANCES OR METHODS FOR MAKING CLOTHES, e.g. FOR DRESS-MAKING, FOR TAILORING, NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR** (machines, appliances or methods for making particular articles of apparel, see the relevant groups for these articles in A41B-A41F; cutting tools or machines in general B26; weaving, braiding, lace-making, knitting, tufting, treating of textiles D03-D06; sewing-machines, sewing appliances, seam-ripping devices D05B; cutting or otherwise severing textile materials D06H 7/00)

### Subclass index

#### METHODS; DEVICES OR ACCESSORIES

Measuring.....	1/00, 3/00, 5/00
Tracing.....	1/00, 3/00, 5/00, 11/00, 23/00
Fitting.....	5/00, 21/00
Finishing, mending.....	9/00, 25/00, 27/00, 31/00
Accessories.....	15/00, 17/00, 19/00, 31/00

#### MACHINES, APPARATUS, OR METHODS FOR SPECIAL APPLICATIONS

Folding; setting fastenings.....	33/00, 37/00
Other methods or machines.....	41/00, 42/00, 43/00

- |             |  |              |  |
|-------------|--|--------------|--|
| <b>1/00</b> | <b>Measuring aids or methods</b> (making patterns by modelling on the human body A41H 3/04; measuring persons for identification purposes A61B 5/117; measuring in general G01, e.g. G01B)           | 3/04         | • Making patterns by modelling on the human body   |
| 1/02        | • Devices for taking measurements on the human body  | 3/06         | • Patterns on paper  |
| 1/04        | • • Stands for taking measurements   | 3/08         | • Patterns on the cloth, e.g. printed  |
| 1/06        | • in combination with marking (marking <u>per se</u> D06H 1/00)  | <b>5/00</b>  | <b>Dress forms; Bust forms; Stands</b> (for display purposes A47F 8/00)  |
| 1/10        | • Measuring jackets for marking-out patterns   | 5/01         | • with means for adjustment, e.g. of height  |
|             |  | 5/02         | • Inflatable forms   |
| <b>3/00</b> | <b>Patterns for cutting-out; Methods of drafting or marking-out such patterns, e.g. on the cloth</b> (woven fabrics characterised by the special disposition of the warp or weft threads D03D 13/00) | <b>9/00</b>  | <b>Devices or methods for trimming, levelling, or straightening the hems of garments</b> (on sewing machines D05B) |
| 3/01        | • using stencils   | 9/02         | • Devices for marking the length of garments   |
| 3/015       | • • of adjustable type   | <b>11/00</b> | <b>Tracing-wheels</b>  |
| 3/02        | • Making patterns by copying (tracing-wheels A41H 11/00)   | <b>15/00</b> | <b>Cloth-holders</b>   |

## A41H

17/00	<b>Cushions for needles or pins</b> (A41H 19/00 takes precedence)	37/02	• Setting hooks or eyes
19/00	<b>Boxes for needles or pins</b>	37/04	• Setting snap fasteners
21/00	<b>Supports for the body whilst trying-on or fitting</b>	37/06	• Setting slide or glide fastener elements
23/00	<b>Devices for applying chalk; Sharpening or holding chalk</b> (writing or drawing implements B43)	37/08	• Setting buckles
25/00	<b>Appliances or methods for marking-out, perforating, or making buttonholes</b> (by sewing D05B)	37/10	• Setting buttons
25/02	• Buttonhole shears	41/00	<b>Machines or appliances for making garments from natural or artificial fur</b> (fur garments A41D 5/00)
27/00	<b>Mending garments by adhesives or adhesive patches</b>	42/00	<b>Multi-step production lines for making clothes</b> (sewing units consisting of combinations of several sewing machines D05B 25/00) [3]
31/00	<b>Other aids for tailors</b>	43/00	<b>Other methods, machines, or appliances</b>
33/00	<b>Machines or appliances for folding the edges of collars, cuffs, or the like while manufacturing</b> (turning inside-out only D06G 3/00)	43/02	• Handling garment parts or blanks, e.g. feeding, piling, separating, reversing (handling thin material in general B65H) [3]
37/00	<b>Machines, appliances or methods for setting fastener-elements on garments</b> (for shoes A43D 100/00; by sewing D05B)	43/04	• Joining garment parts or blanks by gluing or welding (mending garments by adhesives or adhesive patches A41H 27/00; joining during the manufacture of particular garments, except by gluing or welding, <u>see</u> the relevant subclasses for those garments, e.g. A41D; adhesive processes in general C09J 5/00; joining by sewing D05B) [3]

## A42 HEADWEAR

### A42B HATS; HEAD COVERINGS (headbands, head-scarves A41D 20/00, A41D 23/00)

1/00	<b>Hats; Caps; Hoods</b>	3/06	• • Impact-absorbing shells, e.g. of crash helmets [5]
1/02	• Hats; Stiff caps	3/08	• • Chin straps or similar retention devices [5]
1/04	• Soft caps; Hoods	3/10	• • Linings (A42B 3/16 takes precedence) [5]
1/06	• • Caps with flaps; Motoring caps; Caps with means for protecting the eyes, ears, or nape of neck (ear and nape protecting devices in general A41D); Caps with airpads or removable linings	3/12	• • • Cushioning devices [5]
1/08	• • with protection against blows (head-guards for sporting purposes A63B 71/10)	3/14	• • • Suspension devices [5]
1/10	• • • Miners' caps	3/16	• • Ear protection devices [5]
1/12	• • Bathing caps	3/18	• • Face protection devices [5]
1/14	• Straw hats; Substitutes therefor	3/20	• • • Face guards, e.g. for ice hockey (A42B 3/22 takes precedence) [5]
1/16	• Ladies' millinery	3/22	• • • Visors [5]
1/18	• with coverings for protecting against dust, rain, or sunshine	3/24	• • • • with means for avoiding fogging or misting [5]
1/20	• Collapsible hats; Hats made of separable parts	3/26	• • • • with cleaning means, e.g. wipers [5]
1/22	• adjustable in size	3/28	• • Ventilating arrangements (A42B 3/24 takes precedence) [5]
1/24	• with means for attaching articles thereto, e.g. memorandum tablets, mirrors, lamps, insignia	3/30	• • Mounting radio sets or communication systems (methods or devices for transmitting, conducting or directing sound G10K 11/18; electric communication technique H04) [5]
3/00	<b>Helmets; Helmet covers</b> (hoods as protection against chemical agents or for use at high altitudes A62B 17/00; gas helmets A62B 18/04; swimming helmets A63B 33/00; defence protection helmets F41H 1/04)	3/32	• Collapsible helmets; Helmets made of separable parts (A42B 3/04 takes precedence) [5]
3/04	• Parts, details or accessories of helmets [5]	5/00	<b>Veils; Holders for veils</b>
		7/00	<b>Fastening means for head coverings; Elastic cords; Ladies' hat fasteners</b> (hat-pins A44B 9/06)

### A42C MANUFACTURING OR TRIMMING HATS OR OTHER HEAD COVERINGS

1/00	<b>Manufacturing hats</b>	1/04	• Blocking; Pressing; Steaming; Stretching
1/02	• Making hat-bats; Bat-forming machines; Conical bat machines; Bat-forming tools (felting in general D04H)	1/06	• Manipulation of hat-brims
		1/08	• Hat-finishing, e.g. polishing, ironing, smoothing, brushing, impregnating, stiffening, decorating

- 2/00 Manufacturing helmets by processes not otherwise provided for [5]**
- 3/00 Appliances for hat-making not provided for in group A42C 1/00, e.g. for making wire forms for hat-frames** (sewing-machines for straw hats D05B; sewing-machines for making hat-brims D05B); **Apparatus for changing the form or size of finished hats**
- 3/02 • Hat-block holders
- 3/04 • Stands for trimming ladies' hats
- 3/06 • Apparatus for measuring hats
- 5/00 Fittings or trimmings for hats, e.g. hat-bands** (artificial flowers, feathers A41G)
- 5/02 • Sweat-bands
- 5/04 • Ventilating arrangements for head coverings (for helmets A42B 3/28)
- 99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]**

## A43 FOOTWEAR

### A43B CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES OF FOOTWEAR; PARTS OF FOOTWEAR

#### Subclass index

CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES OF FOOTWEAR.....1/00-9/00, 11/00  
PARTS OF FOOTWEAR.....13/00-23/00

#### Characteristic features of footwear

- 1/00 Footwear characterised by the material** (layered products B32B)
- 1/02 • Footwear made of animal or plant fibres or fabrics made therefrom
- 1/04 • • Braided, knotted, knitted, or crocheted footwear
- 1/06 • Footwear made of wood, cork, card-board, paper or like fibrous material (soles A43B 13/00; making of wooden shoes B27M 3/20)
- 1/08 • Footwear made of metal (soles A43B 13/10)
- 1/10 • Footwear made of rubber
- 1/12 • • of rubber waste
- 1/14 • Footwear made of gutta-percha, celluloid, or plastics
- 3/00 Footwear characterised by the shape or the use**
- 3/02 • Top-boots; Leg-boots; Shoes with batwing tabs
- 3/04 • • with rubber or elastic insertions or gussets
- 3/06 • Shoes with flaps; Footwear with divided uppers
- 3/08 • • with rubber or elastic insertions or gussets
- 3/10 • Low shoes; Slippers (sandals A43B 3/12)
- 3/12 • Sandals; Strap guides thereon
- 3/14 • Moccasins, opanken, or like shoes
- 3/16 • Overshoes
- 3/18 • • Devices for holding overshoes in position
- 3/20 • • Heel-less overshoes
- 3/22 • • Protecting sheaths worn between shoe and overshoe
- 3/24 • Collapsible or convertible footwear
- 3/26 • Footwear adjustable as to length or size
- 3/28 • Footwear specially adapted for dolls
- 3/30 • Footwear specially adapted for babies or small children
- 5/00 Footwear for sporting purposes** (non-skid devices, e.g. ice spurs, studs for football shoes, A43C 15/00)
- 5/02 • Football boots
- 5/04 • Ski boots; Similar boots
- 5/06 • Running boots
- 5/08 • Bathing shoes
- 5/10 • Tennis shoes
- 5/12 • Dancing shoes
- 5/14 • Shoes for cyclists
- 5/16 • Skating boots
- 5/18 • Attachable overshoes for sporting purposes
- 7/00 Footwear with health or hygienic arrangements**
- 7/02 • Footwear with heating arrangements (footwarmers A61F 7/08; electric heating elements H05B)
- 7/04 • • Footwear with electric batteries, generators, or the like
- 7/06 • Ventilated footwear
- 7/08 • • Footwear with air-holes, with or without closures
- 7/10 • • • with closable air-slots near the waist
- 7/12 • Special watertight footwear (overshoes A43B 3/16)
- 7/14 • Footwear with foot-supporting parts
- 7/16 • • Footwear with elevated heel parts inside
- 7/18 • • Joint supports, e.g. instep supports
- 7/19 • • • engaging the ground directly
- 7/20 • • • Ankle-joint supports or holders
- 7/22 • • Footwear with fixed flat-foot insertions, metatarsal supports, ankle flaps, or the like (orthopaedic insertions A61F 5/14)
- 7/24 • • Insertions or cap supports preventing the foot canting to one side
- 7/26 • • Footwear with toe-spacers or toe-spreaders
- 7/28 • • Adapting the inner sole of the shoe to the sole of the foot
- 7/30 • • Protecting the ball-joint against pressure while standing
- 7/32 • Footwear with shock-absorbing means (resilient soles A43B 13/18)
- 7/34 • Footwear with protection against heat or cold
- 7/36 • with earthing or grounding means
- 7/38 • Elevating, i.e. height increasing, footwear (with elevated heel parts inside A43B 7/16; lengthening pieces for natural legs A61F 3/00; orthopaedic insertions for conventional shoes A61F 5/14) [2]

**9/00 Footwear characterised by the assembling of the individual parts**

- 9/02 • Footwear stitched or nailed through
- 9/04 • Welted footwear (welts A43B 15/00)
- 9/06 • • stitched or nailed through
- 9/08 • Turned footwear
- 9/10 • Footwear with out-turned uppers
- 9/12 • Stuck or cemented footwear
- 9/14 • Platform shoes
- 9/16 • Footwear with soles moulded on to uppers or welded on to uppers without adhesive
- 9/18 • • moulded [6]
- 9/20 • • welded

**11/00 Footwear with arrangements to facilitate putting-on or removing, e.g. with straps**

- 11/02 • with built-in shoe-horns

**Parts of footwear****13/00 Soles (socks A43B 17/00); Sole and heel units**

- 13/02 • characterised by the material
- 13/04 • • plastics, rubber or vulcanised fibre
- 13/08 • • wood
- 13/10 • • metal
- 13/12 • • Soles with several layers of different materials
- 13/14 • characterised by the constructive form
- 13/16 • • Pieced soles (with several layers of different material A43B 13/12)
- 13/18 • • Resilient soles
- 13/20 • • • Pneumatic soles
- 13/22 • • Soles made slip-preventing or wear-resisting, e.g. by impregnation or spreading a wear-resisting layer
- 13/24 • • • by use of insertions
- 13/26 • • • • projecting beyond the sole surface
- 13/28 • characterised by their attachment, also attachment of combined soles and heels (attachment of heels A43B 21/36; attachment of heel parts A43B 21/52)
- 13/30 • • by screws
- 13/32 • • by adhesives
- 13/34 • • Soles also attached to the inner side of the heels
- 13/36 • • Easily-exchangeable soles (of metal A43B 13/10; protecting-soles A43C 13/12)
- 13/37 • Sole and heel units
- 13/38 • Insoles
- 13/39 • • with upset sewing ribs
- 13/40 • • with cushions
- 13/41 • • combined with heel stiffener, toe stiffener, or shank stiffener
- 13/42 • Filling materials located between the insole and outer sole; Stiffening materials

**15/00 Welts for footwear****17/00 Socks (hosiery A41B 11/00; special medical insertions for shoes A61F 5/14)**

- 17/02 • Wedge-like or resilient socks or sock parts
- 17/03 • • pneumatic
- 17/04 • with metal insertions or coverings
- 17/06 • with metal springs
- 17/08 • Ventilated socks
- 17/10 • for sweaty feet; Waterproof socks
- 17/12 • Wooden socks
- 17/14 • made of sponge, rubber, or plastic materials

- 17/16 • with heel or toe caps
- 17/18 • Arrangements for attaching socks to the footwear

**19/00 Shoe-shaped inserts; Inserts covering the instep****21/00 Heels; Top-pieces**

- 21/02 • characterised by the material
- 21/03 • • wood
- 21/04 • • leather
- 21/06 • • rubber
- 21/08 • • • combined hard and soft rubber
- 21/10 • • • Expansible top-pieces
- 21/12 • • • Tread surfaces with suction cavities
- 21/14 • • • Heels or top-pieces made of rubber waste
- 21/16 • • • with non-rubber insertions in the tread surface
- 21/18 • • combined rubber and leather
- 21/20 • • plastics
- 21/22 • Heels or heel attachments specially designed to prevent splashing
- 21/24 • characterised by the constructive form
- 21/26 • • Resilient heels
- 21/28 • • • Pneumatic heels
- 21/30 • • Heels with metal springs
- 21/32 • • Resilient supports for the heel of the foot
- 21/34 • • Hollow metal heels with interchangeable top-pieces
- 21/36 • characterised by their attachment; Securing devices for the attaching means (combined with soles A43B 13/28)
- 21/37 • • by hook-shaped or bent attaching means
- 21/38 • • by screws only
- 21/39 • • by rib and groove
- 21/40 • • • by dovetail
- 21/42 • • Heels with replaceable or adjustable parts
- 21/433 • • • rotatably mounted
- 21/437 • • • with axially-adjustable rod-like top-pieces
- 21/44 • • by claw-like means
- 21/45 • • • with special tensioning means
- 21/46 • • by bolts
- 21/47 • • by resilient means
- 21/48 • • • by press-buttons
- 21/50 • • by bayonet catches or the like
- 21/51 • • with keyhole-shaped opening and pin
- 21/52 • • Interchangeable heel parts without special attachments
- 21/54 • • by adhesion or the like

**23/00 Uppers; Boot legs; Stiffeners; Other single parts of footwear**

- 23/02 • Uppers; Boot legs
- 23/04 • • Uppers made of one piece; Uppers with inserted gussets
- 23/06 • • Waterproof legs
- 23/07 • Linings therefor
- 23/08 • Heel stiffeners; Toe stiffeners (footwear with sock-absorbing means A43B 7/32)
- 23/10 • • made of metal
- 23/14 • • made of leather
- 23/16 • • made of impregnated fabrics, plastics or the like
- 23/17 • • • made of plastics
- 23/20 • Nails, pegs, pins, clamps, or tacks, for footwear
- 23/22 • Supports for the shank or arch of the uppers (for health or hygienic purposes A43B 7/14)
- 23/24 • Ornamental buckles; Other ornaments for shoes without fastening function



- 23/25 • • Arrangement of ribbons on footwear  
 23/26 • Tongues for shoes

- 23/28 • Devices to put in shoes in order to prevent slipping at the heel or to prevent abrading the stockings  
 23/30 • Heel-protectors for car-drivers

## A43C FASTENINGS OR ATTACHMENTS FOR FOOTWEAR; LACES IN GENERAL

### Subclass index

LACING.....	1/00-9/00
OTHER FASTENINGS FOR SHOES.....	11/00
ACCESSORIES FOR SHOES.....	13/00, 15/00, 17/00
OTHER ATTACHMENTS FOR FOOTWEAR.....	19/00

<b>1/00 Shoe lacing fastenings</b> (garment fastening devices A41F)	11/22 • Fastening devices with elastic tightening parts between pairs of eyelets, e.g. clamps, springs, bands
1/02 • with elastic laces	11/24 • Ornamental buckles or other ornaments for shoes, with fastening function (buckles in general A44B 11/00)
1/04 • with rings or loops	
1/06 • tightened by draw-strings	
<b>3/00 Hooks for laces</b> (making from sheet metal B21D 53/46); <b>Guards for hooks</b>	<b>13/00 Wear-resisting attachments</b>
3/02 • Lacing-hooks with guide-rollers	13/02 • Metal plates for soles or heels
3/04 • Spring safety-hooks	13/04 • Cleats; Simple studs; Screws; Hob-nails
<b>5/00 Eyelets</b> (machines for setting eyelets A43D 100/00)	13/06 • Attachments for edges of soles, especially for ski boots
<b>7/00 Holding-devices for laces</b>	13/08 • • with rubber, plastics, leather, felt, or like parts
7/02 • Flaps; Pockets	13/10 • • made from wire
7/04 • Hinged devices	13/12 • Releasable protecting-soles of metal (soles of metal A43B 13/10)
7/06 • Elastic bands	13/14 • Special attachments for toe-caps; Protecting caps for toe-caps
7/08 • Clamps drawn tight by laces	
<b>9/00 Laces; Laces in general for garments made of textiles, leather, or plastics</b>	<b>15/00 Non-skid devices or attachments</b> (apparatus for climbing poles, trees, or the like A63B 27/00)
9/02 • provided with tags, buttons, or decorative tufts	15/02 • attached to the sole
9/04 • Forming ends of laces of plastics, celluloid, rubber, or the like	15/04 • attached to the heel
9/06 • Releasable ends of laces	15/06 • Ice-gripping devices or attachments, e.g. ice-spurs, ice-cleats, ice-creepers, crampons; Climbing devices or attachments (A43C 15/09 takes precedence; ice-spurs for horseshoes A01L 7/08) [3]
9/08 • made of paper or wire	15/08 • • Reversible ice-spikes
<b>11/00 Other fastenings specially adapted for shoes</b> (dress fastenings in general A44B)	15/09 • Equipment associated with footwear for walking on inclines to compensate for angle of inclination [3]
11/02 • Button fastenings	15/10 • Non-ski attachments made of wire, chain, or other meshed material
11/04 • • Studs; Fastening same	15/12 • Small releasable non-slip straps
11/06 • Snap-button fastenings	15/14 • with outwardly-movable spikes
11/08 • Hook fastenings; Rotary hooks	15/16 • Studs for football or like boots
11/10 • • Hooks with several tongues	15/18 • Serrated grips
11/12 • Slide or glide fastenings	<b>17/00 Spurs</b>
11/14 • Clamp fastenings; Clamp-buckle fastenings; Fastenings with toggle levers	17/02 • Spurs; Means for fastening spurs
11/16 • Fastenings secured by wire, bolts, or the like	17/04 • Releasable spur fastenings
11/18 • Fastenings of the lazy-tongs type	17/06 • Collapsible spurs
11/20 • Fastenings with tightening devices mounted on the tongue	<b>19/00 Attachments for footwear, not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]</b>
<b>A43D MACHINES, TOOLS, EQUIPMENT OR METHODS FOR MANUFACTURING OR REPAIRING FOOTWEAR</b> (sewing D05B) [6]	

**Note(s)**

In this subclass, a method of manufacturing footwear which is dependent on a distinct machine or tool, is classified in the group covering the machine or tool for the manufacture.

**Subclass index**

MEASUREMENT OF FOOT OR LAST.....	1/00
LASTS.....	3/00
WORKING-UP UPPERS OR STIFFENERS.....	8/00-8/34, 8/38-8/54
PULLING-OVER OR LASTING.....	9/00-23/00
MAKING OR PREPARING PARTS OF SHOES BEFORE ASSEMBLING	
Soles.....	8/36, 8/50, 8/52, 29/00, 35/00, 37/00, 43/00
Heels, heel lifts.....	33/00, 83/00
Shank stiffeners.....	31/00
ASSEMBLING PARTS OF SHOES	
Securing by metallic elements.....	69/00, 71/00, 75/00
Securing by gluing.....	25/00
Securing by other techniques, e.g. welding.....	86/00
Securing soles.....	25/00, 44/00, 67/00, 86/00
Securing heels.....	67/00, 79/00, 81/00, 86/00
Securing welts.....	44/00
OTHER OPERATIONS SUBSEQUENT TO LASTING	
On soles or heels.....	27/00
On welts.....	47/00, 57/00
On in seams.....	51/00, 53/00, 55/00
Other work.....	49/00, 59/00, 85/00
PERFORMING FINISHING OPERATIONS.....	63/00, 87/00-95/00
MAKING, SETTING, OR REMOVING ACCESSORIES.....	39/00, 97/00, 98/00, 100/00
OTHER EQUIPMENT OR MECHANISMS FOR SHOEMAKING OR REPAIRING.....	5/00, 61/00, 111/00-119/00
SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....	999/00

**Measuring devices; Lasts; Tools****1/00 Foot or last measuring devices; Measuring devices for shoe parts**

- 1/02 • Foot-measuring devices (measuring the shape, pattern or size of the body for diagnostic purposes A61B 5/103, e.g. measuring physical dimensions A61B 5/107)

- 1/04 • Last-measuring devices

- 1/06 • Measuring devices for the inside measure of shoes, for the height of heels, or for the arrangement of heels

- 1/08 • Measuring devices for shoe parts

**3/00 Lasts**

- 3/02 • Lasts for making or repairing shoes (making of wooden lasts B27M 3/20)
- 3/04 • Pneumatic lasts; Elastic lasts
- 3/06 • Wedge locks for lasts
- 3/08 • Devices for stretching special parts of shoes
- 3/10 • Devices for removing lasts
- 3/12 • Devices for inserting or reinserting lasts
- 3/14 • Stretching or spreading lasts; Boot-trees; Fillers; Devices for maintaining the shape of the shoe (drying of footwear A47L 23/20)

**5/00 Hand appliances or hand tools for making or repairing shoes, other than those covered by groups A43D 15/00, A43D 19/00, A43D 95/00, A43D 100/00, A43D 117/00**

- 5/02 • Stands for making footwear (stands for cleaning shoes A47L 23/16)
- 5/04 • Knives (knives in general B26B)
- 5/06 • Tools for cutting-off the ends of nails or pegs in shoes

- 5/08 • Awls (making B21G)
- 5/10 • Shoe-peg rasps (wood rasps B27G 17/06)
- 5/12 • Hand nailing apparatus for shoemaking (A43D 19/02 takes precedence; nailing apparatus in general B25C, B27F)
- 5/14 • • Hand pincers for stapling

**8/00 Machines for cutting, ornamenting, marking or otherwise working up shoe part blanks (pulling-over or lasting A43D 9/00-A43D 23/00; making or fastening soles, heels or welts A43D 25/00-A43D 83/00) [3]**

- 8/02 • Cutting-out (cutting in general B26D, B26F; of leather articles in general C14B 5/00) [3]
- 8/04 • • Stamping-out (A43D 8/10 takes precedence) [3]
- 8/06 • • • Dies therefor [3]
- 8/08 • • • Combined stamping-out and bonding, e.g. high frequency electric current being applied between cutting edge and work support [3]
- 8/10 • • Cutting-out using pattern grading (for trimming A43D 8/38; pattern grading in making clothes A41H 3/00; pattern copying in general B23Q 33/00, B23Q 35/00) [3]
- 8/12 • • • Patterns or templates therefor [3]
- 8/14 • • • Applying bindings to pattern edges [3]
- 8/16 • Ornamentation (by creasing A43D 8/44; of leather in general C14B 1/56) [3]
- 8/18 • • by punching or perforating (punching for eyelet-setting A43D 100/02) [3]
- 8/20 • • • Dies therefor [3]
- 8/22 • • by embossing or printing (printing in general, stamping B41) [3]

- 8/24 • • • Embossing using heat, e.g. high frequency electric current [3]
- 8/26 • Marking for future work (A43D 8/16 takes precedence; printing, stamping B41) [3]
- 8/28 • • Patterns for drawing cut-outs (in making clothes A41H 3/00) [3]
- 8/30 • • Charting sheet material for subsequent cutting [3]
- 8/32 • Working on edges or margins (of leather in general C14B 1/02, C14B 11/00) [3]
- 8/34 • • by skiving (A43D 8/48 takes precedence) [3]
- 8/36 • • by trimming the margins of sole blanks (trimming as an intermediate operation in shoemaking A43D 27/00, as a finishing operation in shoemaking A43D 87/00) [3]
- 8/38 • • • by cutting-out, e.g. using templates [3]
- 8/40 • • by folding, turning in or over, hammering [3]
- 8/42 • • by singeing, contracting, dyeing [3]
- 8/44 • Creasing presses (folding on margins A43D 8/40) [3]
- 8/46 • Splitting (of leather in general C14B 1/02) [3]
- 8/48 • • combined with skiving [3]
- 8/50 • • Combined splitting and trimming of the heel-seat portions of sole blanks (of soles fixed to shoe bottoms A43D 27/04) [3]
- 8/52 • Flexing (of leather in general C14B) [3]
- 8/54 • • by milling [3]
- 8/56 • • of sole blanks by slitting [3]

#### **Pulling-over or lasting**

- 9/00 **Devices for binding the uppers upon the lasts** (for the toe ends A43D 15/00)
- 11/00 **Machines for preliminary treatment or assembling of upper-parts, counters, or insoles on their lasts preparatory to the pulling-over or lasting operations; Applying or removing protective coverings**
- 11/01 • Machines for applying or securing reinforcements or ornamental straps to uppers (to soles or insoles A43D 43/06) [3]
- 11/02 • • to the margins thereof [3]
- 11/03 • • Coating with thermoplastic materials to stiffen the toe or heel portion [3]
- 11/04 • Machines for seam-pressing or flattening shoe parts, quarters, or the like (on lasted shoes A43D 55/00)
- 11/06 • Machines for temporary buttoning of shoe parts
- 11/08 • Machines for temporary lacing of shoe parts or for cutting-away the lacing strips after lasting
- 11/10 • Devices for holding the lacing portions in position during lasting
- 11/12 • Machines for forming the toe part or heel part of shoes, with or without use of heat
- 11/14 • Devices for treating shoe parts, e.g. stiffeners, with steam or liquid (for soled shoes A43D 95/12)
- 13/00 **Machines for pulling-over the uppers when loosely laid upon the last and tacking the toe end**
- 13/02 • Devices for locating caps or stiffeners on pulling-over machines
- 15/00 **Pulling-over or lasting machines for binding the toe end with cord, string, or wire; Machines for lasting with clamps; Lasting machines with sewing devices, also for platform shoes** (special sewing machines for leather or shoes D05B)
- 17/00 **Pulling-over or lasting machines with oscillating shoe supports**

- 19/00 **Hand lasting; Lasting pincers**
- 19/02 • Tacking or nailing devices for use with lasting pincers
- 21/00 **Lasting machines**
- 21/02 • with one single lasting gripper
- 21/04 • for lasting the opposite sides of the shoe one after another
- 21/06 • for wooden soles (A43D 21/16, A43D 21/18 take precedence)
- 21/08 • with last supports and toe- or heel-embracing wipers movable both horizontally and vertically (A43D 21/16 takes precedence)
- 21/10 • Bed-lasting machines
- 21/12 • with lasting clamps, shoe-shaped clamps, wipers, stretching straps, or the like for forming the toe or heel parts on the last
- 21/14 • for toe or heel parts, with nailing devices
- 21/16 • with lasting pincers or toe- or heel-embracing wipers
- 21/18 • with lasting pincers and straight-acting wipers, also for forming the shank portions of shoes
- 23/00 **Single parts for pulling-over or lasting machines** (nailing devices A43D 75/00)
- 23/02 • Wipers; Sole-pressers; Last-supports; Pincers
- 23/04 • Last-carriers; Shoe-guides
- 23/06 • Devices for cutting-off superfluous material on the uppers or linings

#### **Making or fastening soles, heels, or welts, or preparing same for fastening to the shoe; Carrying out other operations subsequent to lasting; Turning**

- 25/00 **Devices for gluing shoe parts**
- 25/047 • Devices for lasting with adhesives or for gluing together insoles and uppers (A43D 25/18, A43D 25/20 take precedence) [3]
- 25/053 • • with rotating gripping means [3]
- 25/06 • Devices for gluing soles on shoe bottoms (A43D 25/18, A43D 25/20 take precedence) [3]
- 25/07 • • using flexible diaphragm pressing devices [3]
- 25/08 • • Welt hold-down devices
- 25/10 • • Press-pads or other supports of shoe-gluing presses
- 25/12 • Devices for gluing heel-breasts to heels or for gluing coverings on heels (A43D 25/18, A43D 25/20 take precedence) [3]
- 25/14 • Devices for filling the shoe bottom
- 25/16 • Devices for making glued platform shoes
- 25/18 • Devices for applying adhesives to shoe parts (A43D 25/20 takes precedence; applying liquids or other fluent materials to surfaces in general B05) [3]
- 25/20 • Arrangements for activating or for accelerating setting of adhesives, e.g. by using heat [3]
- 27/00 **Machines for trimming as an intermediate operation** (working on edges or margins, e.g. by trimming, of shoe part blanks A43D 8/32; trimming as a finishing operation in shoemaking A43D 87/00)
- 27/02 • Soles or heels fixed on shoe bottoms
- 27/04 • • Heel-end portions of soles [3]
- 27/06 • • Heel breast flaps [3]
- 29/00 **Machines for making soles from strips of material**
- 31/00 **Machines for making or inserting shank stiffeners**
- 31/02 • Machines for making shank stiffeners

## A43D

31/04	• Machines for inserting shank stiffeners	75/00	<b>Nailing devices on pulling-over or lasting machines</b>
33/00	<b>Machines for assembling lifts for heels</b> (cutting-out heel lifts A43D 8/02)	79/00	<b>Combined heel-pressing and nailing machines</b>
33/02	• Gauges for heel lifts; Magazines for piling up heel lifts	81/00	<b>Machines for attaching top-lifts</b>
33/04	• Nailing machines for building the heels from lifts	83/00	<b>Heel-presses without nailing apparatus; Machines for pressing single lifts or punching holes for nailing</b>
33/06	• Machines for sorting heel lifts	85/00	<b>Machines or apparatus for turning, e.g. for making turn-shoes</b>
35/00	<b>Presses for shaping pre-existing loose soles, shoe bottoms, or soles fixed to shoe bottoms</b> (gluing soles on shoe bottoms A43D 25/06)	86/00	<b>Machines for assembling soles or heels onto uppers, not provided for in groups A43D 25/00-A43D 83/00, e.g. by welding [6]</b>
37/00	<b>Machines for roughening soles or other shoe parts preparatory to gluing</b>	<b><u>Performing finishing operations upon uppers, soles, or heels on soled shoes; Making shoe appurtenances</u></b>	
39/00	<b>Machines for making foot-supporting pads or instep-raisers for flat feet</b>	87/00	<b>Edge or heel cutters; Machines for trimming the heel breast</b> (trimming machines for wooden heels B27M; copying machines B44B)
43/00	<b>Machines for making stitch lips, or other preparatory treatment of soles or insoles before fixing same</b> (flexing of soles or insoles A43D 8/52)	89/00	<b>Sole-levelling machines with rolls</b>
43/02	• for making stitch lips by cutting	91/00	<b>Stitch-separating or seam-indenting machines</b>
43/06	• for applying reinforcing materials to insoles; Attachment of ornamental tapes or ribs, e.g. sewing ribs, on soles, or the like	93/00	<b>Edge-indenting machines</b>
44/00	<b>Machines for attaching welts or randes</b>	95/00	<b>Shoe-finishing machines</b>
47/00	<b>Machines for trimming or butting welts fixed on uppers</b>	95/02	• Machines for treating or smoothing shoe uppers to remove wrinkles, folds, or the like
49/00	<b>Machines for pounding</b>	95/04	• Machines for laying channel-flaps
51/00	<b>Machines for lip-setting</b>	95/06	• Machines for colouring or chemical treatment; Ornamenting the sole bottoms (burnishing A43D 95/20)
53/00	<b>Machines for trimming-off surplus material along the inseam</b>	95/08	• Machines or tools for scouring, abrading, or finishing, with or without dust-separating (suction cleaners for removing dust A47L 5/00; domestic cleaning of footwear A47L 23/00)
55/00	<b>Machines for flattening, pressing, or rubbing the in seams of lasted shoes</b>	95/10	• Drying or heating devices for shoes
57/00	<b>Machines for attaching the welt ends</b>	95/12	• Devices for conditioning, tempering, or moistening (preparatory to pulling-over or lasting A43D 11/14)
59/00	<b>Machines for rasping the lasting-margins of shoes which are sewn through</b>	95/14	• incorporating marking, printing, or embossing apparatus (ornamentation of shoe part blanks A43D 8/16; printing <u>per se</u> , stamping <u>per se</u> B41)
61/00	<b>Machines for nail-pulling, nail-cutting, or nail-detecting</b>	95/16	• Burnishing tools for shoemaking (in general B24D)
63/00	<b>Machines for carrying out other finishing operations</b>	95/18	• • Devices for heating the burnishing tools for shoemaking
67/00	<b>Machines for fastening soles or heels by means of screws or screwed wire</b>	95/20	• Machines for burnishing soles or heels
69/00	<b>Shoe-nailing machines</b> (nailing machines in general B27F)	95/22	• Machines for burnishing the edges of soles, with or without devices for edge-indenting
69/02	• using ready-made nails	95/24	• Machines for buffing soles
69/04	• with apparatus for separating the nails from a wire or from a strip of metal or other material	95/26	• Devices for applying wax
69/06	• using ready-made staples	95/28	• Machines for attaching protectors to soles or heels
69/08	• with apparatus for making staples	97/00	<b>Machines for making pulling-on pieces</b>
69/10	• using ready-made wooden pegs	98/00	<b>Machines for making laces</b> (of leather C14B; braidings in general D04C); <b>Applying fibre or celluloid to ends of laces</b> (making tags from metal sheet B21D; from wire B21F) [2006.01]
69/12	• with apparatus for separating the pegs from a strip of wood	100/00	<b>Setting or removing eyelets, buttons, lacing-hooks, or elastic gussets in shoes</b>
69/14	• for nailing or stapling the lasted margin on to shoes with wooden soles	100/02	• Punching and eyelet-setting machines or tools (for garments in general A41H 37/02)
71/00	<b>Elements of nailing machines; Nail-feeding devices</b>	100/04	• • inserting invisible eyelets
71/02	• Driving mechanisms for moving the horn; Nail-cutting apparatus connected with the horn	100/06	• • inserting two eyelets simultaneously

- 100/08 • Setting buttons on footwear (for garments A41H 37/00)
- 100/10 • Machines or tools for setting lacing-hooks in shoes
- 100/12 • Machines for inserting elastic gussets in shoes
- 100/14 • Devices for removing buttons, lacing-hooks, or the like from shoes

#### **Other mechanisms for shoemaking or repairing**

- 111/00 Shoe machines with conveyers for jacked shoes
- 113/00 Machines for making shoes with out-turned flanges of the uppers or for making moccasins

- 115/00 Machines for skiving or removing heel lifts, heels, or soles, or for removing stitches, preparatory to repair
- 117/00 Racks for receiving or transporting shoes or shoe parts; Other conveying means
- 119/00 Driving or controlling mechanisms of shoe machines; Frames for shoe machines

- 999/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]

## **A44 HABERDASHERY; JEWELLERY**

- A44B **BUTTONS, PINS, BUCKLES, SLIDE FASTENERS, OR THE LIKE** (fastenings specially adapted for footwear A43C)

#### **Note(s)**

This subclass covers buckles or slide fasteners whether used as haberdashery or otherwise.

#### **Subclass index**

BUTTONS; CARDS THEREFOR.....1/00-5/00, 7/00  
 SLIDE FASTENERS.....19/00  
 OTHER CLAMPING OR HOLDING DEVICES.....6/00-18/00, 99/00

#### **1/00 Buttons**

- 1/02 • characterised by their material
- 1/04 • Ornamental buttons
- 1/06 • Assembling of buttons
- 1/08 • Constructional characteristics
- 1/10 • • washable
- 1/12 • • covered by fabric
- 1/14 • • with replaceable coverings
- 1/16 • • with protective coverings
- 1/18 • adapted for special ways of fastening
- 1/20 • • attached by thread visible to the front
- 1/22 • • attached by thread not visible to the front
- 1/24 • • • Eye-buttons
- 1/26 • • with resilient shank
- 1/28 • • with shank and counterpiece
- 1/30 • • • Screw-buttons
- 1/32 • • • Shank inserted into counterpiece and locked by sliding or rotating
- 1/34 • • • with snap-action counterpiece
- 1/36 • • • with counterpiece in the form of cotter, split-pin, or the like
- 1/38 • • Clamping by spring action
- 1/40 • • with helical wire-shank screwed into material
- 1/42 • • with deformable prongs
- 1/44 • • with deformable counterpiece

#### **3/00 Collar-studs**

- 3/02 • completely rigid
- 3/04 • with head tiltable as a whole
- 3/06 • with head formed as two tiltable flaps
- 3/08 • with head and base separable

#### **5/00 Sleeve-links**

- 5/02 • with separable parts

- 6/00 **Retainers or tethers for neckties, cravats, neckerchiefs, or the like, e.g. tie-clips, spring clips with attached tie-tethers, woggles, pins with associated sheathing members tetherable to clothing** (tie-pins A44B 9/08; decorative or ornamental aspects A44C) [3]

#### **7/00 Cards for buttons, collar-studs, or sleeve-links**

- 9/00 **Hat, scarf, or safety pins or the like** (decorative or ornamental aspect A44C; hair pins A45D 8/02)

- 9/02 • Simple pins
- 9/04 • • Ordinary pins
- 9/06 • • Hat-pins
- 9/08 • • Tie-pins (pins with associated sheathing members tetherable to clothing A44B 6/00)
- 9/10 • • Safety devices
- 9/12 • Safety-pins
- 9/14 • • Ordinary safety-pins
- 9/16 • • Brooches; Breast-pins
- 9/18 • • Hinges; Locking devices
- 9/20 • Attaching heads of glass or the like to pin shafts

#### **11/00 Buckles; Similar fasteners for interconnecting straps or the like, e.g. for safety belts**

- 11/02 • frictionally engaging surface of straps
- 11/04 • • without movable parts
- 11/06 • • with clamping devices
- 11/08 • • • roller displaceable in wedge-shaped slot
- 11/10 • • • sliding wedge

## A44B

- 11/12 • • • turnable clamp
- 11/14 • • • • with snap-action
- 11/16 • • Strap held by spring action
- 11/18 • • Strap held by threading through linked rings
- 11/20 • engaging holes or the like in strap
- 11/22 • • Buckle with fixed prong
- 11/24 • • Buckle with movable prong
- 11/25 • with two or more separable parts
- 11/26 • • with push-button fastenings
- 11/28 • • with hooks engaging end-pieces on the strap
- 13/00 Hook or eye fasteners**
- 13/02 • with spring closure of hook
- 15/00 Key-rings**
- 17/00 Press-button or snap fasteners**
- 18/00 Fasteners of the touch-and-close type; Making such fasteners [3]**
- 19/00 Slide fasteners**
- 19/02 • with a series of separate interlocking members secured to each stringer tape
- 19/04 • • Stringers arranged edge-to-edge when fastened
- 19/06 • • • with substantially rectangular members having interlocking projections and pieces
- 19/08 • • Stringers arranged side-by-side when fastened
- 19/10 • with a one-piece interlocking member on each stringer tape
- 19/12 • • Interlocking member in the shape of a continuous helix
- 19/14 • • Interlocking member formed by a profiled or castellated edge
- 19/16 • • Interlocking member having uniform section throughout the length of the stringer [3]
- 19/18 • with a third member or members, other than the slider, connected to the edges of adjacent stringers when closed, e.g. third member moved into position by a slider [3]
- 19/20 • • the third member being embraced by the stringers [3]
- 19/22 • • the third member embracing the stringers [3]
- 19/24 • Details
- 19/26 • • Sliders
- 19/28 • • • constructed to be removable from at least one stringer [3]
- 19/30 • • • with means for locking in position
- 19/32 • • Means for making slide fasteners gas- or watertight
- 19/34 • • Stringer tapes (A44B 19/40 takes precedence); Flaps secured to stringers for covering the interlocking members (A44B 19/32 takes precedence) [3]
- 19/36 • • Means for permanently uniting the stringers at the end; Means for stopping movement of slider at the end
- 19/38 • • Means at the end of stringer by which the slider can be freed from one stringer, e.g. stringers can be completely separated from each other
- 19/40 • • Connection of separate, or one-piece, interlocking members to stringer tapes; Reinforcing such connections, e.g. by stitching
- 19/42 • Making by processes not fully provided for in one other class, e.g. B21D 53/50, B21F 45/18, B22D 17/16, B29D 5/00
- 19/44 • • Securing metal interlocking members to ready-made stringer tapes (making metal slide fastener parts combined with attaching B21D 53/52) [3]
- 19/46 • • • Securing separate interlocking members [3]
- 19/48 • • • • Arranging interlocking members before securing [3]
- 19/50 • • • Securing one-piece interlocking members [3]
- 19/52 • • Securing the interlocking members to stringer tapes while making the latter [3]
- 19/54 • • • while weaving the stringer tapes [3]
- 19/56 • • • while knitting the stringer tapes [3]
- 19/58 • • Removing interlocking members to produce gaps [3]
- 19/60 • • Applying end stops upon stringer tapes [3]
- 19/62 • • Assembling sliders in position on stringer tapes [3]
- 19/64 • • • Slider holders for assemblage of slide fasteners [3]
- 99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2010.01]**

## A44C JEWELLERY; BRACELETS; OTHER PERSONAL ADORNMENTS; COINS (jewel boxes A45C 11/16)

### Subclass index

#### ARTICLES ACCORDING TO THE PART OF THE BODY ON WHICH THEY ARE WORN

- On the ears..... 7/00
- On the arms or fingers..... 5/00, 9/00
- On other parts of the body..... 1/00, 3/00, 11/00, 23/00, 25/00
- ARTICLES ACCORDING TO OTHER ASPECTS..... 13/00, 15/00, 17/00, 21/00, 25/00
- MAKING JEWELLERY OR OTHER PERSONAL ADORNMENTS..... 27/00
- ANTI-PILFERING DEVICES FOR WATCHES OR JEWELLERY..... 19/00

- 
- 1/00 Brooches or clips in their decorative or ornamental aspect**
  - 3/00 Medals; Badges** (frames or housings for storing same A47G 1/12)
  - 5/00 Bracelets; Wrist-watch straps; Fastenings for bracelets or wrist-watch straps**
  - 5/02 • Link constructions
  - 5/04 • • extensible
  - 5/06 • • • having lazy-tongs
  - 5/08 • • • having separate links
  - 5/10 • • not extensible
  - 5/12 • C-spring-type bracelets or wrist-watch holders
  - 5/14 • characterised by the way of fastening to a wrist-watch or the like

- 5/16 • • by folding the strap
- 5/18 • Fasteners for straps (buckles A44B 11/00)
- 5/20 • • for open straps
- 5/22 • • for closed straps
- 5/24 • • • with folding devices
- 7/00 Ear-rings; Devices for piercing the ear-lobes**
- 9/00 Finger-rings**
  - 9/02 • adjustable
- 11/00 Watch chains; Ornamental chains**
  - 11/02 • Fastening devices
- 13/00 Connectible jewellery**
- 15/00 Other forms of jewellery**
- 17/00 Gems or the like**

- 17/02 • Settings for holding gems
- 17/04 • Setting gems in jewellery; Setting-tools
- 19/00 Devices for preventing pilfering of watches or jewellery**
- 21/00 Coins** (coins specially adapted to operate coin-free mechanisms G07F 1/06); **Emergency money; Beer or gambling coins or tokens, or the like**
- 23/00 Rosaries**
- 25/00 Fancy ware for personal wear, not provided for in groups A44C 1/00-A44C 19/00 or A44C 23/00, e.g. crosses, crucifixes, charms**
- 27/00 Making jewellery or other personal adornments** (single step processes, see the relevant places, e.g. making rings from wire B21F 37/00) [2]

## A45 HAND OR TRAVELLING ARTICLES

**A45B WALKING STICKS** (walking aids, e.g. sticks, for blind persons A61H 3/06; walking sticks formed as supports or tripod stands F16M 13/08); **UMBRELLAS; LADIES' OR LIKE FANS** (cane or umbrella stands or holders A47G 25/12)

### Note(s)

In this subclass, the following terms are used with the meaning indicated:

- "umbrellas" also covers sunshades similar in construction to umbrellas;
- "sticks" covers walking sticks and sticks for umbrellas.

### Subclass index

WALKING STICKS OR STICKS FOR UMBRELLAS.....	1/00, 3/00, 7/00, 9/00
UMBRELLAS	
General structure.....	11/00-19/00, 23/00
Details.....	25/00
CONVERTIBLE WALKING STICKS OR UMBRELLAS.....	5/00, 21/00
LADIES' OR LIKE FANS.....	27/00

### Walking sticks; Sticks for umbrellas

- 1/00 Sticks with supporting, hanging or carrying means**
  - 1/02 • Walking sticks with rollers for carrying parcels or the like
  - 1/04 • Walking sticks with means for hanging-up or with locks (carriers for walking sticks or umbrellas A45F 5/00)
- 3/00 Sticks combined with other objects**
  - 3/02 • with illuminating devices
  - 3/04 • • electrical
  - 3/06 • with coat-hangers
  - 3/08 • with measuring or weighing appliances
  - 3/10 • with purses
  - 3/12 • with telescopes
  - 3/14 • with weapons
  - 3/16 • with smoking appliances
- 5/00 Walking sticks or umbrellas convertible into seats; Hunting sticks**

### **7/00 Other sticks, e.g. of cranked shape**

- 9/00 Details**
  - 9/02 • Handles or heads
  - 9/04 • Ferrules or tips
  - 9/06 • Sticks with name-plates or the like

### Umbrellas

- 11/00 Umbrellas characterised by their shape or attachment**
  - 11/02 • attached to the body of the user
  - 11/04 • mounted on the head of the user
- 13/00 Umbrellas made of paper**
- 15/00 Umbrellas with detachable covers**
- 17/00 Tilttable umbrellas**
- 19/00 Special folding or telescoping of umbrellas**
  - 19/02 • Inflatable umbrellas; Umbrellas without ribs

## A45B

19/04	• with telescopic sticks	25/14	• Devices for opening and for closing umbrellas
19/06	• with telescopic ribs	25/16	• Automatic openers, e.g. frames with spring mechanisms
19/08	• with collapsible sticks	25/18	• Covers (detachable A45B 15/00); Means for fastening same
19/10	• with collapsible ribs	25/20	• • Windows in covers
19/12	• • in the form of lazy-tongs	25/22	• Devices for increasing the resistance of umbrellas to wind
<b>21/00</b>	<b>Umbrellas convertible into walking sticks</b>	25/24	• Protective coverings for umbrellas when closed
<b>23/00</b>	<b>Other umbrellas</b>	25/26	• • Ventilated coverings
<b>25/00</b>	<b>Details of umbrellas</b> (sticks for umbrellas A45B 1/00- A45B 9/00; illuminating devices for umbrellas A45B 3/02)	25/28	• Drip receptacles for umbrellas; Attaching devices therefor
25/02	• Umbrella frames	25/30	• Name-plates; Badges; Labelling or marking devices; Means for attaching same (attached to the umbrella stick A45B 9/06)
25/04	• • Devices for making or repairing		
25/06	• Umbrella runners		
25/08	• • Devices for fastening or locking		
25/10	• Umbrella crowns		
25/12	• Devices for holding umbrellas closed, e.g. magnetic devices	<b>27/00</b>	<b>Ladies' or like fans</b>
		27/02	• with mechanical hand-drive

**A45C PURSES; LUGGAGE; HAND CARRIED BAGS** (sacks or packs carried on the body A45F; containers in general B65D, e.g. portable flexible containers, B65D 27/00-B65D 37/00; making leather, canvas, or like articles B68F)

### Note(s) [2006.01]

In this subclass, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

- "luggage" means containers for personal belongings for a journey, e.g. travelling bags, suitcases, trunks.

### Subclass index

PURSES.....	1/00, 15/00
LUGGAGE OR HAND CARRIED BAGS.....	3/00, 5/00, 7/00, 9/00, 15/00
SPECIAL APPLICATIONS.....	11/00
DETAILS OR ACCESSORIES.....	13/00

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Purses; Money-bags; Wallets</b> (for holding keys A45C 11/32)	5/02	• Materials therefor (making luggage of leather, canvas, or the like B68F) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/02	• Purses	5/03	• Suitcases <b>[2006.01]</b>
1/04	• • Purses to be worn at the belt or bracelet; Money-belts	5/04	• Trunks; Travelling baskets
1/06	• Wallets; Notecases	5/06	• with outside compartments <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/08	• Combinations of purses and wallets	5/08	• of round or oval shape <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/10	• Money-bags for conductors or like people; Money-bags with rigid coin-holders (sorting, testing, changing, delivering, or otherwise handling coins G07D)	5/14	• with built-in rolling means <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/12	• Savings boxes (safes E05G 1/00)	<b>7/00</b>	<b>Collapsible or extensible luggage, bags or the like</b>
<b>3/00</b>	<b>Flexible luggage; Hand bags</b> (collapsible or extensible luggage, bags or the like A45C 7/00; handbag mirrors A45D 42/04)	7/02	• with lazy-tongs framework
3/02	• Briefcases or the like	<b>9/00</b>	<b>Luggage or bags convertible into objects for other use</b> (trunk-wardrobes A47B 61/06; trunks convertible into tables A47B 85/00; trunk-beds A47C 17/82)
3/04	• Shopping bags; Shopping nets	<b>11/00</b>	<b>Receptacles for purposes not provided for in groups A45C 1/00-A45C 9/00</b> (specially adapted for toilet or cosmetic equipment A45D; travelling sewing kits A45F 3/48)
3/06	• Ladies' handbags	11/02	• Hat boxes
3/08	• • Handbags provided with removable or washable covers	11/04	• Spectacle cases; Pince-nez cases
3/10	• Beach-bags; Watertight beach-bags	11/06	• • Making of spectacle or pince-nez cases (of a single specified material, <u>see</u> the relevant class, e.g. B31)
3/12	• Bags for shoes	11/08	• Cases for telescopes or binoculars
3/14	• Bags combined with hand-muffs	11/10	• Watch cases or guards, with or without windows
<b>5/00</b>	<b>Rigid or semi-rigid luggage</b> (collapsible or extensible luggage, bags or the like A45C 7/00)	11/12	• • Transparent watch-protectors
		11/14	• Pocket holders for postage stamps



11/16	• Jewel boxes	13/14	• • of bar fastenings
11/18	• Ticket-holders or the like	13/16	• Closures of the roller-blind type
11/20	• Lunch or picnic boxes or the like	13/18	• Devices to prevent theft or loss of luggage or bags
11/22	• Watertight containers for use while swimming	13/20	• • Chains or bands
11/24	• Etuis for purposes not covered by a single one of groups A45C 11/02-A45C 11/22, A45C 11/26, A45C 11/32-A45C 11/38	13/22	• • Detachable handles; Handles foldable into the luggage (separate handles for carrying means A45F 5/10)
11/26	• Roll-up holders with pockets for separate articles	13/24	• • Devices for sound-producing, piercing, gas-discharging, or the like
11/32	• Bags or wallets for holding keys	13/26	• Special adaptations of handles (A45C 13/22 takes precedence; handles for containers in general B65D 25/28)
11/34	• Pencil boxes; Pencil etuis or the like (functioning as, or combined with, writing or drawing implements B43K 31/00)	13/28	• • Combinations of handles with other devices
11/36	• Cases for drawing or like instruments (functioning as, or combined with, writing or drawing implements B43K 31/00)	13/30	• Straps; Bands
11/38	• Camera cases, e.g. of ever-ready type	13/34	• Stays or supports for holding lids or covers open
<b>13/00</b>	<b>Details; Accessories</b> (haberdashery A44; hinged lids for containers B65D 43/16; hinges E05D) [ <b>1, 2006.01</b> ]	13/36	• Reinforcements for edges, corners, or other parts
13/02	• Interior fittings; Means for holding or packing articles [ <b>1, 2006.01</b> ]	13/38	• Luggage carriers
13/03	• • Means for holding garments [ <b>2006.01</b> ]	13/40	• Umbrella, stick, or glove holders attached to a bag
13/04	• Frames	13/42	• Devices for identifying luggage; Means for attaching same
13/06	• • Frame closures	<b>15/00</b>	<b>Purses, bags, luggage or other receptacles covered by groups A45C 1/00-A45C 11/00, combined with other articles</b> (A45C 1/08, A45C 3/14 take precedence)
13/08	• Decorative devices for handbags or purses	15/02	• with memorandum tablets
13/10	• Arrangement of fasteners (fastening devices for containers B65D, e.g. B65D 43/14; locks E05B)	15/04	• with mirrors
13/12	• • of press-button or turn-button fasteners	15/06	• with illuminating devices
		15/08	• with watches
<b>A45D</b>	<b>HAIRDRESSING OR SHAVING EQUIPMENT; MANICURING OR OTHER COSMETIC TREATMENT</b> (wigs, toupees, or the like A41G 3/00, A41G 5/00; hairdressers' chairs A47C 1/04; hair cutting appliances, razors B26B)		

### Subclass index

#### HAIRDRESSING

Washing or colouring; drying.....	19/00, 20/00
Curling or waving.....	1/00-7/00
Straightening.....	7/00
Hair-holding.....	8/00
Other hairdressing.....	24/00, 26/00
SHAVING ACCESSORIES.....	27/00
MANICURING OR PEDICURING.....	29/00, 31/00
OTHER BEAUTY CARES.....	2/48, 40/00
ACCESSORIES	
Containers or applicators.....	33/00-40/00
Mirrors.....	42/00
OTHER TOILET OR COSMETIC EQUIPMENT.....	44/00

#### Curling or holding the hair

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Curling-tongs, i.e. tongs for use when hot; Curling-irons, i.e. irons for use when hot; Accessories therefor</b>
1/02	• with means for internal heating, e.g. by liquid fuel
1/04	• • by electricity
1/06	• with two or more jaws (A45D 1/02 takes precedence)
1/08	• • the jaws remaining parallel to each other during use, e.g. the jaws sliding parallel to each other
1/10	• • with a rotatable handle sleeve
1/12	• • of helical or zig-zag shape
1/14	• • the jaws being separable from each other
1/16	• with a single heated member (A45D 1/02 takes precedence)
1/18	• with combs (A45D 1/02 takes precedence)

1/20	• External heating means for curling-tongs or curling-irons
1/28	• with temperature-regulating or -indicating means
<b>2/00</b>	<b>Hair-curling or hair-waving appliances</b> (heated curling-tongs, curling-irons A45D 1/00)
2/02	• Hair winders or hair curlers for use substantially perpendicular to the scalp, i.e. steep-curlers (A45D 6/14, A45D 6/16 take precedence; with incorporated heating or drying means A45D 2/36; heating devices designed for use external to and in connection with, hair curlers or hair wavers A45D 4/02)
2/04	• • in the form of rods with jaw devices
2/06	• • in the form of rods with base plate or base clamp

- 2/08 • • of hollow type (A45D 2/10 takes precedence)
- 2/10 • • in the form of spools or bobbins
- 2/12 • Hair winders or hair curlers for use parallel to the scalp, i.e. flat-curlers (A45D 6/14, A45D 6/16 take precedence; with internal electric heating means A45D 2/36; heating devices designed for use external to, and in connection with, hair curlers or hair winders A45D 4/08)
- 2/14 • • of single-piece type, e.g. stiff rods or tubes with or without cord, band, or the like as hair-fastening means
- 2/16 • • • in the form of forked rods or tubes
- 2/18 • • • Flexible curlers (A45D 2/20 takes precedence)
- 2/20 • • • Elastic curlers
- 2/22 • • • with means for applying liquids therethrough
- 2/24 • • of multi-part type, e.g. with sliding parts other than for fastening
- 2/26 • • • forked
- 2/28 • • • with clamping bow as fastening means
- 2/30 • • • with slide as fastening means
- 2/32 • • • with positive non-return means, e.g. ratchet
- 2/34 • • • with base clamp
- 2/36 • Hair curlers or hair winders with incorporated heating or drying means, e.g. electric, using chemical reaction
- 2/38 • Surface-wave devices
- 2/40 • • as hair-pressing tongs
- 2/42 • Clamps or clasps with teeth or combs
- 2/44 • using two or more combs one upon the other or one in distance to the other, e.g. using slidable combs
- 2/46 • Hair-waving caps
- 2/48 • Eyelash curlers; Eyebrow curlers
- 2/50 • Beard binders; Like means for the care of the beard

**4/00 Separate devices designed for heating hair curlers or hair-wavers** (hair-drying devices without connection to hair curlers or hair-wavers A45D 20/00)

- 4/02 • for steep curling, e.g. with means for decreasing the heat (A45D 4/14, A45D 4/16 take precedence)
- 4/04 • • heated by steam or hot air
- 4/06 • • heated by electricity
- 4/08 • for flat curling, e.g. with means for decreasing the heat (A45D 4/14, A45D 4/16 take precedence)
- 4/10 • • heated by steam or hot air
- 4/12 • • heated by electricity
- 4/14 • with chemical heat reaction and heat storage
- 4/16 • Independent devices characterised by heating the hair-curling or hair-waving means before use (A45D 1/20 takes precedence)
- 4/18 • Supports or suspending means for devices heating hair-curling or hair-waving means while in use

**6/00 Details of, or accessories for, hair-curling or hair-waving devices**

- 6/02 • Devices for winding the hair upon steep-curlers
- 6/04 • Devices for winding the hair on flat-curlers
- 6/06 • Devices for pneumatic waving in form boxes
- 6/08 • Base-clamps, e.g. for steep-curlers
- 6/10 • • for flat-curlers
- 6/12 • • with cooling means
- 6/14 • Simple clamps for hair curlers
- 6/16 • Curler pins
- 6/18 • Protecting devices or packages for hair curlers or the like while in use
- 6/20 • Temperature-regulating devices for hair curlers

**7/00 Processes of waving, straightening or curling hair [2]**

- 7/02 • thermal
- 7/04 • chemical
- 7/06 • combined chemical and thermal

**8/00 Hair-holding devices; Accessories therefor**

- 8/02 • Hair pins
- 8/04 • • single-limbed
- 8/06 • • two-limbed, e.g. U-shaped
- 8/08 • • • with zig-zag limb
- 8/10 • • • with teeth
- 8/12 • High combs or dress combs
- 8/14 • Hair grips, i.e. elastic single-piece two-limbed grips
- 8/16 • • with additional fastener
- 8/18 • Grip openers; Grip boxes
- 8/20 • Hair clamps, i.e. elastic multi-part clamps the parts of which are pivotally connected between their ends
- 8/22 • • with additional fastener
- 8/24 • Hair clasps, i.e. multi-part clasps with pivotal connection of parts at their ends
- 8/26 • • with snap fastener
- 8/28 • • with other fastener
- 8/30 • • with comb-like prongs
- 8/32 • • with double-bow; with U-shaped limbs
- 8/34 • Hair-braid holders; Hair-plait holders
- 8/36 • Hair straps; Hair rings
- 8/38 • Hair fillers, e.g. wire gratings
- 8/40 • Hair-nets; Hair-protecting caps

**Devices for cleaning the hair or the scalp, drying the hair or colouring the hair**

**19/00 Devices for washing the hair or the scalp; Similar devices for colouring the hair**

- 19/02 • Hand-actuated implements, e.g. hand-actuated spray heads
- 19/04 • Portable wash stands
- 19/06 • in the form of bowls or similar open containers
- 19/08 • • Adaptations of wash-basins
- 19/10 • • • Backward lavabos
- 19/12 • • Water catch bowls
- 19/14 • Closed washing devices, e.g. washing caps (A45D 19/18 takes precedence)
- 19/16 • Surface treatment of hair by steam, oil, or the like
- 19/18 • Hair-colouring caps

**20/00 Hair drying devices; Accessories therefor** (A45D 2/00 takes precedence)

- 20/02 • Lay frames for long open hair
- 20/04 • Hot-air producers (A45D 20/20, A45D 20/22 take precedence)
- 20/06 • • heated otherwise than electrically; ventilated by muscle power
- 20/08 • • heated electrically
- 20/10 • • • Hand-held drying devices, e.g. air douches
- 20/12 • • • • Details thereof or accessories therefor, e.g. nozzles, stands
- 20/14 • • • Portable drying stands
- 20/16 • • • Fixed installed drying devices
- 20/18 • Flexible caps with provision for hot air supply
- 20/20 • Helmets without hot air supply or other ventilation, e.g. electrically heated
- 20/22 • Helmets with hot air supply or ventilating means, e.g. electrically heated air current

- 20/24 • • Shape or structure of the helmet body (A45D 20/26 takes precedence)
- 20/26 • • Guiding the air; Regulating the air quantity
- 20/28 • • Drying the air by incorporated heating elements
- 20/30 • • Electric circuitry specially adapted for hair drying devices
- 20/32 • • Supporting or fastening of the helmets
- 20/34 • • Arrangements of the ventilating means
- 20/36 • • Suspension of the motor
- 20/38 • • Arrangement of the electric heating means
- 20/40 • • • for use of infra-red rays
- 20/42 • • Additional devices or measures, e.g. for noise damping, for musical entertainment
- 20/44 • Hair-drying helmets whereon the ventilating means and the heating means are apart from the helmet
- 20/46 • • provided with tubes for exhausting the hot air
- 20/48 • Hair-drying combs or hair-drying brushes, with internal heating means
- 20/50 • • and provision for an air stream
- 20/52 • Hair-drying combs or hair-drying brushes, adapted for heating by an external heating source

- 
- 24/00 Hair combs for care of the hair; Accessories therefor** (high combs or dress combs A45D 8/12; hair-drying combs A45D 20/48-A45D 20/52; hair-trimming devices, using a razor blade, integral or combined with combs B26B 21/00, e.g. B26B 21/12)
- 24/02 • Single-piece combs
  - 24/04 • Multi-part combs
  - 24/06 • • the combs being foldable (A45D 24/08 takes precedence)
  - 24/08 • • with protective sheath
  - 24/10 • • combined with additional devices
  - 24/12 • • • with suspending means
  - 24/14 • • • with handle designed to be attached to the hand of the user
  - 24/16 • • • with brushes, pads, or the like whereon the additional devices are operable without more ado
  - 24/18 • • • the additional devices being only operable when the comb-part is in a non-operable position
  - 24/20 • • • the additional devices being nail cleaners or nail files
  - 24/22 • Combs with dispensing devices for liquids, pastes or powders
  - 24/24 • • with provision for free supply; using wicks
  - 24/26 • • with flexible walls of the liquid, paste, or powder storing device
  - 24/28 • • with piston pump
  - 24/30 • Combs specially adapted for removing dirt or grease (A45D 24/32 takes precedence)
  - 24/32 • Combs with suction appliance
  - 24/34 • Crown parting devices
  - 24/36 • Combs, stencils, or guides, specially adapted for hair trimming devices
  - 24/38 • Comb supports
  - 24/40 • Comb cleaners
  - 24/42 • • detachable from, or fixed to, the comb
  - 24/44 • • as separate apparatus
  - 24/46 • • • with roller brushes

- 26/00 Hair-singeing apparatus; Apparatus for removing superfluous hair, e.g. tweezers** (removing hair using electrosurgical instruments A61B 18/04, A61B 18/18)
- 27/00 Shaving accessories** (containers for handling shaving soap A45D 40/00; shaving mirrors A45D 42/08)
- 27/02 • Lathering the body; Producing lather (shaving-brushes A46B)
- 27/04 • • Hand implement for lathering, e.g. using brush
- 27/06 • • Motor-driven devices for lathering
- 27/08 • • Gloves or cloths for lathering
- 27/10 • • Lather-producing devices operated by compressed air or by swirling water
- 27/12 • • Lather-producing devices having stirring means (A45D 27/10 takes precedence)
- 27/14 • Shaving mugs
- 27/16 • • with soap holders
- 27/18 • • with brush supports
- 27/22 • Containers or carriers for storing shaving appliances
- 27/24 • • for storing razor blades, e.g. after use (devices for collecting used scalpel blades A61B 17/3217; devices for dispensing new razor-blades B65D 83/10)
- 27/26 • • for styptic pencils, styptic cotton-wool or the like
- 27/28 • • for storing one shaving appliance within another (means integral with, or attached to, the razor for storing shaving cream, styptic, or the like B26B 21/44)
- 27/29 • • Stands for shavers or razors (A45D 27/46 takes precedence)
- 27/38 • Skin stretchers for shaving
- 27/40 • Breath deflectors
- 27/42 • Shaving masks
- 27/44 • Lather removing devices
- 27/46 • Devices specially adapted for cleaning or disinfecting shavers or razors
- 27/48 • • Drying devices therefor

#### **Manicuring or pedicuring**

- 29/00 Manicuring or pedicuring implements**
- 29/02 • Nail clippers or cutters
- 29/04 • Nail files, e.g. manually operated
- 29/05 • • motor-driven
- 29/06 • Nail-tip shapers
- 29/11 • Polishing devices for nails
- 29/12 • • manually operated
- 29/14 • • motor-driven
- 29/16 • Cuticle sticks
- 29/17 • Nail cleaners, e.g. scrapers
- 29/18 • Manicure or pedicure sets, e.g. combinations without case, etui, or the like (combined with or on sheath of scissors B26B 13/22, B26B 29/04)
- 29/20 • • Boxes, cases, etuis or the like specially adapted therefor
- 29/22 • Finger-supports

#### **31/00 Artificial nails**

#### **Containers or accessories specially adapted for handling toilet or cosmetic substances**

- 33/00 Containers or accessories specially adapted for handling toilet or cosmetic powder**
- 33/02 • with dispensing means, e.g. sprinkling means

## A45D

33/04	• • with spring bottoms	40/18	• Casings combined with other objects (A45D 40/24, A45D 42/02 take precedence)
33/06	• • with diaphragm bases	40/20	• Pencil-like cosmetics; Simple holders for handling stick-shaped cosmetics or shaving soap while in use
33/08	• • operated by rotary vanes	40/22	• Casings characterised by a hinged cover
33/10	• • with closures in form of iris diaphragms	40/24	• Casings for two or more cosmetics
33/12	• • with rollers	40/26	• Appliances specially adapted for applying pasty paint, e.g. using roller, using a ball
33/14	• • with screws	40/28	• • Appliances specially adapted for spreading already applied paint
33/16	• • with openings in the lid, able to be opened or closed by displacing or rotating a covering part	40/30	• Masks for marking lips or eyelashes
33/18	• with special decorative arrangements or form		
33/20	• Containers with movably mounted drawers		
33/22	• Containers with lids or covers at the top and the bottom		
33/24	• Containers with two lids on one side; Containers with several covers		
33/26	• combined with other objects		
33/28	• • with lipstick holders or with other toilet articles		
33/30	• • with watches or other mechanically-driven articles		
33/32	• • with illuminating means		
33/33	• • with bracelet or garter holder; as pendant		
33/34	• Powder-puffs, e.g. with installed container		
33/36	• • with handle		
33/38	• Papers containing powder or other toilet substances		
<b>34/00</b>	<b>Containers or accessories specially adapted for handling liquid toilet or cosmetic substances, e.g. perfumes</b>		
34/02	• Scent flasks, e.g. with evaporator		
34/04	• Appliances specially adapted for applying liquid, e.g. using roller or ball		
34/06	• in combination with other toilet articles, e.g. lipstick		
<b>37/00</b>	<b>Sachet pads specially adapted for liquid toilet or cosmetic substances</b>		
<b>40/00</b>	<b>Casings or accessories specially adapted for storing or handling solid or pasty toilet or cosmetic substances, e.g. shaving soap, lipstick or make-up</b> (features common to containers for handling powdery or liquid toilet or cosmetic substances A45D 33/00- A45D 37/00; cosmetic or like preparations A61K 8/00, A61Q; sample tables or the like G09F 5/00)		
40/02	• Casings wherein movement of the lipstick or like solid is a sliding movement (A45D 40/06 takes precedence)		
40/04	• • effected by a screw		
40/06	• Casings wherein movement of the lipstick or like solid is a screwing movement		
40/08	• with provision for sieves or shaping parts for stick ends		
40/10	• Casings wherein a spring presses the lipstick or like solid into the position for use or into the retracted position		
40/12	• Casings with provision for preventing undesired movement of the stick (A45D 40/10 takes precedence)		
40/14	• Casings with ejector for waste stick or the like		
40/16	• Refill sticks; Moulding devices for producing sticks		
		<b>Other toilet or cosmetic equipment</b>	
		<b>42/00</b>	<b>Hand, pocket, or shaving mirrors</b>
		42/02	• Mirrors with lipstick or powder-pads
		42/04	• Pocket or handbag mirrors
		42/06	• Wrist mirrors; Mirrors with means for attaching to fingers
		42/08	• Shaving mirrors
		42/10	• • illuminated
		42/12	• • able to be suspended on a person's body
		42/14	• • with vacuum cups
		42/16	• • with other suspending or supporting means
		42/18	• Manifold reflecting mirrors
		42/20	• • with lazy-tongs connection
		42/22	• Metal mirrors
		42/24	• Flexible mirrors
		<b>44/00</b>	<b>Other toilet or cosmetic equipment, e.g. for hairdressers' rooms</b>
		44/02	• Furniture or other equipment specially adapted for hairdressers' rooms and not covered elsewhere (hairdressers' chairs A47C 1/04)
		44/04	• • Special adaptations of portable frames or racks
		44/06	• Means specially adapted for suspending hairdressers' machines, e.g. trolleys for electro-motors
		44/08	• Protecting mantles; Shoulder-shields; Collars; Bibs
		44/10	• Head-rests; Neck-rests
		44/12	• Ear, face, or lip protectors (shaving masks A45D 27/42)
		44/14	• Stands for performing hairdressing work; Postiche heads
		44/16	• Hair-collecting boxes or containers for the same purpose
		44/18	• Receptacles for hair brushes or tooth brushes as travelling equipment
		44/20	• Containers for storing artificial teeth
		44/22	• Face shaping devices, e.g. chin straps; Wrinkle removers, e.g. stretching the skin (skin stretchers for shaving A45D 27/38)
		<b>97/00</b>	<b><i>Hairdressing equipment or cosmetic treatment not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2011.01]</i></b>

**A45F TRAVELLING OR CAMP EQUIPMENT; SACKS OR PACKS CARRIED ON THE BODY** (hand carried bags or luggage A45C) [1, 2006.01]

### Note(s)

This subclass covers only the equipment specified in its subdivisions. Travelling or camp equipment is normally classified in the classes for the equipment concerned, e.g. camp furniture in class A47.

- 3/00 Travelling or camp articles** (travelling rugs A47G 9/06); **Sacks or packs carried on the body** (convertible into other articles A45F 4/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/02 • Sacks or packs carried on the body by means of one strap passing over the shoulder
- 3/04 • Sacks or packs carried on the body by means of two straps passing over the two shoulders
- 3/06 • • specially adapted for military purposes
- 3/08 • • Carrying-frames; Frames combined with sacks (wheeled carriers A45C 13/38)
- 3/10 • Pack-frames carried on the body
- 3/12 • Shoulder-pads
- 3/14 • Carrying-straps; Pack-carrying harnesses
- 3/15 • • Harnesses specially adapted for carrying small boats
- 3/16 • Water-bottles; Mess-tins; Cups
- 3/18 • • of rigid material
- 3/20 • • of flexible material; Collapsible or stackable cups
- 3/22 • Hammocks; Hammock spreaders
- 3/24 • • Stands; Supports
- 3/26 • Hanging seats
- 3/44 • Article supports adapted to be stuck into the ground
- 3/46 • Picnic sets (lunch or picnic boxes A45C 11/20)
- 3/48 • Sewing kits

- 3/50 • Map-cases used as travelling equipment (holders or cabinets for maps A47B 97/02)
- 3/52 • Nets affording protection against insects

**4/00 Travelling or camp articles which may be converted into articles for other use; Sacks or packs carried on the body and convertible into other articles [1, 2006.01]**

- 4/02 • Sacks or packs convertible into other articles
- 4/04 • • into tents
- 4/06 • • into beds or mattresses
- 4/08 • • into hammocks, litters or sleeping-bags
- 4/10 • • into boats or sledges
- 4/12 • • into coats or capes
- 4/14 • Coats or capes convertible into tent coverings

**5/00 Holders or carriers for hand articles; Holders or carriers for use while travelling or camping**

- 5/02 • Fastening articles to the garment
- 5/04 • • Holding handkerchiefs, napkins, or the like
- 5/06 • • Holding hats or other garments
- 5/08 • • Holding flowers
- 5/10 • Handles for carrying purposes (handles for suitcases or bags A45C 13/26)
- 5/12 • Book-carriers
- 5/14 • Holders for spades, hatchets, or the like implements

## A46 BRUSHWARE

### A46B BRUSHES (handles not integral with brushware B25G)

#### Subclass index

BRUSHES.....	1/00, 11/00, 13/00, 15/00
DETAILS OF BRUSHES.....	1/00-9/00
ACCESSORIES.....	17/00

**1/00 Brush bodies and bristles moulded as a unit**

**3/00 Brushes characterised by the way in which the bristles are fixed or joined in or on the brush body or carrier** (machines or appliances therefor A46D)

- 3/02 • by pitch, resin, cement, or other adhesives
- 3/04 • by mouldable materials, e.g. metals, cellulose derivatives, plastics (A46B 1/00 takes precedence)
- 3/06 • by welding together bristles made of metal wires or plastic materials
- 3/08 • by clamping
- 3/10 • • into rings or the like
- 3/12 • • • specially adapted for paint-brushes
- 3/14 • • • specially adapted for street-cleaning or rail-cleaning brooms
- 3/16 • by wires or other anchoring means, specially for U-shaped bristle tufts
- 3/18 • the bristles being fixed on or between belts or wires
- 3/20 • the bristles being fixed or joined in rubber bodies, e.g. in soft rubber
- 3/22 • rubber bristles being fixed in or on brush bodies

**5/00 Brush bodies; Handles integral with brushware**

- 5/02 • specially shaped for holding by the hand

- 5/04 • shaped as gloves or finger-stalls
- 5/06 • in the form of tapes, chains, flexible shafts, springs, or the like

**7/00 Bristle carriers arranged in the brush body**

- 7/02 • in an expanding or articulating manner
- 7/04 • interchangeably
- 7/06 • movably during use
- 7/08 • • as a rotating disc
- 7/10 • • as a rotating cylinder

**9/00 Arrangements of the bristles in the brush body**

- 9/02 • Position or arrangement of bristles in relation to surface of the brush body, e.g. inclined, in rows, in groups
- 9/04 • • for toothbrushes
- 9/06 • Arrangement of mixed bristles or tufts of bristles, e.g. wire, fibre, rubber
- 9/08 • Supports or guides for bristles
- 9/10 • • Adjustable supports
- 9/12 • • Non-adjustable supports

## A46B

- |              |   |              |   |
|--------------|---|--------------|---|
| <b>11/00</b> | <b>Brushes with reservoir or other means for applying substances, e.g. paints, pastes, water</b> (driven brush bodies A46B 13/00; applying liquids or other fluent materials to surfaces by liquid carrying members in general, e.g. by pads, B05C 1/00, B05D 1/28) | 13/04        | • • with reservoir or other means for supplying substances                            |
|              |   | 13/06        | • • • with brush driven by the supplied medium  |
|              |   | 13/08        | • hand-driven   |
| 11/02        | • with substance discharged from reservoir by pressure  | <b>15/00</b> | <b>Other brushes; Brushes with additional arrangements</b>                            |
| 11/04        | • with substance discharged from reservoir otherwise than by pressure   | <b>17/00</b> | <b>Accessories for brushes</b>  |
| 11/06        | • connected to supply pipe  | 17/02        | • Devices for holding brushes in use  |
| 11/08        | • with heating means  | 17/04        | • Protective covers for the bristles  |
| <b>13/00</b> | <b>Brushes with driven brush bodies</b> (power-driven toothbrushes A61C 17/16) [5]  | 17/06        | • Devices for cleaning brushes after use  |
| 13/02        | • power-driven  | 17/08        | • Other accessories, e.g. scrapers, rubber buffers for preventing damage to furniture |

## A46D MANUFACTURE OF BRUSHES

- |             |  |              |   |
|-------------|--|--------------|---|
| <b>1/00</b> | <b>Bristles; Selection of materials for bristles</b> (making artificial bristles D01D, D01F) | 3/06         | • Machines for both drilling bodies and inserting bristles                        |
| 1/04        | • Preparing bristles   | 3/08         | • Parts of brush-making machines  |
| 1/045       | • • Cleaning, e.g. washing, drying   | <b>5/00</b>  | <b>Devices for preparing quills for use as carriers for bristles</b>              |
| 1/05        | • • Splitting; Pointing  | <b>7/00</b>  | <b>Pressing devices for making brooms composed of brushwood or the like</b>       |
| 1/055       | • • Combing; Mixing; Sorting   | <b>9/00</b>  | <b>Machines for finishing brushes</b>   |
| 1/06        | • • Machines or apparatus for cutting bristles   | 9/02         | • Cutting; Trimming   |
| 1/08        | • Preparing uniform tufts of bristles  | 9/04         | • Cleaning  |
| 1/10        | • Vibrating devices for arranging bristles   | 9/06         | • Impregnating  |
| <b>3/00</b> | <b>Preparing brush bodies</b>  | <b>99/00</b> | <b>Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]</b> |
| 3/02        | • Machines for drilling bodies   |              |   |
| 3/04        | • Machines for inserting or fixing bristles in bodies  |              |   |
| 3/05        | • • for fixing the bristles between wires, tapes, or the like                                |              |   |

## A47 FURNITURE; DOMESTIC ARTICLES OR APPLIANCES; COFFEE MILLS; SPICE MILLS; SUCTION CLEANERS IN GENERAL

### Note(s)

In this class, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

- "furniture" covers also easels or stands, e.g. for blackboards or drawing tables.

## A47B TABLES; DESKS; OFFICE FURNITURE; CABINETS; DRAWERS; GENERAL DETAILS OF FURNITURE (jointing of furniture F16B 12/00)

### Note(s)

In this subclass, the following terms are used with the meanings indicated:

- "tables" covers also tables or underframes therefor for other than domestic use;
- "cabinets" or "racks" cover also cabinets or racks for storage in general.

### Subclass index

#### TABLES CHARACTERISED BY STRUCTURAL FEATURES

- |  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| Extensible tables; folding or stowable tables; stackable tables..... | 1/00, 3/00, 5/04, 7/02 |
| Other tables.....  | 5/00-11/00             |
| Details.....   | 13/00                  |

#### TABLES OR DESKS CHARACTERISED BY ADAPTATION FOR PARTICULAR PURPOSE

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| For writing, reading or drawing purposes..... | 17/00-23/00, 27/00  |
| For computer workstations.....                | 21/00               |
| For domestic use.....                         | 29/00-35/00         |
| Other tables.....                             | 23/00, 25/00, 37/00 |

#### SCHOOL BENCHES OR DESKS.....39/00, 41/00

## CABINETS, RACKS, OR THE LIKE CHARACTERISED BY STRUCTURAL FEATURES

- Of rigid construction.....53/00, 55/00
- Foldable, collapsible, or extensible cabinets, racks, or the like.....43/00, 45/00, 47/00
- With adjustable shelves or partitions.....57/00
- Other cabinets, racks, or the like.....46/00, 49/00, 51/00, 53/00

## CABINETS, RACKS, OR THE LIKE CHARACTERISED BY ADAPTATION FOR PARTICULAR PURPOSE

- For books.....63/00, 65/00
- For kitchen use or for storing food or drink.....71/00-77/00
- Other cabinets, racks, or the like.....61/00, 67/00, 69/00, 79/00, 81/00

## FURNITURE COMBINATIONS.....83/00, 85/00, 87/00

## DETAILS OF FURNITURE.....88/00-96/00

## MISCELLANEOUS FURNITURE, MISCELLANEOUS ACCESSORIES FOR FURNITURE.....95/00, 97/00

**Tables or desks characterised by structural features****1/00 Extensible tables** (extensible shelf units A47B 46/00)

- 1/02 • with insertable leaves and fixed frames
- 1/03 • • the leaves being foldable or revolvable
- 1/04 • with supplementary leaves or drop-leaves
- 1/05 • • the leaves being extensible by drawing-out
- 1/06 • with flexible roll-tops
- 1/08 • with extensible frames
- 1/10 • Slide mechanisms

**3/00 Folding or stowable tables** (folded and suspended or hinged, or wall tables A47B 5/04; with tops of variable height A47B 9/00; foldable service or tea tables A47B 31/04)

- 3/02 • with foldable cross legs (adjustable for varying height of tops A47B 9/16)
- 3/04 • with flexible roll-tops
- 3/06 • with separable parts
- 3/08 • with legs pivoted to top or underframe
- 3/083 • • with foldable top leaves
- 3/087 • • • with struts supporting the legs
- 3/091 • • with struts supporting the legs (in combination with foldable top leaves A47B 3/087)
- 3/10 • Travelling or trunk tables
- 3/12 • Stowable tables with detachable top leaves
- 3/14 • Foldable table and seat units

**5/00 Suspended or hinged panels forming a table; Wall tables** (bed tables A47B 23/00; in combination with other furniture A47B 83/00; arm-rest tables for chairs A47C)

- 5/02 • detachable
- 5/04 • foldable
- 5/06 • with legs for supporting the table on the floor

**7/00 Tables of rigid construction**

- 7/02 • Stackable tables; Nesting tables

**9/00 Tables with tops of variable height** (seats with variable height A47C 3/20)

- 9/02 • with balancing device, e.g. by spring, by weight
- 9/04 • with vertical spindle
- 9/06 • with vertical toothed rack
- 9/08 • with clamps acting on vertical rods
- 9/10 • with vertically-acting fluid cylinder
- 9/12 • with flexible height-adjusting means, e.g. rope, chain
- 9/14 • with pins coacting with holes

- 9/16 • with means for, or adapted for, inclining the legs of the table for varying the height of the top, e.g. with adjustable cross legs
- 9/18 • with additional top or additional legs for varying the height of the top
- 9/20 • Telescopic guides

**11/00 Tables with tops revolvable on vertical spindles****13/00 Details of tables or desks** (drawers A47B 88/00; feet for furniture in general A47B 91/00)

- 13/02 • Underframes
- 13/04 • • of wood
- 13/06 • • of metal
- 13/08 • Table tops; Rims therefor (not restricted to table tops A47B 95/04)
- 13/10 • • Tops characterised by shape, other than circular or rectangular
- 13/12 • • Transparent tops
- 13/14 • • Detachable serving plates
- 13/16 • • Holders for glasses, ashtrays, lamps, candles or the like forming part of tables

**Tables or desks characterised by adaptation for particular purposes****17/00 Writing-tables** (A47B 21/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]

- 17/02 • with vertically-adjustable parts
- 17/03 • with substantially horizontally extensible or adjustable parts other than drawers, e.g. leaves
- 17/04 • with secret or fireproof compartments
- 17/06 • with parts, e.g. trays, movable on a pivot or by chains or belts

**19/00 Reading-desks; Lecterns; Pulpits**

- 19/02 • Church pulpits
- 19/04 • Telephone desks, e.g. with book clamps, with shelves
- 19/06 • with adjustable top leaf
- 19/08 • Foldable reading desks
- 19/10 • characterised by association with auxiliary devices, e.g. paper clamps, line indicators (spot indicators per se B42D 9/00)

**21/00 Tables or desks specially adapted for use at individual computer workstations, e.g. for word processing or other manual data entry; Tables or desks specially adapted for typing; Auxiliary devices for attachment to such tables or desks** (mouse pads per se G06F 3/039) [1, 2006.01]

- 21/007 • with under-desk displays, e.g. displays being viewable through a transparent working surface of the table or desk **[2006.01]**
- 21/013 • characterised by adjustable parts, e.g. universally adjustable leaves, arm rests, wrist supports or mouse platforms (A47B 21/007 takes precedence) **[2006.01]**
- 21/02 • • the parts being vertically-adjustable only **[1, 2006.01]**
- 21/03 • • the parts being horizontally adjustable, e.g. extensible, only (drawers A47B 88/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 21/04 • characterised by means for holding or fastening typewriters or computer equipment **[1, 2006.01]**
- 21/06 • characterised by means for holding, fastening or concealing cables **[2006.01]**
- 23/00 Bed-tables** (operating tables A61G 13/00); **Trays; Reading-racks; Book-rests**
- 23/02 • releasably mounted on the bedstead
- 23/04 • supported from table, floor or wall
- 23/06 • characterised by association with auxiliary devices, e.g. line indicators, leaf turners, lampholders (spot indicators, leaf turners, *per se* B42D 9/00)
- 25/00 Card tables; Tables for other games** (billiard tables A63D 15/00)
- 27/00 Drawing desks or tables; Carriers for drawing-boards** (tables convertible to drawing desks A47B 85/02; easels or stands for blackboards or the like A47B 97/04; drawing-boards B43L 5/00)
- 27/02 • Adjustable drawing tables without balancing means
- 27/04 • Adjustable drawing-board carriers with balancing means for the board
- 27/06 • • balancing by means of springs
- 27/08 • • • with parallel-link guiding
- 27/10 • • balancing by means of weights
- 27/12 • • • with parallel-link guiding
- 27/14 • Adjustable underframes
- 27/16 • • hydraulically adjustable
- 27/18 • Locking means, e.g. for locking inclination of board (A47B 27/14 takes precedence)
- 29/00 Sewing-tables** (for industrial use D05B 75/00)
- 31/00 Service or tea tables, trolleys, or wagons** (features relating to running gear or to movement by hand B62B)
- 31/02 • with heating, cooling or ventilating means
- 31/04 • foldable
- 31/06 • adapted to the use in vehicles
- 33/00 Kitchen or dish-washing tables**
- 35/00 Tables combined with ironing-boards, washers, wringers, or the like** (washing machines, ironing boards, wringers *per se* D06F)
- 37/00 Tables adapted for other particular purposes** (flower tables A47G 7/04; operating tables A61G 13/00; laboratory tables B01L 9/02; work tables B25H 1/02)
- 37/02 • Tables specially adapted to be used with domestic photographic projectors, e.g. tables with levelling arrangements (tables with adjustable height A47B 9/00; tables with adjustable inclination of the top A47B 13/00, A47B 19/06, A47B 23/00, A47B 27/00)
- 37/04 • Tables specially adapted for use in the garden or otherwise in the open air, e.g. with means for holding umbrellas or umbrella-like sunshades

## School benches or desks

- 39/00 School forms; Benches or forms combined with desks** (attaching to floor A47B 91/08)
- 39/02 • Adjustable forms
- 39/04 • Collapsible or tip-up forms
- 39/06 • Folding forms
- 39/08 • Seats or backs for forms
- 39/10 • Devices for holding pupils upright, i.e. body supports
- 39/12 • Equipment for forms not provided for in groups A47B 39/02-A47B 39/10
- 41/00 School desks or tables** (attaching to floor A47B 91/08)
- 41/02 • Desk tops
- 41/04 • Drawing or model stands
- 41/06 • Holders or supports for guiding copy-books, slates, or the like

## Structural features of cabinets, racks, shelf units or similar furniture; Similar features of built-in cupboards [3]

- 43/00 Cabinets, racks or shelf units, characterised by features enabling folding of the cabinet or the like**
- 43/02 • made of cardboard or the like
- 43/04 • made of a rigid frame with walls or door-leaves of textile or the like
- 45/00 Cabinets, racks or shelf units, characterised by features enabling enlarging in height, length, or depth** (sectional furniture A47B 87/00)
- 46/00 Cabinets, racks or shelf units, having one or more surfaces adapted to be brought into position for use by extending or pivoting** (A47B 63/04, A47B 77/10 take precedence; writing tables with extensible leaves A47B 17/03, A47B 21/013; with extensible garment holders A47B 61/02)
- 47/00 Cabinets, racks or shelf units, characterised by features related to dismountability or building-up from elements** (A47B 43/00, A47B 45/00 take precedence; features for adjusting shelves or partitions A47B 57/00) **[3]**
- 47/02 • made of metal only **[2]**
- 47/03 • • with panels separate from the frame **[2]**
- 47/04 • made mainly of wood or plastics
- 47/05 • • with panels on a separate frame, e.g. a metal frame **[2]**
- 47/06 • made mainly of cardboard, textile, paper, or the like, e.g. with separate frame of other materials
- 49/00 Revolving cabinets or racks; Cabinets or racks with revolving parts**
- 51/00 Cabinets with means for moving compartments up and down**
- 53/00 Cabinets or racks having several sections one behind the other; Cabinet or rack systems** (revolving cabinets or racks A47B 49/00)
- 53/02 • Cabinet systems, e.g. consisting of cabinets arranged in a row with means to open or close passages between adjacent cabinets
- 55/00 Cabinets, racks or shelf units, having essential features of rigid construction** (safes E05G)
- 55/02 • made of wire
- 55/04 • made of concrete or the like



- 55/06 • made of cardboard, paper, or the like
- 57/00 Cabinets, racks or shelf units, characterised by features for adjusting shelves or partitions** (details of cabinets, racks or shelf units in general A47B 96/00; brackets adjustable in themselves A47B 96/07) [3]
- 57/04 • with means for adjusting the inclination of the shelves
- 57/06 • with means for adjusting the height of the shelves (A47B 57/04, A47B 57/30 take precedence) [3]
- 57/08 • • consisting of grooved or notched ledges, uprights or side walls
- 57/10 • • • the grooved or notched parts being the side walls or uprights themselves
- 57/12 • • consisting of side walls of the ladder type
- 57/14 • • • with hooks on the shelves to engage the rungs of the ladder
- 57/16 • • consisting of hooks coacting with openings (ladder type A47B 57/12)
- 57/18 • • consisting of screwbolts as connecting members
- 57/20 • • consisting of tongues, pins or similar projecting means coacting with openings (A47B 57/08, A47B 57/16 take precedence) [3]
- 57/22 • • • characterised by shape or orientation of opening, e.g. keyhole-shaped
- 57/26 • • consisting of clamping means, e.g. with sliding bolts or sliding wedges
- 57/30 • with means for adjusting the height of detachable shelf supports [3]
- 57/32 • • consisting of grooved or notched ledges, uprights or side walls [3]
- 57/34 • • • the grooved or notched parts being the side walls or uprights themselves [3]
- 57/36 • • consisting of side walls of the ladder type [3]
- 57/38 • • • with hooks on the shelf supports to engage the rungs of the ladder [3]
- 57/40 • • consisting of hooks coacting with openings (ladder type A47B 57/36) [3]
- 57/42 • • • the shelf supports being cantilever brackets [3]
- 57/44 • • consisting of screwbolts as connecting members [3]
- 57/46 • • • the shelf supports being cantilever brackets [3]
- 57/48 • • consisting of tongues, pins or similar projecting means coacting with openings (A47B 57/32, A47B 57/40 take precedence) [3]
- 57/50 • • • characterised by shape or orientation of opening, e.g. keyhole-shaped [3]
- 57/52 • • • the shelf supports being cantilever brackets [3]
- 57/54 • • consisting of clamping means, e.g. with sliding bolts or sliding wedges [3]
- 57/56 • • • the shelf supports being cantilever brackets [3]
- 57/58 • with means for adjusting partitions horizontally (book-ends A47B 65/00) [3]
- Special adaptations of cabinets racks, shelf units or similar furniture; Similar features of built-in cupboards [2009.01]**
- 61/00 Wardrobes**
- 61/02 • with extensible garment-holders
- 61/04 • for shoes, hats, umbrellas, or the like
- 61/06 • Travelling or trunk wardrobes
- 63/00 Cabinets, racks or shelf units, specially adapted for storing books, documents, forms, or the like**
- 63/02 • specially adapted for storing drawings or the like (filing of suspended drawings B42F 15/00)
- 63/04 • with a writing surface (surfaces adapted to be brought into position for use by extension or pivoting in general A47B 46/00)
- 63/06 • with parts, e.g. trays, movable on pivots, or on chains or belts (revolving cabinets in general, cabinets with revolving parts in general A47B 49/00; cabinets with means for moving compartments up and down in general A47B 51/00)
- 65/00 Book-troughs; Accessories specially adapted for book-storing, e.g. book-ends**
- 67/00 Chests; Dressing-tables; Medicine cabinets or the like; Cabinets characterised by the arrangement of drawers**
- 67/02 • Cabinets for shaving tackle, medicines, or the like
- 67/04 • Chests of drawers; Cabinets characterised by the arrangement of drawers (A47B 67/02 takes precedence; drawers, guides for drawers, *per se* A47B 88/00)
- 69/00 Cocktail cabinets** (cabinets or racks for bottles only A47B 73/00)
- 71/00 Cabinets for perishable goods, e.g. meat safes, fly-proof cabinets** (fruit or potato storage cabinets, racks or trays A47B 75/00; ice-boxes, refrigerators F25D)
- 73/00 Bottle cupboards; Bottle racks**
- 75/00 Fruit or potato storage cabinets, racks or trays for domestic use**
- 77/00 Kitchen cabinets** (tops specially designed for working on A47B 96/18)
- 77/02 • General layout, e.g. relative arrangement of compartments, working surface or surfaces, supports for apparatus (A47B 77/08 takes precedence)
- 77/04 • Provision for particular uses of compartments or other parts
- 77/06 • • for incorporating sinks, with or without draining boards, splash-backs, or the like (constructional features of draining boards A47L 19/02; sinks E03C 1/18)
- 77/08 • • for incorporating apparatus operated by power, including water power; for incorporating apparatus for cooking, cooling, or laundry purposes
- 77/10 • • with members movable outwards to a position of use, e.g. tables, ironing boards (A47B 77/16 takes precedence; surfaces adapted to be brought into position for use by extension or pivoting in general A47B 46/00)
- 77/12 • • • for attachment of portable kitchen machines
- 77/14 • • by incorporation of racks or supports, other than shelves, for household utensils
- 77/16 • • by adaptation of compartments or drawers for receiving or holding foodstuffs; by provision of rotatable or extendible containers for foodstuffs
- 77/18 • • by special arrangements for accommodating removable containers
- 79/00 Bedside cabinets**

## A47B

- 81/00 Cabinets, racks or shelf units specially adapted for other particular purposes, e.g. for storing guns or skis** (racks for dispensing merchandise A47F 1/00; showcases or show cabinets A47F 3/00; racks specially adapted for workshops B25H 3/04; peculiar to housing recording apparatus or records therefor G11B 33/02; peculiar to housing electrical apparatus or installations H05K)
- 81/02 • specially adapted for storing cleaning utensils
- 81/04 • specially adapted for storing dishware
- 81/06 • Furniture aspects of radio, television, gramophone, or record cabinets

### Combined or convertible furniture [5]

- 83/00 Combinations comprising two or more pieces of furniture of different kinds** (foldable table and seat units A47B 3/14)
- 83/02 • Tables combined with seats
- 83/04 • Tables combined with other pieces of furniture
- 85/00 Furniture convertible into other kinds of furniture** (convertible chairs, stools or benches A47C 13/00; into beds A47C 17/52; into billiard tables A63D 15/04)
- 85/02 • Tables convertible into drawing-desks
- 85/04 • Tables convertible into chairs
- 85/06 • Tables convertible otherwise
- 85/08 • Convertible cupboards
- 87/00 Sectional furniture, i.e. combinations of complete furniture units**
- 87/02 • stackable [3]

- 88/00 Drawers for tables, cabinets or like furniture; Guides for drawers** (A47B 63/02 takes precedence; drawers coupled to doors A47B 96/16)
- 88/02 • Coupled drawers
- 88/04 • Sliding drawers; Slides or guides therefor
- 88/06 • • Drawers which can be rotated while or after sliding out
- 88/08 • • with double extensible guides or parts
- 88/10 • • • with rollers, ball bearings, wheels, or the like
- 88/12 • • with other guiding mechanisms
- 88/14 • • • with rollers, ball bearings, wheels, or the like
- 88/16 • • with devices to prevent complete withdrawal

**A47C CHAIRS** (seats specially adapted for vehicles B60N 2/00); **SOFAS; BEDS** (upholstery in general B68G)

### Subclass index

#### SEATING FURNITURE

General structure.....	3/00, 11/00
Chairs of special materials.....	5/00
Folding or collapsible chairs.....	4/00
For special uses.....	1/00, 9/00, 11/00
Step-stools, convertible chairs, other seating furniture.....	12/00-15/00
Details or accessories.....	7/00, 16/00

#### SOFAS, COUCHES, BEDS

General structure.....	17/00, 19/00
Details; accessories.....	19/00, 20/00, 23/00, 21/00

DETAILS OR ACCESSORIES COMMON TO SEATING FURNITURE AND BEDS.....25/00-31/00

- 88/18 • Drawers tiltably or pivotally arranged
- 88/20 • Drawers with compartments
- 88/22 • Concealed drawers

### **91/00 Feet for furniture in general** (castors B60B 33/00)

- 91/02 • Adjustable feet (self-levelling A47B 91/16)
- 91/04 • Elastic supports
- 91/06 • Gliders or the like
- 91/08 • connected to the floor
- 91/10 • • adapted to mounting on inclined floor
- 91/12 • Leg supports, e.g. cup-shaped
- 91/14 • Devices on legs preventing ascent of insects
- 91/16 • Self-levelling legs

### **95/00 Fittings for furniture**

- 95/02 • Handles
- 95/04 • Keyplates; Ornaments or the like (rims specially adapted for table tops A47B 13/08; keyplates in general E05B 17/14)

### **96/00 Details of cabinets, racks or shelf units not covered by a single one of groups A47B 43/00-A47B 95/00; General details of furniture** (doors E06B)

- 96/02 • Shelves (movable shelves coupled to doors A47B 96/16)
- 96/04 • Partition walls
- 96/06 • Brackets or similar supporting means for cabinets, racks or shelves (aspects of adjusting height or inclination A47B 57/00)
- 96/07 • • adjustable in themselves [3]
- 96/14 • Bars, uprights, struts, or like supports, for cabinets, brackets, or the like (aspects of adjusting height or inclination of shelves or brackets A47B 57/00)
- 96/16 • Drawers or movable shelves coupled to doors
- 96/18 • Tops specially designed for working on (table tops A47B 13/08)
- 96/20 • Furniture panels or like furniture elements
- 97/00 Furniture or accessories for furniture, not provided for in other groups of this subclass**
- 97/02 • Devices for holding or supporting maps, drawings, or the like, including means for preventing rolling-up
- 97/04 • Easels or stands for blackboards or the like
- 97/06 • • with means for balancing weight of blackboards or the like, e.g. connected to wall (means for balancing weight of drawing-boards A47B 27/00)
- 97/08 • • foldable

**Chairs; Stools, Benches**

- 1/00 Chairs adapted for special purposes** (features relating to vertical adjustability A47C 3/20; convertible chairs A47C 13/00; chairs or personal conveyances specially adapted for patients or disabled persons A61G 3/00, A61G 5/00; operating chairs, dental chairs A61G 15/00)
- 1/02 • Reclining or easy chairs (supports for parts of body A47C 7/36, A47C 7/50, A47C 7/54)
- 1/022 • • having independently-adjustable supporting parts
- 1/023 • • • the parts being horizontally-adjustable seats
- 1/024 • • • the parts, being the back-rest, or the back-rest and seat unit, having adjustable inclination
- 1/025 • • • • by means of a toothed rack or like gearing mechanism
- 1/026 • • • • by means of a peg-and-notch or pawl-and-cam mechanism
- 1/027 • • • • by means of clamps or friction locking members
- 1/028 • • • for changing a straight chair into an easy chair
- 1/029 • • • • by changing the length or the inclination of the legs
- 1/03 • • • the parts being arm-rests
- 1/031 • • having coupled adjustable supporting parts
- 1/032 • • • the parts being movably-coupled seat and back-rest (A47C 1/035 takes precedence)
- 1/033 • • • • the coupling member being a flexible strip
- 1/034 • • • the parts including a leg-rest or foot-rest (A47C 1/037, A47C 1/038 take precedence)
- 1/035 • • • • in combination with movably-coupled seat and back-rest
- 1/036 • • • the parts including a head-rest
- 1/037 • • • • the combination with a leg-rest or foot-rest
- 1/038 • • • with movably-coupled seat and back-rest, actuated by lazy tongs (A47C 1/032, A47C 1/036 take precedence) [2]
- 1/04 • Hairdressers' or similar chairs
- 1/06 • • adjustable
- 1/08 • • with auxiliary seats (insertable seats for children A47C 1/11)
- 1/10 • • with head-rests; with paper holders
- 1/11 • • Accessories not otherwise provided for, e.g. seats for children
- 1/12 • Theatre, auditorium, or similar chairs (seats for stadium benches A47C 1/16)
- 1/121 • • having tipping-up seats [3]
- 1/122 • • • tipping-up sideways [3]
- 1/124 • • Separate chairs, connectible together into a row
- 1/126 • • stowable in floor or wall
- 1/13 • • Indicators; Devices for reserving or the like
- 1/14 • Beach chairs
- 1/16 • Seats detachably mounted on stadium benches (detachably mounted children's chairs A47D 1/10)
- 3/00 Chairs characterised by structural features; Chairs or stools with rotatable or vertically-adjustable seats** (A47C 1/00, A47C 4/00 take precedence)
- 3/02 • Rocking chairs (specially for children A47D 13/10)
- 3/021 • • having elastic frames
- 3/023 • • • made of tubular material
- 3/025 • • with seat, or seat and back-rest unit, elastically mounted in a rigid frame
- 3/026 • • • with a central column, e.g. rocking office chairs; Tilting chairs
- 3/027 • • • with curved rocking members between seat and frame

- 3/029 • • with curved rocking members resting on the floor
- 3/03 • • Locking members (A47C 3/027 takes precedence)
- 3/04 • Stackable chairs; Nesting chairs
- 3/12 • with shell-shaped seat and back-rest unit, e.g. having arm-rests
- 3/14 • of asymmetrical shape
- 3/16 • of legless type, e.g. with seat directly resting on the floor (A47C 3/14 takes precedence; detachably mounted on stadium benches A47C 1/16; children's chairs mounted on back-rest of chair A47D 1/10); Hassocks; Pouffes
- 3/18 • Chairs or stools with rotatable seat (adjustable in height by rotation A47C 3/24)
- 3/20 • Chairs or stools with vertically-adjustable seats (tables with variable height A47B 9/00)
- 3/22 • • with balancing device, e.g. by spring, by weight
- 3/24 • • with vertical spindle
- 3/26 • • with vertical toothed rack
- 3/28 • • with clamps acting on vertical rods
- 3/30 • • with vertically-acting fluid cylinder
- 3/32 • • with flexible height-adjusting means, e.g. rope, chain
- 3/34 • • with pins coacting with holes
- 3/36 • • with means, or adapted, for inclining the legs of the chair or stool for varying height of seat
- 3/38 • • with additional seat or additional legs for varying height of seat
- 3/40 • • Telescopic guides
- 4/00 Foldable, collapsible or dismountable chairs** (of tubular metal type A47C 5/10; children's foldable chairs A47D 1/02)
- 4/02 • Dismountable chairs
- 4/03 • • Non-upholstered wooden chairs [2]
- 4/04 • Folding chairs with inflexible seats
- 4/06 • • Attachment of upholstery or fabric to frames (in general A47C 31/02)
- 4/08 • • having a frame made of wood or plastics
- 4/10 • • • with legs pivotably connected to seat or underframe
- 4/12 • • • • of adjustable type (A47C 4/14 takes precedence)
- 4/14 • • • • with cross legs
- 4/16 • • • • • of adjustable type
- 4/18 • • having a frame made of metal
- 4/20 • • • with legs pivotably connected to seat or underframe
- 4/22 • • • • of adjustable type (A47C 4/24 takes precedence)
- 4/24 • • • • with cross legs
- 4/26 • • • • • of adjustable type
- 4/28 • Folding chairs with flexible coverings for the seat or back elements
- 4/30 • • Attachment of upholstery or fabric to frames (in general A47C 31/02)
- 4/32 • • having a frame made of wood or plastics
- 4/34 • • • with legs pivotably connected to seat or underframe
- 4/36 • • • • of adjustable type (A47C 4/38 takes precedence)
- 4/38 • • • • with cross legs
- 4/40 • • • • • of adjustable type
- 4/42 • • having a frame made of metal
- 4/44 • • • with legs pivotably connected to seat or underframe

- 4/46 • • • • of adjustable type (A47C 4/48 takes precedence)
- 4/48 • • • • with cross legs
- 4/50 • • • • • of adjustable type
- 4/52 • Trunk chairs, i.e. chairs collapsible to trunk shape (trunk tables A47B 3/10)
- 4/54 • Inflatable chairs (connection of valves to inflatable elastic bodies B60C 29/00)
- 5/00 Chairs of special materials**
- 5/02 • Basket chairs
- 5/04 • Metal chairs, e.g. tubular (of rocking type A47C 3/023; of non-tubular folding, collapsible, or dismountable type A47C 4/00)
- 5/06 • • Special adaptation of seat upholstery or fabric for attachment to tubular chairs
- 5/08 • • Tubular chairs having sheathed tubes; Adaptation of sheathed tubes thereto
- 5/10 • • Tubular chairs of foldable, collapsible, or dismountable type
- 5/12 • of plastics, with or without reinforcement
- 5/14 • characterised by the use of laminated wood
- 7/00 Parts, details, or accessories of chairs or stools** (attaching to floor A47B 91/08)
- 7/02 • Seat parts (adaptation of seats to mounting in tubular chairs A47C 5/06; such parts not restricted to chairs A47C 23/00; removable upholstered units or cushions A47C 27/00)
- 7/14 • • of adjustable shape; elastically mounted
- 7/16 • • Seats made of wooden, plastics, or metal sheet material; Panel seats
- 7/18 • • having foamed material included in cushioning part (foamed material mattresses A47C 27/14)
- 7/20 • • • with reinforcement
- 7/22 • • Straps or the like for carrying upholstery
- 7/24 • • Upholstered seats (A47C 7/18 takes precedence)
- 7/26 • • • with reinforcement
- 7/28 • • with tensioned springs, e.g. of flat type
- 7/30 • • • with springs meandering in a flat plane
- 7/32 • • • with tensioned cords, e.g. of elastic type, in a flat plane
- 7/34 • • with springs in compression, e.g. coiled
- 7/35 • • Combinations of different types of springs; Adjustable springs; Attachment of springs to other springs or to frame [2]
- 7/36 • Support for the head or the back (for operating or dental chairs A61G 15/00)
- 7/38 • • for the head, e.g. detachable
- 7/40 • • for the back
- 7/42 • • • of detachable type
- 7/44 • • • with elastically-mounted frame
- 7/46 • • • with special, e.g. adjustable, profile; "Ackerbloom" profile chairs
- 7/48 • • • of freely-rotatable type
- 7/50 • Supports for the feet or the legs (coupled to other adjustable parts A47C 1/034, A47C 1/037; footstools A47C 16/02)
- 7/52 • • of detachable type
- 7/54 • Supports for the arms
- 7/56 • Parts or details of tipping-up chairs, e.g. of theatre chairs
- 7/58 • • Hinges, e.g. for mounting chairs in a curved row (hinges for wings in general E05D)
- 7/60 • • Use of locks or ledges for limiting the seat movement

- 7/62 • Accessories for chairs
- 7/64 • • Hat or coat holders
- 7/66 • • Means to protect against weather
- 7/68 • • Arm-rest tables
- 7/70 • • • of foldable type
- 7/72 • • Adaptations for incorporating lamps, radio sets, bars, telephones, ventilation, heating or cooling arrangements or the like
- 7/74 • • • for ventilation, heating or cooling

**9/00 Stools for specified purposes** (with rotatable seats A47C 3/18; with vertically adjustable seats A47C 3/20; step-stools A47C 12/00; footstools A47C 16/02; prayer stools A47C 16/04; platforms or seat-boxes specially adapted for angling A01K 97/22; walking sticks or umbrellas convertible into seats A45B 5/00) [5]

- 9/02 • Office stools; Workshop stools
- 9/04 • Milking stools
- 9/06 • Wall stools
- 9/08 • Music stools
- 9/10 • Camp, travelling, or sports stools

**11/00 Benches not otherwise provided for** (school forms A47B 39/00)

- 11/02 • Church benches; Confessionals

**12/00 Step-stools [5]**

#### Note(s)

Folding or collapsing actions, of interest apart from any conversion between the step and seat functions, are classified in group A47C 4/00.

- 12/02 • requiring conversion between the step and seat functions [5]

**13/00 Convertible chairs, stools, or benches** (step-stools requiring conversion between the step and seat functions A47C 12/02; stretchers, for patients or invalids, convertible into chairs A61G 1/017) [5]

**15/00 Other seating furniture** (school forms A47B 39/00)

**16/00 Rests or supports for feet, legs, arms, back or head** (associated with chairs A47C 7/00; associated with beds or sofas A47C 20/00) [2]

- 16/02 • Footstools; Foot-rests; Leg-rests [2]
- 16/04 • Prayer stools; Kneeling stools; Kneeling supports (hassocks or pouffes A47C 3/16) [2]

#### Sofas; Beds

#### Note(s)

In groups A47C 17/00-A47C 27/00, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:

- "bedstead" is used only for the frame of a bed;
- "bed" includes bedsteads combined with spring mattresses, stuffed mattresses, or similar means to enable the lying of persons thereon;
- "spring mattresses" do not include any stuffed material;
- "stuffed mattresses" may include metal springs.

- 17/00 Sofas; Couches; Beds** (bedsteads A47C 19/00; spring mattresses A47C 23/00; divan bases A47C 23/00; stuffed mattresses A47C 27/00; beds with special provisions for nursing A61G 7/00)
- 17/02 • Sofas, couches, settees, or the like, without movable parts
- 17/04 • Sofas, couches, settees, or the like, with movable parts; Chair beds
- 17/12 • • changeable to beds by tilting or extending the arm-rests
- 17/13 • • changeable by increasing the available part, e.g. by drawing forward
- 17/14 • • changeable to beds by removing parts only
- 17/16 • • changeable to beds by tilting or pivoting the back-rest
- 17/165 • • • with forward tiltable back-rest, e.g. back cushion [2]
- 17/17 • • • with coupled movement of back-rest and seat [2]
- 17/175 • • • • with tilting or lifting seat-back-rest pivot [2]
- 17/18 • • • and tilting or pivoting the arm-rest
- 17/20 • • • thereby uncovering one or more auxiliary parts previously hidden (A47C 17/22 takes precedence)
- 17/207 • • • • with seat cushion consisting of superposed parts, at least one lower part being used to form part of the surface [2]
- 17/213 • • • • the surface, when used for lying down, consisting of one side of the seat frame and the back-rest frame [2]
- 17/22 • • with means for uncovering a previously hidden mattress or similar bed part
- 17/23 • • • the lying down surface partly consisting of one side of the seat [2]
- 17/24 • • • with only one movable part being tiltable about a horizontal axis
- 17/26 • • • • tiltable to an overturned position
- 17/28 • • • • having means to lift the tilting axis
- 17/30 • • • two or more parts being rotatable about a vertical axis
- 17/32 • • Changing a single bed into a double bed by extending, pivoting, or tilting a previously hidden second mattress or other bed part
- 17/34 • • Joining seats, chairs, or couches to form beds
- 17/36 • • • Changing corner couches into a double bed
- 17/37 • • Changing sofas or the like into beds by means of furniture other than seats or chairs
- 17/38 • Wall beds
- 17/40 • • having balancing members, e.g. weights, springs
- 17/42 • • having supporting legs with fixed position on the floor, e.g. attached thereto
- 17/44 • • • having means on the supporting legs facilitating the removal of the bed from its place
- 17/46 • • characterised by a rigid mattress-supporting member
- 17/48 • • characterised by two or more relatively-movable parts
- 17/50 • • characterised by their shape, e.g. multiple-wall beds
- 17/52 • Cabinet beds; Table beds, or like beds; Wardrobe beds
- 17/54 • • in which the cabinet or the like is tilted with the bed
- 17/56 • • pivotable on both horizontal and vertical axis
- 17/58 • • with extensible mattress support
- 17/60 • • the cabinet being essentially changed in shape in sleeping position of the bed
- 17/62 • • Table beds; Billiard table beds, or like beds
- 17/64 • Travelling or camp beds (adjusting members for rests A47C 20/00; travelling or camp sacks or packs convertible into beds or mattresses A45F 4/06; stretchers A61G 1/00)
- 17/66 • • having specially-adapted body-carrying surfaces
- 17/68 • • only the legs being foldable
- 17/70 • • the bed frame being foldable about a horizontal axis
- 17/72 • • • having cross legs (A47C 17/82 takes precedence)
- 17/74 • • the bed being foldable about a vertical axis
- 17/76 • • having extensible, e.g. telescopic parts
- 17/78 • • held in shape by stressed cords
- 17/80 • • adapted to be used in or connected to vehicles
- 17/82 • • Trunk beds; Travelling-case or like beds
- 17/84 • Suspended beds, e.g. suspended from ceiling (hammocks A45F 3/22)
- 17/86 • Parts or details for beds, sofas or couches only not fully covered in a single one of the groups A47C 17/02, A47C 17/04, A47C 17/38, A47C 17/52, A47C 17/64, or A47C 17/84
- 19/00 Bedsteads** (spring mattresses with rigid frame or forming part of the bedstead A47C 23/00; for children's beds A47D 7/00; bed jointing members or fittings for bedsteads F16B)
- 19/02 • Parts or details of bedsteads not fully covered in a single one of the following subgroups, e.g. bed rails, post rails
- 19/04 • Extensible bedsteads, e.g. with adjustment of length, width, height
- 19/12 • Folding bedsteads (travelling or camp beds A47C 17/64)
- 19/14 • • of the lazy-tongs type
- 19/20 • Multi-stage bedsteads (multiple-wall beds A47C 17/50; suspended beds A47C 17/84); Bedsteads stackable to multi-stage bedsteads
- 19/22 • Combinations of bedsteads with other furniture or with accessories, e.g. with bedside cabinets (bed-tables A47B 23/00)
- 20/00 Head-, foot- or like rests for beds, sofas or the like** (book-rests or bed tables A47B 23/00; bed-rests specially adapted for nursing A61G 7/065) [2]
- 20/02 • of detachable type (A47C 20/04, A47C 20/08 take precedence) [2]
- 20/04 • with adjustable inclination (A47C 20/08 takes precedence) [2]
- 20/06 • • the adjustable part immobilising foldable legs [2]
- 20/08 • with means for adjusting two or more rests together [2]
- 20/10 • • using rods [2]
- 20/12 • • • using telescopic rods [2]
- 20/14 • • using plate and catch [2]
- 20/16 • • using toothed parts, e.g. racks [2]
- 20/18 • • using friction gearing [2]
- 21/00 Attachments for beds, e.g. sheet holders, bed-cover holders** (bed tables supported on the bedstead A47B 23/02; for children's beds A47D 15/00); **Ventilating, cooling or heating means in connection with bedsteads or mattresses** [5]
- 21/02 • Sheet holders; Bed-cover holders
- 21/04 • Devices for ventilating, cooling or heating

## A47C

- 21/06 • Mattress underlays
- 21/08 • Devices for prevention against falling-out, e.g. detachable side walls (for children's beds A47D 7/00)
- 23/00 Spring mattresses with rigid frame or forming part of the bedstead; Divan bases** (unframed spring units A47C 25/00; spring units forming part of stuffed mattresses A47C 27/00; bed-rests specially adapted for nursing A61G 7/065)
- 23/02 • using leaf springs, e.g. metal strips (wooden springs A47C 23/06) [2]
- 23/04 • using springs in compression, e.g. coiled
- 23/043 • • using wound springs [2]
- 23/047 • • incorporating inflatable elements [2]
- 23/05 • • Frames therefor; Connecting the springs to the frame
- 23/053 • • • Attachment or interconnection of springs in frames or in spring units [2]
- 23/055 • • • using cords; using textile or rubber bands [2]
- 23/057 • • • Hangers or supports for fastening spring units to frame [2]
- 23/06 • using wooden springs, e.g. of slat type
- 23/12 • using tensioned springs, e.g. of flat type (A47C 23/02 takes precedence) [2]
- 23/14 • • forming nets; combined with nets
- 23/145 • • • with horizontal interlocking wound springs; Attachment thereof to the frame [2]
- 23/15 • • • with braided or crossed flat springs or cords; with horizontal wound springs (A47C 23/145 takes precedence) [2]
- 23/155 • • • with combinations of flat springs or link chains with wound springs [2]
- 23/16 • • of plane meandering type
- 23/18 • • of resilient webbing
- 23/20 • • of resilient sheet form
- 23/22 • • of tensioned rubber cords or like cords
- 23/24 • • using tensioned textile or other non-resilient strips
- 23/26 • • Frames therefor; Connecting the springs to the frame
- 23/28 • • Tensioning devices therefor
- 23/30 • using combinations of springs covered by more than one of the groups A47C 23/02, A47C 23/04, A47C 23/06 and A47C 23/12; Frames therefor
- 23/32 • • Combinations of nets with springs in compression; Frames therefor
- 23/34 • with provisions for giving extra support for the head or the legs
- 25/00 Unframed spring units specially adapted for sofas or beds**
- 25/02 • without additional connecting means between the springs

## A47D FURNITURE SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR CHILDREN (school benches or desks A47B 39/00, A47B 41/00)

### Subclass index

CHAIRS; BEDS OR CRADLES.....1/00, 11/00, 7/00, 9/00, 11/00  
 OTHER FURNITURE.....3/00, 5/00, 13/00  
 ACCESSORIES.....15/00

- 27/00 Stuffed or fluid mattresses specially adapted for chairs, beds or sofas** (arrangements for preventing bed-sores or for supporting patients with burns, e.g. mattresses specially adapted therefor, A61G 7/057; ready-made upholstery pads in general B68G 5/00; making mattresses B68G 7/00) [5]
- 27/04 • with spring inlays (A47C 27/20 takes precedence)
- 27/045 • • Attachment of spring inlays to coverings (upholstery attaching means A47C 31/02); Use of stiffening sheets, lattices or grids under spring inlays [2]
- 27/05 • • with foamed material in top, bottom, or side layers
- 27/06 • • Spring inlays
- 27/07 • • • Attaching, or interconnecting of, springs in spring inlays [2]
- 27/08 • Fluid mattresses (connecting valves to inflatable elastic bodies B60C 29/00) [5]
- 27/10 • • with two or more independently-fillable chambers [5]
- 27/12 • with fibrous inlays, e.g. made of wool, of cotton
- 27/14 • with foamed material inlays
- 27/15 • • consisting of two or more layers (A47C 27/16 takes precedence) [2]
- 27/16 • • reinforced with sheet-like elements, e.g. profiled
- 27/18 • • in combination with inflatable bodies
- 27/20 • • with springs moulded in, or situated in openings in foamed material
- 27/22 • with both fibrous and foamed material inlays

- 29/00 Nets for protection against insects in connection with chairs or beds** (insect nets for animals A01K 13/00; insect nets as travelling equipment A45F 3/52); **Bed canopies**
- 31/00 Details or accessories for chairs, beds, or the like, not provided for in other groups of this subclass, e.g. upholstery fasteners, mattress protectors, stretching devices for mattress nets**
- 31/02 • Upholstery attaching means (quilting, quilting means, fastening, fixing or finishing upholstery B68G 7/00)
- 31/04 • • Clamps for attaching flat elastic strips or flat meandering springs to frames
- 31/06 • • • for attaching flat meandering springs
- 31/08 • Mattress hand-straps
- 31/10 • Loose furniture covers
- 31/11 • • for chairs [2]
- 31/12 • Means, e.g. measuring means, for adapting chairs, beds or mattresses to the shape or weight of persons (body measuring means for clothing manufacture A41H 1/00) [4]

- 1/00 Children's chairs** (chairs generally A47C; vehicle seats for children B60N 2/26)
- 1/02 • Foldable chairs

- 1/04 • convertible from a high chair to a low one by reversing
- 1/06 • convertible to a push chair

1/08	• convertible to a rocking chair	11/02	• Chairs convertible into children's chairs
1/10	• capable of being suspended from, or attached to, tables or other articles	<b>13/00</b>	<b>Other nursery furniture</b> (auxiliary or portable toilet seats for children A47K 13/06)
<b>3/00</b>	<b>Children's tables</b>	13/02	• Baby-carriers; Carry-cots
<b>5/00</b>	<b>Dressing-tables for children</b> (chests of drawers A47B 67/00)	13/04	• Apparatus for helping babies to walk; Baby walkers or strollers (wheeled walking aids for patients or disabled persons A61H 3/04)
<b>7/00</b>	<b>Children's beds</b> (beds in general A47C)	13/06	• Children's pens
7/01	• with adjustable parts, e.g. for adapting the length to the growth of the children	13/08	• Devices for use in guiding or supporting children, e.g. safety harness
7/02	• • with side wall that can be lowered	13/10	• Rocking-chairs (in general A47C 3/02; rocking horses A63G 15/00); Swings (in general A63G 9/00)
7/03	• • with adjustably-mounted mattresses	<b>15/00</b>	<b>Accessories for children's furniture, e.g. safety belts, baby-bottle holders</b> (holders for bottles for medicinal feeding A61J 9/06; safety belts or body harnesses, in general A62B 35/00; safety belts or body harnesses in land vehicles B60R 22/00; harnessing in aircraft B64D 25/06) [4]
7/04	• capable of being suspended from, or attached to, window frames or other articles	15/02	• Bed-cover holders preventing babies from throwing-off the bed covers
<b>9/00</b>	<b>Cradles</b>		
9/02	• with rocking mechanisms (devices for moving perambulators to and fro B62B 9/22)		
9/04	• • with disconnectable rockers		
<b>11/00</b>	<b>Children's furniture convertible into other kinds of furniture, e.g. children's chairs or benches convertible into beds</b> (convertible furniture in general A47B 85/00)		
<b>A47F</b>	<b>SPECIAL FURNITURE, FITTINGS, OR ACCESSORIES FOR SHOPS, STOREHOUSES, BARS, RESTAURANTS, OR THE LIKE; PAYING COUNTERS</b>		

### Subclass index

FURNITURE AND FITTINGS CHARACTERISED BY THEIR CONSTRUCTION.....1/00, 3/00, 5/00, 9/00, 11/00  
 FURNITURE AND FITTINGS ADAPTED TO PARTICULAR ARTICLES OR PRODUCTS.....7/00  
 FURNITURE OR INSTALLATIONS ADAPTED TO PARTICULAR TYPES OF SERVICE SYSTEMS.....10/00  
 ACCESSORIES FOR SHOPS, STORES, OR BARS; DUMMIES OR BUSTS.....13/00, 8/00

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Racks for dispensing merchandise</b> (racks in general A47B; storing means for workshops B25H); <b>Containers for dispensing merchandise</b> (show or display aspects A47F 3/00; for workshop fittings B25H 3/00; containers in general B65D; coin-freed dispensers G07F)	3/04	• air-conditioned, refrigerated (refrigerators F25D; heating arrangements specially adapted for transparent or reflecting areas H05B 3/84)
1/02	• for granulated or powdered materials	3/06	• with movable or removable shelves
1/03	• • Dispensing means	3/08	• with arrangements for continuously or intermittently moving the merchandise
1/035	• • • having measuring devices	3/10	• Rotary showcases or show cabinets
1/04	• Containers with arrangements for dispensing articles	3/11	• • having mechanical drive
1/06	• • dispensing from top	3/12	• Clamps or other devices for supporting, fastening, or connecting glass plates
1/08	• • dispensing from bottom	3/14	• Display trays (packing boxes used subsequently as display trays B65D)
1/10	• • • having mechanical dispensing means	<b>5/00</b>	<b>Show stands, hangers, or shelves characterised by their constructional features</b>
1/12	• • dispensing from the side of an approximately horizontal stack	5/01	• made of tubes or wire (foldable or adjustable A47F 5/13)
1/14	• Containers adapted to stacking or to be combined with, or combined to form, a stand	5/02	• Rotary display stands
1/16	• Containers characterised by being rotatable	5/025	• • having mechanical drive, e.g. turntables (A47F 5/03 takes precedence)
1/18	• Combinations of racks and shop vending jars	5/03	• • with horizontal rotation axis
<b>3/00</b>	<b>Showcases or show cabinets</b>	5/04	• Stands with a central pillar, e.g. tree type
3/02	• with dispensing arrangements (coin-freed G07F)	5/05	• • with separate containers rotatable around the pillar
3/022	• • dispensing from top	5/06	• • adjustable
3/024	• • dispensing from bottom	5/08	• secured to the wall, ceiling, or the like; Wall-bracket display devices
3/026	• • • having mechanical dispensing means	5/10	• Adjustable or foldable display stands

## A47F

- 5/11 • • made of cardboard, paper, or the like (A47F 5/12 takes precedence)
- 5/12 • • Tilttable stands
- 5/13 • • made of tubes or wire (A47F 5/12 takes precedence)
- 5/14 • Tubular connecting elements for wire stands
- 5/16 • Platform type show stands with flat, inclined, or curved upper surface
- 7/00 Show stands, hangers, or shelves, adapted for particular articles or materials**
- 7/02 • for jewellery, dentures, watches, eye-glasses, lenses, or the like
- 7/024 • • with provisions for preventing unauthorised removal
- 7/03 • • of box shape; Adaptations of boxes to display purposes
- 7/04 • for tyres; for wheels
- 7/06 • for hats
- 7/08 • for shoes
- 7/10 • for hosiery
- 7/12 • for ties (household necktie holders A47G 25/74); for collars
- 7/14 • for pictures, e.g. in combination with books or seed-bags
- 7/16 • for carpets; for wallpaper; for textile materials
- 7/17 • • in rolls or rolled tapes
- 7/18 • • for clothing materials (A47F 7/17 takes precedence) [3]
- 7/19 • for garments (for hosiery A47F 7/10; for ties or collars A47F 7/12; dummies, busts, or the like A47F 8/00; wardrobes with garment-holders A47B 61/00; household implements used in connection with wearing apparel or dress holders A47G 25/00)
- 7/22 • • for shirts
- 7/24 • • Clothes racks
- 7/26 • • • extensible from a showcase
- 7/28 • for containers, e.g. flasks, bottles
- 7/30 • for furniture, e.g. beds, mattresses
- 8/00 Dummies, busts, or the like, e.g. for displaying garments** (tailors' dummies A41H 5/00)
- 8/02 • Wire figures; Contour figures for displaying garments
- 9/00 Shop, bar, bank or like counters** (showcases or show cabinets A47F 3/00; safety transaction partitions, e.g. movable pay plates, E05G 7/00)
- 9/02 • Paying counters
- 9/04 • • Check-out counters, e.g. for self-service stores [3]
- 10/00 Furniture or installations specially adapted to particular types of service systems, not otherwise provided for** (conveyer aspects B65G; building aspects E04H; coin-freed apparatus G07F) [3]
- 10/02 • for self-service type systems, e.g. supermarkets (A47F 10/06 takes precedence; hand-carts B62B; baskets B65D) [3]
- 10/04 • • for storing or handling self-service hand-carts or baskets [3]
- 10/06 • for restaurant service systems (table equipment A47G) [3]
- 11/00 Arrangements in shop windows or showcases**
- 11/02 • Removable walls; Pillars; Special curtains or the like
- 11/04 • Special arrangements of mirrors or the like
- 11/06 • Means for bringing about special optical effects
- 11/08 • • Non-reflecting shop-windows
- 11/10 • • Arrangements of light sources
- 13/00 Shop or like accessories** (devices for drawing-off and cutting paper from a roll B65H; movably-mounted ladders E06C 9/06)
- 13/04 • Twine holders or cutters
- 13/06 • Reaching devices (having gripping means B25J)
- 13/08 • Hand implements, e.g. grocers' scoops, ladles, paper-bag holders

## A47G HOUSEHOLD OR TABLE EQUIPMENT (book-ends A47B 65/00; knives B26B)

### Note(s)

This subclass covers equipment for similar use in hotels, dressing rooms, vehicles, or the like, not otherwise provided for.

### Subclass index

DECORATIVE EQUIPMENT.....	1/00-7/00, 33/00
BEDDING; TABLE LINEN.....	9/00, 11/00
TABLE EQUIPMENT.....	19/00-23/00
SUPPORTS, HOLDERS, CONTAINERS, IMPLEMENTS	
for wearing apparel.....	25/00
for household use.....	29/00
FLOOR FABRICS.....	27/00
RELIGIOUS OR RITUAL EQUIPMENT.....	33/00
OTHER EQUIPMENT.....	35/00

- 
- 1/00 Mirrors** (hand, pocket, or shaving mirrors A45D 42/00; as optical elements G02B 5/08); **Picture frames or the like**
  - 1/02 • Mirrors used as equipment
  - 1/04 • • Multi-part mirrors
  - 1/06 • Picture frames (making from paper B31D)
  - 1/08 • • adjustable
  - 1/10 • • Corner clips or corner-connecting appliances for frames
  - 1/12 • Frames or housings for storing medals, badges, or the like
  - 1/14 • Photograph stands
  - 1/16 • Devices for hanging or supporting pictures, mirrors, or the like



- 1/17 • • using adhesives, suction or magnetism
- 1/18 • • Picture loops or the like
- 1/20 • • Picture hooks; X-hooks (plugs or hooks for general use F16B 13/00, F16B 45/00)
- 1/21 • • • with clamping action (in general F16B 2/00)
- 1/22 • • Pin plates
- 1/24 • • Appliances for adjusting pictures, mirrors, or the like, into a desired position, especially inclined
- 3/00 Removable ornamental heads for nails, screws, or the like** (specially shaped, non-removable heads for nails F16B 15/02, for screws F16B 23/00)
- 5/00 Screens** (shower screens A47K 3/30; shutters closing an opening E06B 9/02; fly-screens E06B 9/52); **Draught-deflectors**
- 5/02 • Roll-up screens
- 5/04 • Fire screens
- 7/00 Flower holders or the like** (flower holders worn on garments A45F 5/08)
- 7/02 • Devices for supporting flower-pots or cut flowers (flower-pots, holders for flower-pots in greenhouses A01G)
- 7/03 • • Needle cushions or needle plates for supporting flowers in pots or vases
- 7/04 • • Flower tables; Stands or hangers, e.g. baskets, for flowers (stands for use during growing of flowers A01G)
- 7/06 • • Flower vases
- 7/07 • • • Guiding means for flowers in vases, e.g. perforated covers
- 7/08 • • Covers for flower-pots
- 9/00 Bed-covers; Counterpanes; Travelling rugs; Sleeping rugs; Sleeping bags; Pillows** (pillows specially adapted for preventing snoring A61F 5/56)
- 9/02 • Bed linen; Blankets; Counterpanes (sheets specially adapted for use as or with stretchers for patients or invalids A61G 1/01) [5]
- 9/04 • • with fastening strips (haberdashery in general A44B)
- 9/06 • Travelling rugs; Sleeping rugs
- 9/08 • Sleeping bags
- 9/10 • Pillows (pillow holders A47C 21/00) [7]
- 11/00 Table linen**

#### **Table devices or equipment**

##### **19/00 Table service**

- 19/02 • Plates, dishes or the like
- 19/03 • • for using only once, e.g. made of paper
- 19/04 • • Plates with detachable waste receptacles
- 19/06 • • Plates with integral holders for spoons, glasses, or the like
- 19/08 • • Plate-holders (holders for kitchen pots A47J 45/10)
- 19/10 • • • Devices for securing plates to the table
- 19/12 • Vessels or pots for table use
- 19/14 • • Coffee or tea pots (filters, strainers A47J 31/06)
- 19/16 • • Tea infusers, e.g. infusing bags, egg-shaped infusers (for using only once, e.g. made of paper, B65D, e.g. disposable containers or packages B65D 85/804)
- 19/18 • • Containers for delivering jam, mustard, or the like (soap deliverers A47K 5/06)

- 19/20 • Tea or coffee pot cosies
- 19/22 • Drinking vessels or saucers used for table service (glass or drinking-vessel underlays A47G 23/03)
- 19/23 • • of stackable type
- 19/24 • Shakers for salt, pepper, sugar, or the like
- 19/26 • Butter or cheese dishes or covers, with or without cooling or heating devices; Protective covers for food containers
- 19/28 • Egg-cups; Openers for boiled eggs (egg-openers as domestic appliances A47J 43/14)
- 19/30 • Other containers or devices used as table equipment
- 19/32 • • Food containers with dispensing devices for bread, rolls, sugar, or the like; Food containers with movable covers (used as shop fittings A47F)
- 19/34 • • • dispensing a certain quantity of powdered or granulated foodstuffs, e.g. sugar [2]
- 21/00 Table-ware** (crumb trays A47L 13/52; table knives B26B)
- 21/02 • Forks; Forks with ejectors; Combined forks and spoons; Salad servers
- 21/04 • Spoons; Pastry servers
- 21/06 • Combined or separable sets of table-service utensils; Oyster knives with openers; Fish servers with means for removing bones (kitchen equipment A47J)
- 21/08 • Serving devices for one-handed persons
- 21/10 • Sugar tongs; Asparagus tongs; Other food tongs
- 21/12 • Toothpick holders
- 21/14 • Knife racks or stands; Holders for table utensils attachable to plates
- 21/16 • Table-cloth or napkin holders
- 21/18 • Drinking straws or the like (for therapeutic purposes A61J 15/00)
- 23/00 Other table equipment**
- 23/02 • Glass or bottle holders
- 23/03 • Underlays for glasses or drinking-vessels [2]
- 23/032 • • made of paper, board, or the like, e.g. beer mats
- 23/04 • Containers with means for keeping food cool or hot (for butter or cheese A47G 19/26)
- 23/06 • Serving trays (service tables A47B 31/00)
- 23/08 • Food-conveying devices for tables; Movable or rotary food-serving devices
- 23/10 • Devices for counting or marking the number of consumptions (on beverage-dispensing apparatus B65D, B67D; counting in general G06M)
- 23/12 • • Consumption counters combined with table-ware
- 23/14 • • • combined with underlays, e.g. for glasses
- 23/16 • • • combined with drinking vessels or with lids therefor

#### **Dwelling equipment**

- 25/00 Household implements used in connection with wearing apparel; Dress, hat or umbrella holders** (wardrobes A47B 61/00) [4]
- 25/02 • Dress holders; Dress suspending devices; Clothes-hanger assemblies; Clothing lifters (clothing or suit hangers A47G 25/14; clothing holders with locking devices E05B 69/00) [4]
- 25/06 • • Clothes hooks; Clothes racks; Garment-supporting stands with swingable or extending arms (with lockable hooks E05B 69/02)
- 25/08 • • Portable pocket clothes-holders attachable to trees, walls, tables, or the like
- 25/10 • Hat holders; Hat racks

- 25/12 • Cane or umbrella stands or holders
- 25/14 • Clothing hangers, e.g. suit hangers (A47G 25/60 takes precedence; wardrobes with extensible garment holders A47B 61/02) [4]
- 25/16 • • for complete outfits (A47G 25/40, A47G 25/44 take precedence) [4]
- 25/18 • • for two or more similar garments, e.g. constructed to connect to, or support, a similar hanger [4]
- 25/20 • • with devices for preserving the shape of the clothes [4]
- 25/22 • • specially adapted for furs [4]
- 25/24 • • made of wire (A47G 25/42, A47G 25/46, A47G 25/52, A47G 25/64, A47G 25/70 take precedence) [4]
- 25/26 • • • specially adapted to prevent slipping-off of the clothes. e.g. with non-slip surfaces (A47G 25/30 takes precedence) [4]
- 25/28 • • Hangers characterised by their shape [4]
- 25/30 • • • to prevent slipping-off of the clothes [4]
- 25/32 • • • involving details of the hook (A47G 25/34, A47G 25/38 take precedence) [4]
- 25/34 • • • with hook and hanger made in one piece (A47G 25/36 takes precedence) [4]
- 25/36 • • • characterised by the selection of the material, e.g. paper, board, plastics, glass [4]
- 25/38 • • • • Hook mountings therefor [4]
- 25/40 • • Collapsible hangers [4]
- 25/42 • • • made of wire [4]
- 25/44 • • Slidable hangers [4]
- 25/46 • • • made of wire [4]
- 25/48 • • Hangers with clamps or the like, e.g. for trousers or skirts [4]
- 25/50 • • • Hooks on hangers for supporting trousers or skirts [4]
- 25/52 • • • made of wire [4]
- 25/54 • Dust- or moth-proof garment bags, e.g. with suit hangers [4]
- 25/56 • • Devices for inserting clothes [4]
- 25/58 • • Moth-proof bags with provisions for pesticides or pest repellants [4]
- 25/60 • Hangers having provision for perfumes or for pesticides or pest repellants, e.g. for storing in moth-proof bags [4]
- 25/62 • Trouser or skirt stretchers or tensioners of the hanger type (with application of heat or steam D06F) [4]
- 25/64 • • made of wire [4]
- 25/66 • Trouser-stretchers with creasing or expanding devices (with application of heat or steam D06F) [4]
- 25/68 • • stretching in longitudinal direction [4]
- 25/70 • • made of wire [4]
- 25/72 • Garment-pressing devices (hot pressing apparatus or machines D06F) [4]
- 25/74 • Necktie holders [4]
- 25/76 • Necktie-stretching devices (with application of heat or steam D06F) [4]
- 25/78 • Necktie-pressing devices, e.g. combined with holding devices (hot-pressing apparatus D06F) [4]
- 25/80 • Devices for putting-on or removing boots or shoes, e.g. boot-hooks, boot-jacks (shoe buttoners A47G 25/92) [4]
- 25/82 • • Shoe horns [4]
- 25/84 • • Shoe benches [4]
- 25/86 • • • with boot-pulling devices [4]
- 25/88 • • Devices for tucking ends of laces inside shoes or boots [4]
- 25/90 • • Devices for domestic use for assisting in putting-on or pulling-off clothing, e.g. stockings or trousers [4]
- 25/92 • • Shoe or collar buttoners; Bodkins; Glove hooks [4]
- 27/00 **Floor fabrics; Fastenings therefor** (woven fabrics D03D; non-woven fabrics D04H)
- 27/02 • Carpets; Stair runners; Bedside rugs; Foot mats (mat-like foot scrapers A47L 23/22)
- 27/04 • Carpet fasteners; Carpet-expanding devices
- 27/06 • Stair rods; Stair-rod fasteners (curtain rods A47H 1/02)
- 29/00 **Supports, holders, or containers for household use, not provided for in groups A47G 1/00-A47G 27/00 or A47G 33/00** (for fastening kitchen utensils A47J 45/00; for drying towels A47K 10/04; stands, racks, or the like for airing beds, garments, or the like, clothes, drying devices D06F 57/00)
- 29/02 • Wall boards (shelves A47B); Supporting brackets or clamps therefor
- 29/06 • Paper baskets (refuse receptacles B65F 1/00)
- 29/08 • Holders for articles of personal use in general, e.g. brushes
- 29/087 • Devices for fastening household utensils, or the like, to tables, walls, or the like [4]
- 29/093 • Devices for securing receptacles to tables, or the like [4]
- 29/10 • Key holders; Key boards (key cases A45C 11/32)
- 29/12 • Mail or newspaper receptacles, e.g. letter-boxes; Openings in doors or the like for delivering mail or newspapers (A47G 29/14 takes precedence; chutes for mail in buildings B65G 11/04) [1, 2006.01]
- 29/122 • • Parts, details, or accessories, e.g. signalling devices, lamps, devices for leaving messages
- 29/124 • • • Appliances to prevent unauthorised removal of contents
- 29/126 • • • Lids for access slits
- 29/14 • Deposit receptacles for food, e.g. breakfast, milk; Similar receptacles for large parcels with appliances for preventing unauthorised removal of the deposited articles [1, 2006.01]
- 29/16 • • Combinations with letter-boxes
- 29/18 • • Clamping devices for holding bottles near doors or windows (preventing unauthorised removal A47G 29/24)
- 29/20 • • with appliances for preventing unauthorised removal of the deposited articles
- 29/22 • • • having rotatable or reciprocable parts
- 29/24 • • • Clamping devices for holding bottles near doors or windows
- 29/26 • • • • freeing the bottle only on opening door or window
- 29/28 • • • having a receptacle inside the house and a delivery pipe or the like passing through a door, wall, or the like, e.g. for delivering milk
- 29/30 • • Accessories, e.g. signalling devices, lamps, means for leaving messages
- 33/00 **Religious or ritual equipment in dwelling or for general use**
- 33/02 • Altars; Religious shrines; Fonts for holy water; Crucifixes
- 33/04 • Christmas trees (lighting devices therefor F21S; candle holders F21V 35/00) [1, 7]
- 33/06 • • Artificial Christmas trees
- 33/08 • • Christmas tree decorations

33/10 • • Fastening devices or clamps for Christmas tree decorations

33/12 • • Christmas tree stands

### 35/00 Other dwelling equipment

**A47H FURNISHINGS FOR WINDOWS OR DOORS** (concerned with the functioning of the door or window E05; roller blinds E06B; special arrangements or measures in connection with doors or windows, e.g. for ventilation or sealing, E06B 7/00)

#### Subclass index

CURTAINS.....	21/00, 23/00
SUSPENDING CURTAINS.....	1/00, 2/00, 7/00, 13/00, 15/00, 19/00
OPERATING CURTAINS.....	3/00, 5/00, 11/00, 15/00
OTHER WINDOW OR DOOR FURNISHINGS.....	27/00, 99/00

#### Curtains; Draperies

##### **1/00 Curtain suspension devices**

- 1/02 • Curtain rods
- 1/022 • • extensible
- 1/03 • • pivotably mounted for rotation with doors or windows
- 1/04 • Curtain rails
- 1/06 • • fixed
- 1/08 • • extensible
- 1/10 • Means for mounting curtain rods or rails
- 1/102 • • for mounting curtain rods (A47H 1/12, A47H 1/14 take precedence)
- 1/104 • • for mounting curtain rails (A47H 1/12, A47H 1/14 take precedence)
- 1/12 • • Adjustable mountings
- 1/122 • • • for curtain rods
- 1/124 • • • for curtain rails
- 1/13 • • Brackets or adjustable mountings for both roller blinds and drawables curtains
- 1/14 • • Brackets for supporting rods or rails
- 1/142 • • • for supporting rods
- 1/144 • • • for supporting rails
- 1/16 • • Holders made of wire for curtain rods
- 1/18 • Other curtain suspension devices, e.g. wire, cord
- 1/19 • • Devices for mounting the wire, cord, or the like

##### **2/00 Pelmets or the like**

- 2/02 • extensible

##### **3/00 Fastening, clamping, or guiding devices for the bands or cords of curtains or the like**

- 3/02 • Fastening, clamping, or guiding devices for bands or cords
- 3/04 • • Automatic cord clamps
- 3/06 • • Non-automatic cord clamps
- 3/08 • • Cord-tensioning devices for curtains with two cords
- 3/10 • • Cord guides
- 3/12 • • Belt strap holders; Belt strap rollers; Belt strap tensioning devices

##### **5/00 Devices for drawing draperies, curtains, or the like**

- 5/02 • Devices for opening and closing curtains
- 5/03 • • Devices with guiding means and push or draw rods

- 5/032 • • Devices with guiding means and draw cords (cord pulleys A47H 11/06)

- 5/04 • • Devices with lazy-tongs

- 5/06 • • Devices with screw-threads on rods or spindles

- 5/08 • Devices for drawing draperies attached to the doors or windows

- 5/09 • • Devices for swinging the curtains away from doors or windows

- 5/14 • Apparatus for lowering curtains or the like

##### **7/00 Devices for putting-up and removing curtain rods**

- 7/02 • Curtain rods, capable of being lowered

##### **11/00 Curtain cord appurtenances**

- 11/02 • Engaging-pieces on curtain cords for operating curtains

- 11/04 • End attachment clips, e.g. for tassels

- 11/06 • Cord pulleys

##### **13/00 Fastening curtains on curtain rods or rails**

- 13/01 • by clamps; by clamps attached to hooks or rings

- 13/02 • by rings, e.g. with additional runners (A47H 13/12 takes precedence)

- 13/04 • by hooks, e.g. with additional runners (A47H 13/12 takes precedence; by hooks specially adapted to pleat belts A47H 13/16)

- 13/06 • by pins, e.g. with additional runners (A47H 13/12 takes precedence)

- 13/10 • by rail rollers

- 13/12 • by rail gliders

- 13/14 • Means for forming pleats

- 13/16 • • Pleat belts; Hooks specially adapted for pleat belts

##### **15/00 Runners or gliders for supporting curtains on rails or rods**

- 15/02 • Runners

- 15/04 • Gliders

##### **19/00 Rosettes for holding curtains; Festoon holders**

##### **21/00 Curtain shields**

##### **23/00 Curtains; Draperies** (shower curtain arrangements A47K 3/38)

- 23/01 • Bottom bars for stretching hanging curtains; Magnets, slide fasteners, or the like to improve closing of curtains

- 23/02 • Shapes of curtains; Selection of particular materials for curtains [2]

## A47H

- 23/04 • • Shapes of curtains
- 23/05 • • • of chain or chain mail; of free-hanging strips or lamellae
- 23/06 • • • Systems consisting of two or more co-operating curtains with transparent or perforated parts behind each other
- 23/08 • • Selection of particular materials
- 23/10 • • • the material being plastics or the like
- 23/12 • • • the material being paper or cardboard

- 23/14 • • • the material being woven textile with reinforcing bars, e.g. made of wood

**27/00 Boxes, shelves, holders or similar supports for holding flowers** (windows adapted to carry plants E06B 7/28)

**99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2009.01]**

**A47J KITCHEN EQUIPMENT; COFFEE MILLS; SPICE MILLS; APPARATUS FOR MAKING BEVERAGES** (disintegrating, e.g. mincing, B02C; severing, e.g. cutting, slicing, B26B, B26D) [6]

### Subclass index

#### IMPLEMENTS OR MACHINES FOR PREPARING FOOD

- For peeling or paring; for straining..... 17/00, 19/00
- For shaping butter..... 9/00
- For preparing fruit..... 17/00-25/00
- Coffee mills, spice mills..... 42/00
- Other implements or machines..... 43/00, 44/00

#### COOKING; APPARATUS FOR MAKING BEVERAGES; THERMALLY-INSULATED VESSELS

- Cooking-vessels for general use..... 27/00
- Egg-cookers; Camp cookers..... 29/00, 33/00
- Apparatus for making beverages..... 31/00
- Details of cooking-vessels..... 36/00
- Baking, roasting, grilling, frying..... 37/00
- Cooking chambers, warming cupboards..... 39/00
- Thermally-insulated vessels..... 41/00

FASTENING OR GRIPPING UTENSILS..... 45/00

CONTAINERS, STANDS, CUTTING-BOARDS..... 47/00

**9/00 Apparatus or utensils for shaping butter or the like** (for use in dairies A01J 19/00, A01J 21/00; moulding plastic material in general B29C)

**17/00 Household peeling, stringing, or paring implements or machines** (for foodstuffs in bulk A23N)

- 17/02 • Hand devices for scraping or peeling vegetables or the like
- 17/04 • • Citrus fruit peelers
- 17/06 • Devices for stringing beans
- 17/08 • Asparagus-peelers
- 17/10 • Vegetable or fruit grippers or holders for use while peeling
- 17/14 • Machines for peeling (universal kitchen machines A47J 43/04)
- 17/16 • • Peeling machines with rotary fruit-holding spindles and fixed or movable peeler blades
- 17/18 • • with scraping discs or rotors
- 17/20 • • with brushes

**19/00 Household machines for straining foodstuffs; Household implements for mashing or straining foodstuffs** (for foodstuffs in bulk A23N)

- 19/02 • Citrus fruit squeezers; Other fruit juice extracting devices
- 19/04 • Household implements for mashing potatoes or other foodstuffs
- 19/06 • Juice presses for vegetables

**21/00 Devices for removing stalks from fruit** (machines A23N 15/02)

**23/00 Devices for stoning fruit** (machines for stoning fruit in bulk A23N 3/00, A23N 4/00)

**25/00 Devices for coring fruit** (machines for coring fruit in bulk A23N 3/00, A23N 4/12)

#### Cooking; Apparatus for making beverages

**27/00 Cooking-vessels** (A47J 29/00-A47J 33/00 take precedence) [2]

- 27/02 • with enlarged heating surfaces
- 27/022 • • with enlarged bottom
- 27/024 • • with liquid-heating tubes extending outside the vessel
- 27/026 • • with conduits through the vessel for circulating heating gases
- 27/04 • for cooking food in steam; Devices for extracting fruit juice by means of steam
- 27/05 • • Tier steam-cookers, i.e. with steam-tight joints between cooking-vessels stacked while in use (tier cooking-vessels in general A47J 27/13)
- 27/06 • Steam-heated kettles for domestic use
- 27/08 • Pressure cookers; Lids or locking devices specially adapted therefor
- 27/082 • • with inserts for cooking different foods separately at the same time; Inserts therefor (inserts for cooking-vessels in general A47J 36/16)
- 27/084 • • with adjustable volume; Tier pressure-cookers
- 27/086 • • with built-in heating means (adaptations of automatic switches for the heating means A47J 27/62)

- 27/088 • • adapted to high-frequency heating
- 27/09 • • Safety devices
- 27/092 • • • Devices for automatically releasing pressure before opening
- 27/10 • Cooking-vessels with water-bath arrangements for domestic use
- 27/12 • Multiple-unit cooking-vessels
- 27/122 • • with adaptation of shape to that of adjacent vessels for forming a unit, e.g. sector-shaped
- 27/13 • • Tier cooking-vessels
- 27/14 • Cooking-vessels for use in hotels, restaurants, or canteens
- 27/16 • • heated by steam
- 27/17 • • • with steam jacket
- 27/18 • • heated by water-bath
- 27/20 • Ham-boilers
- 27/21 • Water-boiling vessels, e.g. kettles
- 27/212 • • with signalling means, e.g. whistling kettles (signalling milk-boiling vessels A47J 27/57)
- 27/56 • Preventing boiling over, e.g. of milk (appliances for preventing or destroying foam in dairy apparatus for treating milk A01J 11/02; preventing foaming in boiling in general B01B 1/02)
- 27/57 • • Milk-boiling vessels with water or steam jackets, e.g. with signalling means
- 27/58 • • Cooking utensils with channels or covers collecting overflowing liquid
- 27/60 • • Funnel-like inserts; Grooved plates to be placed on the bottom of cooking utensils
- 27/62 • • by devices for automatically controlling the heat supply by switching off heaters or for automatically lifting the cooking-vessels
- 27/64 • • • for automatically lifting the cooking-vessels (devices for automatically lifting eggs from boiling water A47J 29/04)
- 29/00 Egg-cookers**
- 29/02 • for eggs or poached eggs; Time-controlled cookers
- 29/04 • • Cookers for eggs with devices for automatically lifting the eggs from the boiling water
- 29/06 • Grasping devices for eggs; Supporting devices for eggs during boiling
- 31/00 Apparatus for making beverages** (household machines or implements for straining foodstuffs A47J 19/00; preparation of non-alcoholic beverages, e.g. by adding ingredients to fruit or vegetable juices, A23L 2/00; coffee or tea pots A47G 19/14; tea infusers A47G 19/16; dispensing beverages on draught B67D 1/00; brewing of beer C12C; preparation of wine or other alcoholic beverages C12G) [5]
- 31/02 • Coffee-making machines with removable extraction cups, to be placed on top of drinking-vessels, e.g. cafe filtre (filters A47J 31/06)
- 31/04 • Coffee-making apparatus with rising pipes
- 31/043 • • Vacuum-type coffee-making apparatus with rising pipes in which hot water is passed to the upper bowl in which the ground coffee is placed and subsequently the heat source is cut-off and the water is sucked through the filter by the vacuum in the lower bowl
- 31/047 • • • with automatic cut-off of heat supply
- 31/053 • • with repeated circulation of the extract through the filter
- 31/057 • • with water container separated from beverage container, the hot water passing the filter only once
- 31/06 • Filters or strainers for coffee or tea makers
- 31/08 • • Paper filter inlays therefor
- 31/10 • Coffee-making apparatus, in which the brewing vessel is placed above or in the upper part of the beverage containers; Drip coffee-makers (A47J 31/02 takes precedence)
- 31/12 • • in which the vapour from the boiling water is raised above the filter and after condensing passes through the filter
- 31/14 • Coffee- or tea-making apparatus with filters placed in or behind pouring spouts
- 31/16 • Inverting coffee-making apparatus in which water is boiled in the lower part and the apparatus is subsequently inverted to pass the water through the filter
- 31/18 • Apparatus in which ground coffee or tea-leaves are immersed in the hot liquid in the beverage container (infusing bags A47G 19/16)
- 31/20 • • having immersible, e.g. rotatable, filters
- 31/22 • Centrifuges for producing filtered coffee (A47J 31/20 takes precedence)
- 31/24 • Coffee-making apparatus in which hot water is passed through the filter under pressure (A47J 31/043 takes precedence)
- 31/30 • • with hot water under steam pressure
- 31/32 • • with hot water under air pressure
- 31/34 • • with hot water under liquid pressure
- 31/36 • • • with mechanical pressure-producing means
- 31/38 • • • • operated by hand
- 31/40 • Beverage-making apparatus with dispensing means for adding a measured quantity of ingredients, e.g. coffee, water, sugar, cocoa, milk, tea
- 31/41 • • of liquid ingredients [5]
- 31/42 • Beverage-making apparatus with incorporated grinding or roasting means for coffee
- 31/44 • Parts or details of beverage-making apparatus (filters or strainers A47J 31/06)
- 31/46 • • Dispensing spouts, pumps, drain valves or like liquid transporting devices
- 31/48 • • Clips, rings, hooks, or like devices to support filter parts while not in use
- 31/50 • • Urns with devices for keeping beverages hot or cool
- 31/52 • • Alarm-clock-controlled mechanisms for coffee- or tea-making apparatus
- 31/54 • • Water boiling vessels
- 31/56 • • • having water-level controls; having temperature controls
- 31/58 • • Safety devices
- 31/60 • • Cleaning devices
- 33/00 Camp cooking devices without integral heating means** (travelling cookers with one burner A47J 36/26; other travelling cookers heated by petroleum, gasoline, spirit, or the like F24C)
- 36/00 Parts, details or accessories of cooking-vessels** (A47J 27/00-A47J 33/00 take precedence insofar as these parts, details or accessories are restricted to a particular kind of cooking-vessel provided for in a single one of those groups; heating devices for cooking-vessels in general F24) [2]
- 36/02 • Selection of specific materials, e.g. heavy bottoms with copper inlay or with insulating inlay
- 36/04 • • the materials being non-metallic
- 36/06 • Lids or covers for cooking-vessels (specially adapted for pressure cookers A47J 27/08)

36/08	• • for draining liquids from vessels	42/12	• having grinding discs
36/10	• • Lid-locking devices	42/14	• • hand driven
36/12	• • Devices for holding lids in open position on the container	42/16	• • mechanically driven
36/14	• Pouring-spouts, e.g. as parts separate from vessel (spouts in general B05B 1/22)	42/18	• • Adjusting mechanisms
36/16	• Inserts	42/20	• • Grinding discs
36/18	• • Boilers or utensils with sieves inserted therein, e.g. potato-cookers	42/22	• having pulverising beaters or rotary knives
36/20	• • Perforated bases or perforated containers to be placed inside a cooking utensil	42/24	• • hand driven
36/22	• • • Wire inserts (for deep fat fryers A47J 37/12)	42/26	• • mechanically driven
36/24	• Warming devices	42/28	• • Beaters or knives
36/26	• • Devices for warming vessels containing drinks or food, especially by means of burners; Travelling cookers, e.g. using petroleum or gasoline with one burner	42/30	• • having perforated container for the ground material; having sieves
36/28	• • Warming devices generating the heat by exothermic reactions, e.g. heat released by the contact of unslaked lime with water	42/32	• with other grinding or pulverising members
36/30	• • Devices for warming by making use of burning cartridges or other chemical substances	42/34	• • hand driven
36/32	• Time-controlled igniting mechanisms or alarm devices	42/36	• • mechanically driven
36/34	• Supports for cooking-vessels	42/38	• Parts or details
36/36	• Shields or jackets for cooking utensils minimising the radiation of heat, fastened or movably mounted	42/40	• • relating to discharge, receiving container or the like; Bag clamps, e.g. with means for actuating electric switches
36/38	• for withdrawing or condensing cooking vapours from cooking utensils (removing cooking fumes from domestic stoves or ranges F24C 15/20) [5]	42/42	• • • Drawers for receiving ground material
36/40	• Leak-stopping devices for repairing cooking-vessels	42/44	• • Automatic starting or stopping devices (bag clamps with means for actuating switches A47J 42/40); Warning devices
36/42	• Devices to prevent deposition of scale, i.e. fur, or the like	42/46	• • Driving mechanisms; Coupling to drives
<b>37/00</b>	<b>Baking; Roasting; Grilling; Frying</b> (bakers' ovens, non-domestic baking apparatus or equipment A21B; domestic stoves or ranges F24B, F24C)	42/48	• • Attachment of mills to tables, walls, or the like (attachment of household machines in general to tables, walls, or the like A47J 45/02)
37/01	• Vessels uniquely adapted for baking (for use in bakers' ovens A21B)	42/50	• • Supplying devices, e.g. funnels; Supply containers
37/04	• Roasting apparatus with movably-mounted food supports or with movable heating implements; Spits	42/52	• • Coffee mills combined with roasting devices (coffee-roasting devices <u>per se</u> A23N 12/00)
37/06	• Roasters; Grills, Sandwich grills	42/54	• • Cooling
37/07	• • Roasting devices for outdoor use; Barbecues	42/56	• • Safety devices
37/08	• • Bread-toasters (electric heating elements H05B)	<b>43/00</b>	<b>Implements for preparing or holding food, not provided for in other groups of this subclass</b>
37/10	• Frying-pans, including lids or basting devices	43/04	• Machines for domestic use not covered elsewhere, e.g. for grinding, mixing, stirring, kneading, emulsifying, whipping or beating foodstuffs, e.g. power-driven (food straining implements A47J 19/00; devices for grating A47J 43/25; multi-purpose machines A47J 44/00)
37/12	• Deep fat fryers, including apparatus specially adapted for frying fish	43/042	• • Mechanically-driven liquid-shakers
<hr/>		43/044	• • with tools driven from the top side
<b>39/00</b>	<b>Heat-insulated warming chambers; Cupboards with heating arrangements for warming kitchen utensils</b>	43/046	• • with tools driven from the bottom side
39/02	• Dish-warmers; Devices to keep food hot	43/06	• • with a plurality of interchangeable working units
<b>41/00</b>	<b>Thermally-insulated vessels, e.g. flasks, jugs, jars</b> (containers with thermal insulation in general B65D 81/38)	43/07	• • Parts or details, e.g. mixing tools, whipping tools
41/02	• Vacuum-jacket vessels, e.g. vacuum bottles	43/08	• • • Driving mechanisms
<b>42/00</b>	<b>Coffee mills; Spice mills</b> (as part of universal or multi-purpose machines A47J 43/04, A47J 44/00; grinding or pulverising in general B02C)	43/09	• • • • with fluid drive, e.g. by jets
42/02	• having grinding cones	43/10	• Egg-whisks; Cream-beaters, i.e. hand implements
42/04	• • hand driven	43/12	• Whipping by introducing a stream of gas
42/06	• • mechanically driven	43/14	• Devices for opening raw eggs or separating the contents thereof
42/08	• • Adjusting mechanisms	43/16	• Implements for introducing fat, bacon or the like into meat; Larding-pins
42/10	• • Grinding cones	43/18	• Holding or clamping devices for supporting fowl, venison, or other meat, or vegetables, during cooking or during subsequent cutting
		43/20	• Shapes for preparing foodstuffs, e.g. meat-patty moulding devices
		43/22	• Kitchen sifters
		43/24	• Devices for washing vegetables or the like
		43/25	• Devices for grating [2]
		43/26	• Nutcrackers (pliers B25B 7/00)
		43/27	• for mixing drinks; Hand-held shakers (mechanically driven A47J 43/042)

- 43/28 • Other culinary hand implements, e.g. spatulas, pincers, forks or like food holders, ladles, skimming ladles, cooking spoons; Spoon-holders attached to cooking pots (calibrated capacity measures for fluids or fluent solid material G01F 19/00; weighing spoons G01G 19/56)
- 44/00 Multi-purpose machines for preparing food**
- 44/02 • with provisions for drive either from top or from bottom, e.g. for separately-driven bowl
- 45/00 Devices for fastening or gripping kitchen utensils** (kitchen cabinets with provisions for attachment of kitchen implements or utensils A47B 77/00) **[4]**
- 45/02 • for fastening kitchen utensils to tables, walls, or the like (for household utensils A47G 29/087) **[4]**
- 45/06 • Handles for hollow-ware articles
- 45/07 • • of detachable type (separate handles A47J 45/10)
- 45/08 • • Heat-insulating handles (of detachable type A47J 45/07)
- 45/10 • Devices for gripping or lifting hot cooking utensils, e.g. pincers, separate pot handles, fabric or like pads (egg grasping devices A47J 29/06)
- 47/00 Kitchen containers, stands or the like, not provided for in other groups of this subclass** (containers in general B65D); **Cutting-boards, e.g. for bread** (with slicing devices B26D)
- 47/01 • with dispensing devices
- 47/02 • Closed containers for foodstuffs
- 47/04 • • for granulated foodstuffs
- 47/06 • • • with arrangements for keeping fresh
- 47/08 • • • for non-granulated foodstuffs
- 47/10 • • • with arrangements for keeping fresh
- 47/12 • • • Bread boxes
- 47/14 • Carriers for prepared human food (lunch boxes, picnic boxes, or the like A45C 11/20)
- 47/16 • Stands, or holders for kitchen articles (racks A47B)
- 47/18 • Pails for kitchen use
- 47/19 • • Edge protectors; Floor protectors
- 47/20 • Grids, racks, or other supports removably mounted in, on, or over sinks; Splash guards for sinks
- A47K SANITARY EQUIPMENT NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR** (connecting to water supply or waste pipe, sinks E03C; water-closets E03D); **TOILET ACCESSORIES** (cosmetic equipment A45D)

### Subclass index

TOILET FITTINGS.....	1/00-10/00
CLOSETS; ACCESSORIES THEREFOR.....	11/00, 10/00, 13/00
OTHER EQUIPMENT.....	17/00

- 1/00 Wash-stands; Appurtenances therefor** (devices for washing the hair or scalp A45D 19/00; basins used in manual washing or cleaning of crockery, table-ware, cooking-ware, or the like A47L 17/02; with appurtenances for curative purposes A61H)
- 1/02 • Portable toilet tables; Wash cabinets or stands (for automobiles B60R; for railway cars B61D; for ships B63B; for aircraft B64D; connected to waste pipe E03C)
- 1/04 • Basins (connected to waste pipe E03C 1/12); Jugs; Holding devices therefor
- 1/05 • • Holding devices for basins or jugs
- 1/06 • Replaceable hygienic linings or casings for wash-basins
- 1/08 • Accessories for toilet tables, e.g. glass plates, supports therefor (towel holders A47K 10/00)
- 1/09 • • Holders for drinking glasses, tooth brushes, hair brushes, or the like
- 1/10 • Detachable frames with hand basins mountable on baths
- 1/12 • Wash-basins attachable to sinks; Collapsible washing stands attachable to sinks (supports attachable to sinks in general A47J 47/20)
- 1/14 • Stoppers for wash-basins, baths, sinks, or the like
- 3/00 Baths; Showers; Appurtenances therefor** (for curative purposes A61H, A61M, e.g. bathing devices for special therapeutic or hygienic purposes A61H 33/00)
- 3/02 • Baths (combined with showers A47K 3/20; heatable F24H) **[1, 7]**
- 3/022 • • specially adapted for particular use, e.g. for washing the feet, for bathing in sitting position (collapsible baths A47K 3/062)
- 3/024 • • • specially adapted for use for children or babies
- 3/03 • • attachable to other baths, sinks, wash-basins, or the like (collapsible baths A47K 3/07)
- 3/034 • • • specially adapted for use for children or babies
- 3/04 • • Built-in baths
- 3/06 • • Collapsible baths
- 3/062 • • • specially adapted for particular use, e.g. for washing the feet, for bathing in sitting position
- 3/064 • • • • specially adapted for use for children or babies
- 3/07 • • • attachable to other basins, or the like
- 3/074 • • • • specially adapted for use for children or babies
- 3/08 • • Cabinet baths (shower cabinets A47K 3/30)
- 3/10 • Wave-producers or the like
- 3/12 • Separate seats or body supports (seats for chairs A47C 7/02)
- 3/14 • Replaceable separating walls for baths (sinks with separating walls E03C 1/18)
- 3/16 • Devices for fastening baths to floors or walls; Adjustable bath feet
- 3/162 • • Collapsible stands or supports for baths
- 3/164 • • • for child or baby baths
- 3/17 • • Adjustable bath feet
- 3/18 • combined with hand basins
- 3/20 • Baths combined with showers
- 3/26 • Bidets without upward spraying means (bidets with upward spraying means A61H 35/00, E03D 9/08) **[7]**

- 3/28 • Showers (combined with baths A47K 3/20; nozzles, spray heads B05B 1/00) [7]
- 3/30 • • Screens or cabinets [7]
- 3/32 • • • Collapsible cabinets [7]
- 3/34 • • • Slidable screens (A47K 3/36 takes precedence) [7]
- 3/36 • • • Articulated screens [7]
- 3/38 • • Curtain arrangements (curtains, curtain suspension devices A47H) [7]
- 3/40 • • Pans or trays [7]
- 4/00 Combinations of baths, showers, sinks, wash-basins, closets, or urinals, not covered by a single other group of this subclass**
- 5/00 Holders or dispensers for soap, toothpaste, or the like** (lather making devices for shaving A45D 27/02; specially adapted for shaving soap or cosmetics A45D 33/00-A45D 40/00)
  - 5/02 • Soap boxes or receptacles
  - 5/03 • • separate from wall or wash-stand
  - 5/04 • Other soap-cake holders
  - 5/05 • • having fixing devices for cakes of soap, e.g. clamps, pins, magnets
  - 5/06 • Dispensers for soap
  - 5/08 • • for solid soap
  - 5/09 • • • with means for scraping or grating
  - 5/10 • • for powdered soap
  - 5/12 • • for liquid or pasty soap
  - 5/122 • • • using squeeze bottles or the like
  - 5/13 • • • of invertible type
  - 5/14 • Foam or lather making devices
  - 5/16 • • with mechanical drive (food mixers A47J 43/04)
  - 5/18 • for both soap and toothpaste or the like; in combination with holders for drinking glasses, toothbrushes, or the like
- 7/00 Body washing or cleaning implements** (bathing devices for special therapeutic or hygienic purposes A61H 33/00; baths for specific parts of the body A61H 35/00)
  - 7/02 • Bathing sponges, brushes, gloves, or similar cleaning or rubbing implements (brushes in general A46B; sponges for domestic cleaning A47L 13/16; specially for massage A61H 7/00)
  - 7/03 • • containing soap or other cleaning ingredients, e.g. impregnated
  - 7/04 • Washing or cleaning devices, hand or mechanically operated
  - 7/06 • Washing devices for one-armed persons
  - 7/08 • Devices or hand implements for cleaning the buttocks
- 10/00 Body-drying implements; Toilet paper; Holders therefor**
  - 10/02 • Towels (made of paper A47K 10/16; woven fabrics D03D; non-woven fabrics D04H)
  - 10/04 • Towel racks; Towel rails; Towel rods; Towel rolls, e.g. rotatable
  - 10/06 • • combined with means for drying towels (A47K 10/30 takes precedence)
  - 10/08 • • characterised by being mounted on wash-basins, baths, or the like
  - 10/10 • • characterised by being mounted on cabinets, walls, doors, or the like
  - 10/12 • Grips, hooks, or the like for hanging-up towels
  - 10/14 • • Self-holding grips
- 10/16 • Paper towels; Toilet paper; Holders therefor (dispensers A47K 10/32)
- 10/18 • • Holders; Receptacles
- 10/20 • • • for piled sheets
- 10/22 • • • for rolled-up webs (drawing-off paper from a roll in general B65H)
- 10/24 • Towel dispensers; Toilet-paper dispensers (sheet or web dispensers in general B65H)
- 10/26 • • Mechanically-driven towel dispensers (A47K 10/28 takes precedence; for paper towels A47K 10/34)
- 10/28 • • dispensing a clean part and taking-up a soiled part, e.g. using rolls
- 10/30 • • • combined with washing and drying means for the soiled parts
- 10/32 • • Dispensers for paper towels or toilet-paper
- 10/34 • • • dispensing from a web, e.g. with mechanical dispensing means
  - 10/36 • • • • with cutting devices
  - 10/38 • • • • the web being rolled-up
  - 10/40 • • • • with extensible or collapsible roll supports
- 10/42 • • • dispensing from a store of single sheets, e.g. stacked
  - 10/44 • • • • with mechanical dispensing means
  - 10/46 • • • with means for storing soiled towels
- 10/48 • Drying by means of hot air (hair-drying devices A45D 20/00; curative hot-air baths A61H 33/06; electric heating elements H05B)
- 11/00 Closets without flushing** (closets with recirculation of bowl-cleaning fluid E03D 5/016); **Urinals without flushing** (urinals for bed-ridden persons A61G 9/00; for vehicles in general B60R; closets for railway-cars B61D; for ships B63B; for aircraft B64D; urinals with flushing arrangements E03D 13/00); **Chamber pots; Chairs with toilet conveniences or specially adapted for use with toilets** [5]
  - 11/02 • Dry closets, e.g. incinerator closets
  - 11/03 • • having means for adding powder, e.g. earth
  - 11/04 • Room closets; Chairs with toilet conveniences or specially adapted for use with toilets, e.g. night chairs [5]
  - 11/06 • Chamber-pots (bed pans or other sanitary devices for bed-ridden persons A61G 9/00)
  - 11/08 • Night cabinets or tables with closets or bidet equipment (bedside cabinets per se A47B 79/00)
  - 11/10 • Hand tools for cleaning the toilet bowl
  - 11/12 • Urinals without flushing
- 13/00 Seats or covers for all kinds of closets**
  - 13/02 • of plastic materials
  - 13/04 • Buffers for seats
  - 13/06 • Auxiliary or portable seats for children
  - 13/08 • Covers with urine funnels
  - 13/10 • Devices for raising and lowering (thereby controlling flushing valves E03D 5/04)
  - 13/12 • Hinges
  - 13/14 • Protecting covers for closet seats
    - 13/16 • • of single sheets of paper
    - 13/18 • • of paper webs
      - 13/20 • • • with cutting devices
      - 13/22 • • • rolled-up (A47K 13/20 takes precedence)
  - 13/24 • Parts or details not covered in, or of interest apart from, groups A47K 13/02-A47K 13/22



- |       |  |       |  |
|-------|--|-------|--|
| 13/26 | • • Mounting devices for seats or covers (hinges A47K 13/12)     | 17/00 | <b>Other equipment</b> (devices for receiving spittle A61J 19/00)  |
| 13/28 | • • Adjustably-mounted seats or covers                           | 17/02 | • Body supports, other than seats, for closets, e.g. handles, back-rests, foot-rests; Accessories for closets, e.g. reading tables |
| 13/30 | • • Seats having provisions for heating, deodorising or the like |       |  |

**A47L DOMESTIC WASHING OR CLEANING** (brushes A46B; cleaning quantities of bottles or of other hollow articles of one kind B08B 9/00; laundry D06F); **SUCTION CLEANERS IN GENERAL** (cleaning in general B08)

#### Note(s)

Machines or implements which can be used for cleaning windows, window shades, window screens, venetian blinds, as well as floors, carpets, furniture, walls, or wall coverings are classified in group A47L 11/00 or A47L 13/00.

#### Subclass index

CLEANING WINDOWS, THEIR SHADES, SCREENS, OR VENETIAN BLINDS.....	1/00, 3/00, 4/00
SUCTION CLEANERS.....	5/00, 7/00, 9/00
CLEANING FLOORS, CARPETS, FURNITURE OR WALLS.....	11/00, 13/00
CLEANING OR POLISHING HOUSEHOLD ARTICLES.....	15/00-21/00
CLEANING FOOTWEAR.....	23/00
OTHER DOMESTIC CLEANING DEVICES.....	25/00

#### Cleaning windows, window shades, window screens, venetian blinds

##### **1/00 Cleaning windows**

- 1/02 • Power-driven machines or devices
- 1/03 • • cleaning both sides of a window simultaneously
- 1/05 • • Hand apparatus with built-in electric motors [3]
- 1/06 • Hand implements (with built-in electric motors A47L 1/05) [3]
- 1/08 • • with provision for supplying liquids, e.g. cleaning agents (A47L 1/095, A47L 1/13, A47L 1/15 take precedence) [3]
- 1/09 • • for cleaning one side with access from the other side only [3]
- 1/095 • • • with provision for supplying liquids, e.g. cleaning agents [3]
- 1/12 • • for cleaning both sides simultaneously [3]
- 1/13 • • • with provision for supplying liquids, e.g. cleaning agents [3]
- 1/15 • • Cloths, sponges, pads, or the like, e.g. containing cleaning agents [3]
- 1/16 • Devices for defrosting window-panes (H05B 3/84 takes precedence) [5]

##### **3/00 Safety devices for use in window-cleaning** (safety belts A62B 35/00; for scaffolding in general E04G; for ladders E06C)

- 3/02 • Cages; Platforms
- 3/04 • Safety ropes

##### **4/00 Cleaning window shades, window screens, venetian blinds** (A47L 1/15 takes precedence; suction cleaner nozzles A47L 9/02) [3]

- 4/02 • Hand implements for cleaning venetian blinds [3]
- 4/04 • Accessories facilitating cleaning, e.g. venetian blind separators, spreaders, or cleaning racks [3]

- 5/02 • with user-driven air-pumps or compressors
- 5/04 • • with pistons, bellows, or diaphragms, e.g. driven by the cleaner-supporting wheels
- 5/05 • • • with driven dust-loosening tools
- 5/06 • • with rotary fans
- 5/08 • • • driven by cleaner-supporting wheels
- 5/10 • • • • with driven dust-loosening tools
- 5/12 • with power-driven air-pumps or air-compressors, e.g. driven by motor vehicle engine vacuum
- 5/14 • • cleaning by blowing-off, also combined with suction cleaning
- 5/16 • • with suction devices other than rotary fans
- 5/18 • • • with ejectors, e.g. connected to motor vehicle exhaust
- 5/20 • • • with bellows, diaphragms or pistons
- 5/22 • • with rotary fans
- 5/24 • • • Hand-supported suction cleaners
- 5/26 • • • • with driven dust-loosening tools
- 5/28 • • • Suction cleaners with handles and nozzles fixed on the casings, e.g. wheeled suction cleaners with steering handle (A47L 5/24 takes precedence)
- 5/30 • • • • with driven dust-loosening tools, e.g. rotating brushes
- 5/32 • • • • with means for connecting a hose (hose couplings for suction cleaners A47L 9/24)
- 5/34 • • • • with height adjustment of nozzles or dust-loosening tools
- 5/36 • • • Suction cleaners with hose between nozzle and casing; Suction cleaners for fixing on staircases; Suction cleaners for carrying on the back
- 5/38 • • • Built-in suction cleaner installations, i.e. with fixed tube system to which, at different stations, hoses can be connected

#### Suction cleaners [3]

##### **5/00 Structural features of suction cleaners**

**7/00 Suction cleaners adapted for additional purposes**  
(with floor-polishing tools A47L 11/20; suction devices for removing ash F23J 1/02); **Tables with suction openings for cleaning purposes; Containers for cleaning articles by suction; Suction cleaners adapted to cleaning of brushes; Suction cleaners adapted to taking-up liquids**

- 7/02 • with driven tools for special purposes
- 7/04 • for using the exhaust air for other purposes, e.g. for distribution of chemicals in a room, for sterilisation of the air (spraying or atomising in general B05)
- 7/06 • • for supporting the suction cleaner on the exhaust air
- 7/08 • • with combustion of dust in exhaust air
- 9/00 Details or accessories of suction cleaners, e.g. mechanical means for controlling the suction or for effecting pulsating action; Storing devices specially adapted to suction cleaners or parts thereof; Carrying-vehicles specially adapted for suction cleaners**
- 9/02 • Nozzles (suction nozzles for fluid transport B65G 51/00)
- 9/04 • • with driven brushes or agitators
- 9/06 • • with fixed, e.g. adjustably fixed brushes or the like
- 9/08 • • with means adapted for blowing
- 9/10 • Filters (in general B01D; cyclones B04C); Dust separators; Dust removal; Automatic exchange of filters
- 9/12 • • Dry filters
- 9/14 • • Bags or the like; Attachment of, or closures for, bags
- 9/16 • • Arrangement or disposition of cyclones or other devices with centrifugal action
- 9/18 • • Liquid filters
- 9/19 • • Means for monitoring filtering operation [3]
- 9/20 • Means for cleaning filters
- 9/22 • Mountings for motor fan assemblies
- 9/24 • Hoses; Hose couplings (hoses or hose joints in general F16L)
- 9/26 • Incorporation of winding devices for electric cables (devices specially adapted for repeatedly paying-out or re-storing cables B65H 75/34; arrangements of electrical cables or lines between relatively-movable parts H02G 11/00)
- 9/28 • Installation of the electric equipment, e.g. adaptation or attachment to the suction cleaner; Regulation of suction cleaners by electric means
- 9/30 • • Arrangement of illuminating devices
- 9/32 • Handles

**Cleaning floors, carpets, furniture, walls, or wall coverings**

**11/00 Machines for cleaning floors, carpets, furniture, walls, or wall coverings**

- 11/02 • Floor surfacing or polishing machines (polishing machines in general B24B 29/00)
- 11/03 • • characterised by having provisions for supplying cleaning or polishing agents
- 11/04 • • hand-driven
- 11/06 • • • with reciprocating or oscillating tools
- 11/08 • • • with rotating tools
- 11/10 • • motor-driven
- 11/12 • • • with reciprocating or oscillating tools
- 11/14 • • • with rotating tools
- 11/16 • • • the tools being disc brushes

- 11/162 • • • • • having only a single disc brush
- 11/164 • • • • • Parts or details of the brushing tools
- 11/18 • • • • • the tools being roll brushes
- 11/19 • • • • • Parts or details of the brushing tools
- 11/20 • • combined with vacuum cleaning devices
- 11/202 • • • having separate drive for the cleaning brushes
- 11/204 • • • having combined drive for brushes and for vacuum cleaning
- 11/205 • • • • • for reciprocating brushes
- 11/206 • • • • • for rotary disc brushes
- 11/22 • Floor-sweeping machines, hand-driven
- 11/24 • Floor-sweeping machines, motor-driven
- 11/26 • Floor-scrubbing machines, hand-driven (A47L 11/29 takes precedence)
- 11/28 • Floor-scrubbing machines, motor-driven (A47L 11/29 takes precedence)
- 11/282 • • having rotary tools
- 11/283 • • • the tools being disc brushes
- 11/284 • • having reciprocating tools
- 11/29 • Floor-scrubbing machines characterised by means for taking-up dirty liquid
- 11/292 • • having rotary tools (A47L 11/30 takes precedence)
- 11/293 • • • the tools being disc brushes
- 11/294 • • having reciprocating tools (A47L 11/30 takes precedence)
- 11/30 • • by suction
- 11/32 • Carpet-sweepers (combined with suction cleaners A47L 7/02)
- 11/33 • • having means for storing dirt
- 11/34 • Machines for treating carpets in position by liquid, foam, or vapour, e.g. by steam
- 11/36 • Machines for beating upholstery
- 11/38 • Machines, specially adapted for cleaning walls, ceilings, roofs, or the like
- 11/40 • Parts or details of machines not covered in, or of interest apart from, groups A47L 11/02-A47L 11/38, e.g. handles, arrangement of switches, skirts, buffers, levers

**13/00 Implements for cleaning floors, carpets, furniture, walls, or wall coverings** (brushes, their handles or fastenings A46B, B25G; scrapers for finishing work on buildings E04F 21/00)

- 13/02 • Scraping
- 13/022 • • Scraper handles
- 13/03 • • Scrapers having provisions for supplying cleaning agents
- 13/04 • • with steel wool
- 13/06 • • with wire brushes or wire meshes
- 13/07 • • • Metal sponges (A47L 13/022, A47L 13/03 take precedence)
- 13/08 • • with scraping blades
- 13/10 • Scrubbing; Scouring; Cleaning; Polishing
- 13/11 • • Squeegees [3]
- 13/12 • • Implements with several different treating devices [3]
- 13/14 • • combined with squeezing or wringing devices
- 13/142 • • • having torsional squeezing or wringing action
- 13/144 • • • having squeezing rollers
- 13/146 • • • having pivoting squeezing plates
- 13/16 • • Cloths; Pads; Sponges (metal scraping sponges A47L 13/07)
- 13/17 • • • containing cleaning agents (A47L 13/19 takes precedence)
- 13/18 • • • Gloves; Glove-like cloths

- 13/19 • • • • containing cleaning agents
- 13/20 • • Mops
- 13/22 • • • • with liquid-feeding devices
- 13/23 • • • • connectible to the water mains
- 13/24 • • • • Frames for mops; Mop heads (handles B25G)
- 13/25 • • • • • Wire frames
- 13/252 • • • • • for mops of textile fringes or the like
- 13/253 • • • • • of adjustable or foldable type
- 13/254 • • • • • Plate frames
- 13/255 • • • • • for mops of textile fringes or the like
- 13/256 • • • • • for mops made of cloth
- 13/257 • • • • • for mops made of sponge material
- 13/258 • • • • • of adjustable or foldable type
- 13/26 • • Other cleaning devices with liquid supply arrangements (such arrangements on floor-polishing machines A47L 11/00, on scrapers A47L 13/03, on mops A47L 13/22; cloths, pads, or the like containing cleaning agents A47L 13/17, A47L 13/19) [3]
- 13/28 • • Polishing implements (polishing machines A47L 11/02)
- 13/282 • • • • mounted under footwear
- 13/284 • • • • having fixed or detachable weights
- 13/286 • • • • having containers for storing polishing material, e.g. polishing paper
- 13/29 • • • • having movable or detachable polishing or shining cloths
- 13/294 • • • • having invertible head, one side being used for dispensing polishing material and the reverse side for shining
- 13/30 • • • • Implements for polishing and waxing or oiling, with dispensers for wax or oil
- 13/31 • • • • • having movable or detachable polishing or shining cloths
- 13/312 • • • • • supplied with liquid wax or oil
- 13/314 • • • • • having invertible head, one side being used for dispensing wax or oil and the reverse side for shining
- 13/316 • • • • • supplied with liquid wax or oil
- 13/32 • • • • Wax dispensers with heating arrangements
- 13/34 • • Scouring implements for hearths or metal objects
- 13/36 • • Carpet-beaters
- 13/38 • • Other dusting implements
- 13/40 • • Cleaning implements actuated by electrostatic attraction; Devices for cleaning same; Magnetic cleaning implements
- 13/41 • • • • Magnetic cleaning implements
- 13/42 • • Details
- 13/44 • • • • Securing scouring-cloths to the brush or like body of the implement
- 13/46 • • • • Securing scouring- or polishing-cloths or sponges to the handles by gripping means, tongs, or the like
- 13/48 • • • • Protective devices, such as bumpers or guard plates
- 13/50 • • Auxiliary implements (cleaning devices for brushes or the like A46B 17/06)
- 13/502 • • • • Shakers for dust-cloths or mops; Bumpers therefor
- 13/51 • • • • Storing of cleaning tools, e.g. containers therefor
- 13/512 • • • • • Clamping devices for hanging the tools
- 13/52 • • • • Dust pans; Crumb trays
- 13/54 • • • • Racks for beating carpets
- 13/56 • • • • Implements for applying wax or oil

- 13/58 • • • • Wringers for scouring pads, mops, or the like, combined with buckets
- 13/59 • • • • • with movable squeezing members
- 13/60 • • • • • with squeezing rollers
- 13/62 • • • • Kneeling supports, especially wheeled (kneeling cushions attachable to knees A41D 13/06)

#### **Cleaning or polishing household articles or the like**

- 15/00 Washing or rinsing machines for crockery or table-ware**
- 15/02 • with circulation and agitation of the cleaning liquid in the cleaning chamber containing a stationary basket
- 15/04 • • by reciprocating movement of the cleaning chamber
- 15/06 • • by means of an impeller in the chamber
- 15/08 • • by application of a pressure effect produced by pumps
- 15/10 • • by introducing compressed air or other gas into the liquid
- 15/12 • • by a boiling effect
- 15/13 • • using sonic or ultrasonic waves [5]
- 15/14 • with stationary crockery baskets and spraying devices within the cleaning chamber
- 15/16 • • with rigidly-mounted spraying devices
- 15/18 • • with movably-mounted spraying devices
- 15/20 • • • • Swingable spraying devices
- 15/22 • • • • Rotary spraying devices
- 15/23 • • • • • moved by means of the sprays
- 15/24 • with movement of the crockery baskets by conveyers
- 15/26 • with movement of the crockery baskets by other means
- 15/28 • • by lowering and lifting only
- 15/30 • • by rotating only
- 15/32 • • • • rotated by means of spraying water
- 15/33 • • • • with moving baskets submerged in the cleaning fluid
- 15/34 • • by lowering and lifting combined with a rotating movement
- 15/36 • • by a sideways motion
- 15/37 • with crockery cleaned by brushes [3]
- 15/39 • • with brushes on movable supports [3]
- 15/42 • Details
- 15/44 • • Devices for adding cleaning agents
- 15/46 • • Devices for the automatic control of the different phases of cleaning
- 15/48 • • Drying arrangements
- 15/50 • • Racks
- 17/00 Apparatus or implements used in manual washing or cleaning of crockery, table-ware, cooking-ware or the like (foam-making devices A47K 5/14)**
- 17/02 • Basins (dish-washing tables A47B 33/00; sanitary basins A47K 1/04; basins connected to waste pipe E03C 1/12)
- 17/04 • Pan or pot cleaning utensils
- 17/06 • • Scrapers
- 17/08 • • Pads; Balls of steel wool, wire, or plastic meshes
- 17/10 • Tongs for crockery
- 19/00 Drying devices for crockery or table-ware, e.g. tea-cloths**
- 19/02 • Draining-boards
- 19/04 • Crockery baskets; Draining-racks

**21/00 Polishing of table-ware, e.g. knives, forks, spoons**

- 21/02 • Machines
- 21/04 • Hand implements
- 21/06 • Supports or rests for use while polishing

**23/00 Cleaning footwear**

- 23/02 • Shoe-cleaning machines, with or without applicators for shoe polish
- 23/04 • Hand implements for shoe-cleaning, with or without applicators for shoe polish (ordinary brushes, with or without containers, A46B 11/00)
- 23/05 • • with applicators for shoe polish
- 23/06 • • with electric drive
- 23/08 • • Special hand implements for cleaning and recolouring footwear, e.g. powder pads
- 23/10 • • Cloth or collapsible cleaning pads; Glove-like cleaning cloths (glove-like washing cloths A47K 7/02)
- 23/12 • • Cleaning devices for suede
- 23/14 • • Implements for use during shoe-cleaning, to guard against spoiling
- 23/16 • Shoe-shine stands; Foot-rests with guides for the polishing cloths
- 23/17 • • Foot-rests with guides for the polishing cloths

- 23/18 • Devices for holding footwear during cleaning or shining (shoe-lasts A43D 3/00); Holding devices with stretching effect
- 23/20 • Devices or implements for drying footwear, also with heating arrangements (cabinets for shoes A47B 61/04)
- 23/22 • Devices or implements resting on the floor for removing mud, dirt, or dust from footwear (built-in gratings, e.g. foot-scrapers, E04F 19/10)
- 23/24 • • Rigid cleaning-gratings; Tread plates or scrapers for cleaning the soles of footwear (floor mats in general A47G 27/02)
- 23/26 • • Mats or gratings combined with brushes
- 23/28 • Receptacles for shoe-cleaning equipment

**25/00 Domestic cleaning devices not provided for in other groups of this subclass (for cleaning spectacles G02C 13/00)**

- 25/02 • for buttons, clasps, or military insignia
- 25/04 • for door-knobs
- 25/06 • Guard plates for use while cleaning butts, door-knobs or the like
- 25/08 • Pads or the like for cleaning clothes
- 25/12 • Devices or implements for cleaning lamp chimneys

# HEALTH; LIFE-SAVING; AMUSEMENT

## A61 MEDICAL OR VETERINARY SCIENCE; HYGIENE

### A61B DIAGNOSIS; SURGERY; IDENTIFICATION (analysing biological material G01N, e.g. G01N 33/48)

#### Note(s)

This subclass covers instruments, implements, and processes for diagnostic, surgical and person-identification purposes, including obstetrics, instruments for cutting corns, vaccination instruments, finger-printing, psycho-physical tests.

#### Subclass index

MEDICINAL METHODS (NON-SURGICAL).....	1/00, 5/00, 17/00
INSTRUMENTS FOR PSYCHO-PHYSICAL TESTS.....	5/00
MEDICAL INSTRUMENTS	
For auscultation and diagnostics.....	5/00-10/00
For medical examination of the interior of cavities or tubes of the body and the eyes.....	1/00, 3/00
Aids for examination and care of the mouth.....	1/00, 13/00
SURGICAL INSTRUMENTS, DEVICES OR METHODS.....	17/00, 18/00
OTHER INSTRUMENTS, IMPLEMENTS OR ACCESSORIES FOR SURGERY OR DIAGNOSIS.....	19/00

#### Diagnosis; Psycho-physical tests

**1/00 Instruments for performing medical examinations of the interior of cavities or tubes of the body by visual or photographic inspection, e.g. endoscopes** (examination of body cavities or body tracts using ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves A61B 8/12; endoscopic instruments for taking cell samples or for biopsy A61B 10/04; for surgical purposes A61B 17/00; surgical instruments using a laser beam being directed along or through a flexible conduit A61B 18/22); **illuminating arrangements therefor** (for the eyes A61B 3/00) [4]

- 1/002 • having rod-lens arrangements (A61B 1/055 takes precedence) [6]
- 1/005 • Flexible endoscopes [6]
- 1/008 • • Articulations [6]
- 1/01 • • Guiding arrangements therefor [6]
- 1/012 • characterised by internal passages or accessories therefor [6]
- 1/015 • • Control of fluid supply or evacuation [6]
- 1/018 • • for receiving instruments [6]
- 1/04 • combined with photographic or television appliances [2]
- 1/045 • • Control thereof [6]
- 1/05 • • characterised by the image sensor, e.g. camera, being in the distal end portion [6]
- 1/055 • • having rod-lens arrangements [6]
- 1/06 • with illuminating arrangements
- 1/07 • • using light-conductive means, e.g. optical fibres [6]
- 1/12 • with cooling or rinsing arrangements (A61B 1/015 takes precedence) [6]
- 1/227 • for ears, i.e. otoscopes [6]
- 1/233 • for the nose, i.e. nasoscopes [6]

- 1/24 • for the mouth, i.e. stomatoscopes, e.g. with tongue depressors (tongue depressors per se A61B 13/00); Instruments for opening or keeping open the mouth (combined with saliva removers A61C 17/10) [5]
- 1/247 • • with means for viewing areas outside the direct line of sight, e.g. dentists' mirrors [6]
- 1/253 • • • with means for preventing fogging [6]
- 1/267 • for the respiratory tract, e.g. laryngoscopes, bronchoscopes [6]
- 1/273 • for the upper alimentary canal, e.g. oesophagoscopes, gastrosopes [6]
- 1/303 • for the vagina, i.e. vaginoscopes [6]
- 1/307 • for the urinary organs, e.g. urethrosopes, cystoscopes [6]
- 1/31 • for the rectum, e.g. proctoscopes, sigmoidoscopes [6]
- 1/313 • for introducing through surgical openings, e.g. laparoscopes [6]
- 1/317 • • for bones or joints, e.g. osteoscopes, arthrosopes [6]
- 1/32 • Devices for opening or enlarging the visual field, e.g. of a tube of the body (dilators A61M 29/00)
- 3/00 Apparatus for testing the eyes; Instruments for examining the eyes** (eye inspection using ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves A61B 8/10) [4, 5]
- 3/02 • Subjective types, i.e. testing apparatus requiring the active assistance of the patient [5]
- 3/024 • • for determining the visual field, e.g. perimeter types [5]
- 3/028 • • for testing visual acuity; for determination of refraction, e.g. phoropters [5]
- 3/032 • • • Devices for presenting test symbols or characters, e.g. test chart projectors (A61B 3/036 takes precedence) [5]
- 3/036 • • • for testing astigmatism [5]

- 3/04 • • • Trial frames; Sets of lenses for use therewith [5]
- 3/06 • • • for testing light sensitivity, e.g. adaptation; for testing colour vision
- 3/08 • • • for testing binocular or stereoscopic vision, e.g. strabismus
- 3/09 • • • for testing accommodation
- 3/10 • Objective types, i.e. instruments for examining the eyes independent of the patients perceptions or reactions [5]
- 3/103 • • • for determining refraction, e.g. refractometers, skiascopes [5]
- 3/107 • • • for determining the shape or measuring the curvature of the cornea [5]
- 3/11 • • • for measuring interpupillary distance or diameter of pupils [5]
- 3/113 • • • for determining or recording eye movement [5]
- 3/117 • • • for examining the anterior chamber or the anterior chamber angle, e.g. gonioscopes [5]
- 3/12 • • • for looking at the eye fundus, e.g. ophthalmoscopes (A61B 3/13 takes precedence) [5]
- 3/125 • • • with contact lenses [5]
- 3/13 • • • Ophthalmic microscopes [5]
- 3/135 • • • Slit-lamp microscopes [5]
- 3/14 • • • Arrangements specially adapted for eye photography [5]
- 3/15 • • • with means for aligning, spacing or blocking spurious reflection [5]
- 3/16 • • • for measuring intraocular pressure, e.g. tonometers [5]
- 3/18 • Arrangement of plural eye-testing or -examining apparatus [5]

**5/00 Measuring for diagnostic purposes** (radiation diagnosis A61B 6/00; diagnosis by ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves A61B 8/00); **Identification of persons**

**Note(s)**

In this group, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

- "measuring" covers also detecting or recording.

- 5/01 • Measuring temperature of body parts (clinical thermometers G01K 5/22; thermometers for special purposes G01K 13/00) [7]
- 5/02 • Measuring pulse, heart rate, blood pressure or blood flow; Combined pulse/heart-rate/blood pressure determination; Evaluating a cardiovascular condition not otherwise provided for, e.g. using combinations of techniques provided for in this group with electrocardiography; Heart catheters for measuring blood pressure [5]
- 5/0205 • • Simultaneously evaluating both cardiovascular conditions and different types of body conditions, e.g. heart and respiratory condition [5]
- 5/021 • • Measuring pressure in heart or blood vessels (A61B 5/0205 takes precedence) [5]
- 5/0215 • • • by means inserted into the body [5]
- 5/022 • • • by applying pressure to close blood vessels, e.g. against the skin; Ophthaldynamometers [5]
- 5/0225 • • • • the pressure being controlled by electric signals, e.g. derived from Korotkoff sounds [5]
- 5/023 • • • • the pressure transducers comprising a liquid column [5]
- 5/0235 • • • • Valves specially adapted therefor [5]

- 5/024 • • Measuring pulse rate or heart rate (A61B 5/0205, A61B 5/021 take precedence) [5]
- 5/0245 • • • using sensing means generating electric signals [5]
- 5/025 • • • • within occluders, e.g. responsive to Korotkoff sounds [5]
- 5/0255 • • • Recording instruments specially adapted therefor [5]
- 5/026 • • Measuring blood flow [5]
- 5/0265 • • • using electromagnetic means, e.g. electromagnetic flow meter [5]
- 5/027 • • • • using catheters [5]
- 5/0275 • • • using tracers, e.g. dye dilution [5]
- 5/028 • • • • by thermo-dilution [5]
- 5/0285 • • • Measuring phase velocity of blood waves [5]
- 5/029 • • • Measuring blood output from the heart, e.g. minute volume [5]
- 5/0295 • • • using plethysmography, i.e. measuring the variations in the volume of a body part as modified by the circulation of blood therethrough, e.g. impedance plethysmography [5]
- 5/03 • Measuring fluid pressure within the body other than blood pressure, e.g. cerebral pressure [4]
- 5/04 • Measuring bioelectric signals of the body or parts thereof
- 5/0402 • • Electrocardiography, i.e. ECG [5]
- 5/0404 • • • Hand-held devices [5]
- 5/0408 • • • Electrodes specially adapted therefor (for foetal cardiography A61B 5/0448; for electroencephalograph signals A61B 5/0478; for electromyography A61B 5/0492) [5]
- 5/0416 • • • • connected by means of snap fasteners [5]
- 5/042 • • • • for introducing into the body [5]
- 5/0424 • • • • Protection against electrode failure [5]
- 5/0428 • • • Input circuits specially adapted therefor [5]
- 5/0432 • • • Recording apparatus specially adapted therefor [5]
- 5/0436 • • • • Magnetic recording apparatus [5]
- 5/044 • • • Displays specially adapted therefor [5]
- 5/0444 • • • Foetal cardiography [5]
- 5/0448 • • • • Electrodes specially adapted therefor, e.g. scalp electrodes [5]
- 5/0452 • • • Detecting specific parameters of the electrocardiograph cycle [5]
- 5/0456 • • • • Detecting R peaks, e.g. for synchronising diagnostic apparatus [5]
- 5/046 • • • • Detecting fibrillation [5]
- 5/0464 • • • • Detecting tachycardia or brachycardia [5]
- 5/0468 • • • • Detecting abnormal ECG interval [5]
- 5/0472 • • • • Detecting abnormal QRS complex [5]
- 5/0476 • • Electroencephalography [5]
- 5/0478 • • • Electrodes specially adapted therefor [5]
- 5/048 • • • Detecting the frequency distribution of signals [5]
- 5/0482 • • • using biofeedback [5]
- 5/0484 • • • using evoked response [5]
- 5/0488 • • Electromyography [5]
- 5/0492 • • • Electrodes specially adapted therefor, e.g. needle electrodes [5]
- 5/0496 • • Electro-oculography, e.g. detecting nystagmus [5]
- 5/05 • Measuring for diagnosis by means of electric currents or magnetic fields (A61B 5/02, A61B 5/04, A61B 5/11 take precedence) [5]

- 5/053 • • Measuring electrical impedance or conductance of a portion of the body [7]
- 5/055 • • involving electronic [EMR] or nuclear [NMR] magnetic resonance, e.g. magnetic resonance imaging [5]
- 5/06 • Devices, other than using radiation, for detecting or locating foreign bodies (for removing same A61B 17/50)
- 5/07 • Endoradiosondes
- 5/08 • Measuring devices for evaluating the respiratory organs (A61B 5/0205 takes precedence) [5]
- 5/083 • • Measuring rate of metabolism by using breath test, e.g. measuring rate of oxygen consumption [5]
- 5/085 • • Measuring impedance of respiratory organs or lung elasticity [5]
- 5/087 • • Measuring breath flow [5]
- 5/09 • • • using an element rotated by the flow [5]
- 5/091 • • Measuring volume of inspired or expired gases, e.g. to determine lung capacity [5]
- 5/093 • • • the gases being exhaled into, or inhaled from, an expansible chamber, e.g. bellows or expansible bag [5]
- 5/095 • • • within a rigid container, e.g. the boundary being formed by a liquid surface [5]
- 5/097 • • Devices for facilitating collection of breath or for directing breath into or through measuring devices [5]
- 5/103 • Measuring devices for testing the shape, pattern, size or movement of the body or parts thereof, for diagnostic purposes (A61B 5/08 takes precedence; measuring instruments specially adapted for dentistry A61C 19/04) [5]
- 5/107 • • Measuring physical dimensions, e.g. size of the entire body or parts thereof [5]
- 5/11 • • Measuring movement of the entire body or parts thereof, e.g. head or hand tremor or mobility of a limb (for measuring pulse A61B 5/02) [5]
- 5/113 • • • occurring during breathing [5]
- 5/117 • Identification of persons, e.g. finger-printing, foot-printing or impression techniques (dental impression cups or articulators A61C 9/00, A61C 11/00; recognising fingerprints G06K 9/00; identification of persons by analysing their voice or speech G10L 17/00) [5]
- 5/12 • Audiometering
- 5/145 • Measuring characteristics of blood *in vivo*, e.g. gas concentration, pH-value (measuring of blood pressure or blood flow A61B 5/02; non-radiation detecting or locating of foreign bodies in blood A61B 5/06) [7]
- 5/1455 • • using optical sensors, e.g. spectral photometrical oximeters [2006.01]
- 5/1459 • • • invasive, e.g. introduced into the body by a catheter [2006.01]
- 5/1464 • • • specially adapted for foetal tissue [2006.01]
- 5/1468 • • using chemical or electrochemical methods, e.g. by polarographic means [2006.01]
- 5/1473 • • • invasive, e.g. introduced into the body by a catheter [2006.01]
- 5/1477 • • • non-invasive [2006.01]
- 5/1482 • • • specially adapted for foetal tissue [2006.01]
- 5/1486 • • using enzyme electrodes, e.g. with immobilised oxidase [2006.01]
- 5/1491 • • Heated applicators [2006.01]
- 5/1495 • • Calibrating or testing *in vivo* probes [2006.01]
- 5/15 • Devices for taking samples of blood (hypodermic syringes A61M 5/178) [7]
- 5/151 • • specially adapted for taking samples of capillary blood, e.g. by lancets [2006.01]
- 5/153 • • specially adapted for taking samples of venous or arterial blood, e.g. by syringes [2006.01]
- 5/154 • • • using pre-evacuated means [2006.01]
- 5/155 • • specially adapted for continuous or multiple sampling, e.g. at predetermined intervals [7]
- 5/157 • • characterised by integrated means for measuring characteristics of blood [2006.01]
- 5/16 • Devices for psychotechnics (using teaching or educational appliances G09B 1/00-G09B 7/00); Testing reaction times
- 5/18 • • for vehicle drivers
- 5/20 • Measuring urological functions [4]
- 5/22 • Ergometry; Measuring muscular strength or the force of a muscular blow [4]
- 6/00 Apparatus for radiation diagnosis, e.g. combined with radiation therapy equipment** (instruments measuring radiation intensity for application in the field of nuclear medicine, e.g. *in vivo* counting, G01T 1/161; apparatus for taking X-ray photographs G03B 42/02)
- 6/02 • Devices for diagnosis sequentially in different planes; Stereoscopic radiation diagnosis
- 6/03 • • Computerised tomographs (echo-tomography A61B 8/14) [4]
- 6/04 • Positioning of patients; Tilttable beds or the like (operating tables A61G 13/00; operating chairs A61G 15/00)
- 6/06 • Diaphragms
- 6/08 • Auxiliary means for directing the radiation beam to a particular spot, e.g. using light beams
- 6/10 • Application or adaptation of safety means
- 6/12 • Devices for detecting or locating foreign bodies (A61B 6/02 takes precedence)
- 6/14 • Applications or adaptations for dentistry
- 7/00 Instruments for auscultation**
- 7/02 • Stethoscopes
- 7/04 • • Electric stethoscopes (microphones, acoustic transducers therefor H04R)
- 8/00 Diagnosis using ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves [4]**
- 8/02 • Measuring pulse or heart rate [4]
- 8/04 • Measuring blood pressure [4]
- 8/06 • Measuring blood flow [4]
- 8/08 • Detecting organic movements or changes, e.g. tumours, cysts, swellings (A61B 8/02-A61B 8/06 take precedence) [4]
- 8/10 • Eye inspection [4]
- 8/12 • in body cavities or body tracts, e.g. by using catheters (catheters *per se* A61M 25/00) [4]
- 8/13 • Tomography (A61B 8/10, A61B 8/12 take precedence; tomography for radiation diagnosis A61B 6/02) [5]
- 8/14 • • Echo-tomography [4]
- 8/15 • • Transmission-tomography [5]
- 9/00 Instruments for examination by percussion; Pleximeters**
- 10/00 Other methods or instruments for diagnosis, e.g. for vaccination diagnosis; Sex determination; Ovulation-period determination; Throat striking implements [4, 2006.01]**

**Note(s)**

Attention is drawn to group A61F 13/15 which provides for swabs.

- 10/02 • Instruments for taking cell samples or for biopsy (devices for taking samples of blood A61B 5/15) [2006.01]
- 10/04 • • Endoscopic instruments [2006.01]
- 10/06 • • Biopsy forceps [2006.01]
- 13/00 Instruments for depressing the tongue** (combined with illuminating and viewing instruments A61B 1/24; combined with saliva removers A61C 17/10) [5]
- 16/00 Devices specially adapted for vivisection or autopsy** (similar devices for medical purposes, see the relevant groups for such devices)

**Surgery**

- 17/00 Surgical instruments, devices or methods, e.g. tourniquets** (A61B 18/00 takes precedence; contraceptive devices, pessaries, or applicators therefor A61F 6/00; eye surgery A61F 9/007; ear surgery A61F 11/00) [3, 7]

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

When classifying in this group, classification is also made in group A61B 17/94 if the endoscopic features of the surgical instrument are of interest.

- 17/02 • for holding wounds open; Tractors
  - 17/03 • for closing wounds, or holding wounds closed, e.g. surgical staples; Accessories for use therewith [6]
- 
- 17/04 • • for suturing wounds; Holders or packages for needles or suture materials [3]
  - 17/06 • • • Needles; Holders or packages for needles or suture materials (puncturing needles A61B 17/34; hypodermic needles A61M 5/32) [3]
  - 17/062 • • • Needle manipulators [6]
  - 17/064 • • Surgical staples [5]
  - 17/068 • • Surgical staplers (for performing anastomosis A61B 17/115) [5]
  - 17/072 • • • for applying a row of staples in a single action [5]
  - 17/076 • • for removing surgical staples [5]
  - 17/08 • • Wound clamps
  - 17/10 • • for applying or removing wound clamps; Wound clamp magazines
  - 17/11 • • for performing anastomosis; Buttons for anastomosis
  - 17/115 • • • Staplers [5]
  - 17/12 • for ligaturing or otherwise compressing tubular parts of the body, e.g. blood vessels or umbilical cord
  - 17/122 • • Clamps or clips [6]
  - 17/125 • • • combined with cutting implements [6]
  - 17/128 • • for applying or removing clamps or clips [6]
  - 17/132 • • Tourniquets [6]
  - 17/135 • • • inflatable [6]
  - 17/138 • • combined with cutting implements (A61B 17/125 takes precedence) [6]
  - 17/14 • Surgical saws (tooth saws A61C 3/12)
  - 17/15 • • Guides therefor [6]
  - 17/16 • Osteoclasts; Drills or chisels for bones; Trepan
  - 17/17 • • Guides for drills [6]

- 17/20 • for vaccinating or cleaning the skin previous to the vaccination (apparatus for injections A61M 3/00, A61M 5/00)
- 17/22 • Implements for squeezing-off ulcers or the like on inner organs of the body; Implements for scraping-out cavities of body organs, e.g. bones; for invasive removal or destruction of calculus using mechanical vibrations; for removing obstructions in blood vessels, not otherwise provided for [6, 2006.01]
- 17/221 • • Calculus gripping devices in the form of loops or baskets [2006.01]
- 17/225 • for extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy [ESWL], e.g. by using ultrasonic waves [6]
- 17/24 • for use in the oral cavity, larynx, bronchial passages or nose (for medical inspection of cavities or tubes in the body A61B 1/00); Tongue scrapers
- 17/26 • • Tonsillotomes, with or without means for stopping bleeding
- 17/28 • Surgical forceps (biopsy forceps A61B 10/06; obstetrical forceps A61B 17/44) [1, 2006.01]
- 17/285 • • combined with cutting implements [2006.01]
- 17/29 • • Forceps for use in minimally invasive surgery [2006.01]
- 17/295 • • • combined with cutting implements [2006.01]
- 17/30 • Surgical pincettes (wound clamps A61B 17/08)
- 17/32 • Surgical cutting instruments (implements for ligaturing and cutting A61B 17/125, A61B 17/138) [3, 2006.01]
- 17/3201 • • Scissors (for biopsy A61B 10/02) [2006.01]
- 17/3203 • • Fluid jet cutting instruments [2006.01]
- 17/3205 • • Excision instruments [2006.01]
- 17/3207 • • • Atherectomy devices [2006.01]
- 17/3209 • • Incision instruments [2006.01]
- 17/3211 • • • Surgical scalpels or knives; Accessories therefor [2006.01]
- 17/3213 • • • with detachable blades [2006.01]
- 17/3215 • • • Packages or dispensers, e.g. for scalpel blades [2006.01]
- 17/3217 • • • Devices for removing or collecting used scalpel blades [2006.01]
- 17/322 • • Skin grafting apparatus [2]
- 17/326 • • Circumcision apparatus
- 17/34 • Trocars; Puncturing needles [2]
- 17/42 • Gynaecological or obstetrical instruments or methods
- 17/425 • • for reproduction or fertilisation [5]
- 17/43 • • • for artificial insemination [5]
- 17/435 • • • for embryo transplantation [5]
- 17/44 • • Obstetrical forceps
- 17/46 • • Embryotomes
- 17/48 • • Bags for midwives
- 17/50 • Instruments, other than pincettes or toothpicks, for removing foreign bodies from the human body
- 17/52 • • Magnets
- 17/54 • Chiropodists' instruments
- 17/56 • Surgical instruments or methods for treatment of bones or joints; Devices specially adapted therefor [4]
- 17/58 • • for osteosynthesis, e.g. bone plates, screws or the like (A61B 17/14, A61B 17/16 take precedence) [4, 6]
- 17/60 • • • for external osteosynthesis, e.g. distractors or contractors [4]
- 17/62 • • • • Ring frames, i.e. devices extending around the bones to be positioned (A61B 17/66 takes precedence) [6]



- 17/64 • • • • Devices extending alongside the bones to be positioned (A61B 17/66 takes precedence) [6]
- 17/66 • • • • Compression or distraction mechanisms [6]
- 17/68 • • • • Internal fixation devices [6]
- 17/70 • • • • Spinal positioners or stabilisers [6]
- 17/72 • • • • Intramedullary devices [6]
- 17/74 • • • • Devices for the head of the femur [6]
- 17/76 • • • • • fixed by screws [6]
- 17/78 • • • • • fixed by nails, pins or the like [6]
- 17/80 • • • • • Cortical plates [6]
- 17/82 • • • • • for bone cerclage [6]
- 17/84 • • • • • Fasteners therefor [6]
- 17/86 • • • • • Pins or screws [6]
- 17/88 • • • • Methods or means for implanting or extracting internal fixation devices [6]
- 17/90 • • • • Guides therefor [6]
- 17/92 • • • • Impactors or extractors, e.g. for removing intramedullary devices [6]
- 17/94 • Endoscopic surgical instruments (endoscopic instruments for taking cell samples or for biopsy A61B 10/04) [2006.01]
- 18/00 Surgical instruments, devices or methods for transferring non-mechanical forms of energy to or from the body** (eye surgery A61F 9/007; ear surgery A61F 11/00) [7]
- 18/02 • by cooling, e.g. cryogenic techniques (devices for cooling specific reflex points of the body within cell-life limits A61H 39/06) [7]
- 18/04 • by heating (by applying electromagnetic radiation A61B 18/18; devices for heating specific reflex points of the body within cell-life limits A61H 39/06) [7]
- 18/06 • • caused by chemical reaction [7]
- 18/08 • • by means of electrically-heated probes [7]
- 18/10 • • • Power sources therefor [7]
- 18/12 • • by passing a current through the tissue to be heated, e.g. high-frequency current [7]
- 18/14 • • • Probes or electrodes therefor [7]
- 18/16 • • • • Indifferent or passive electrodes for grounding [7]
- 18/18 • by applying electromagnetic radiation, e.g. microwaves (radiation therapy A61N 5/00) [7]
- 18/20 • • using laser [7]
- 18/22 • • • the beam being directed along or through a flexible conduit, e.g. an optical fibre; Hand-pieces therefor [7]
- 18/24 • • • • with a catheter (A61B 18/26, A61B 18/28 take precedence) [7]
- 18/26 • • • • for producing a shock wave, e.g. laser lithotripsy [7]
- 18/28 • • • • for heating a thermal probe or absorber [7]
- 19/00 Instruments, implements or accessories for surgery or diagnosis not covered by any of the groups A61B 1/00-A61B 18/00, e.g. for stereotaxis, sterile operation, luxation treatment, wound edge protectors** (protective face masks A41D 13/11; surgeons' or patients' gowns or dresses A41D 13/12; devices for carrying-off, for treatment of, or for carrying-over, body liquids A61M 1/00)
- 19/02 • Protective casings or covers for appliances or instruments, e.g. boxes or sterile covers; Instrument tables or cupboards; Doctors' bags
- 19/04 • Operating gloves; Finger-stalls for operating; Devices for treating them, e.g. cleaning or powdering
- 19/08 • Surgical drapes
- 19/10 • • with means to retain or hold surgical implements [5]
- 19/12 • • tubular, e.g. for arms or legs [5]
- A61C DENTISTRY; APPARATUS OR METHODS FOR ORAL OR DENTAL HYGIENE** (non-driven toothbrushes A46B; preparations for dentistry A61K 6/00; preparations for cleaning the teeth or mouth A61K 8/00, A61Q 11/00)

### Subclass index

DENTAL SURGERY.....	1/00-8/00
DENTAL PROSTHETICS; ARTIFICIAL TEETH.....	9/00-13/00
DEVICES FOR CLEANING OF TEETH OR MOUTH.....	15/00, 17/00
DENTAL AUXILIARY APPLIANCES.....	19/00

### Dental surgery

#### 1/00 Dental machines for boring or cutting

- 1/02 • characterised by the drive of the dental tools
- 1/04 • • with treadle or manual drive
- 1/05 • • with turbine drive
- 1/06 • • with electric drive
- 1/07 • • with vibratory drive, e.g. ultrasonic
- 1/08 • Machine parts specially adapted for dentistry
- 1/10 • • Straight hand-pieces
- 1/12 • • Angle hand-pieces
- 1/14 • • Tool-holders
- 1/16 • • Protecting caps for hand-pieces or angle-pieces
- 1/18 • • Flexible shafts; Clutches or the like

#### 3/00 Dental tools or instruments (implanting tools

- A61C 8/00; tools for fastening artificial teeth A61C 13/12; visual inspection devices, e.g. dental mirrors, A61B 1/24)
- 3/02 • Tooth drilling or cutting instruments; Instruments acting like a sandblast machine
- 3/025 • • Instruments acting like a sandblast machine, e.g. for cleaning, polishing or cutting teeth [5]
- 3/03 • • Instruments operated by vibration
- 3/04 • Supports for holding tooth drills in order of use
- 3/06 • Tooth grinding or polishing discs; Holders therefor
- 3/08 • Tooth pluggers or hammers
- 3/10 • Tooth pincettes or the like
- 3/12 • Tooth saws
- 3/14 • Dentists' forceps or the like for extracting teeth
- 3/16 • Dentists' forceps for removing crowns

**5/00 Filling or capping teeth**

- 5/02 • Implements for surgical treatment of the roots or nerves of the teeth; Nerve needles; Methods or instruments for medication of the roots (substances for chemical treatment A61K 6/00)
- 5/04 • Implements for filling natural teeth; Methods or instruments for medication of tooth nerve channels (composition of the fillings A61K 6/02)
- 5/06 • Amalgam presses or mixers
- 5/08 • Tooth crowns; Making same; Securing crowns in the mouth (dental implants A61C 8/00)
- 5/09 • • Composite crowns [5]
- 5/10 • • Methods or devices for making crowns [5]
- 5/11 • • Securing crowns to natural teeth [5]
- 5/12 • Tooth clamps; Dam holders
- 5/14 • Lip or mouth protectors

**7/00 Orthodontics, i.e. obtaining or maintaining the desired position of teeth, e.g. by straightening, evening, regulating, separating, or by correcting malocclusions**

- 7/02 • Tools for manipulating or working with an orthodontic appliance [5]
- 7/04 • • plier type [5]
- 7/06 • Extra-oral force transmitting means, i.e. means worn externally of the mouth and placing a member in the mouth under tension [5]
- 7/08 • Mouthpiece-type retainers [5]
- 7/10 • Devices having means to apply outwardly directed force, e.g. expanders [5]
- 7/12 • Brackets; Arch wires; Combinations thereof; Accessories therefor (A61C 7/10 takes precedence) [5]
- 7/14 • • Brackets (A61C 7/28 takes precedence); Fixing brackets to teeth [5]
- 7/16 • • • specially adapted to be cemented to teeth [5]
- 7/18 • • • specially adapted to be fixed to teeth with a band; Bands therefor [5]
- 7/20 • • Arch wires (A61C 7/28 takes precedence) [5]
- 7/22 • • • Tension adjusting means [5]
- 7/24 • • • Arch wire-enclosing guides [5]
- 7/26 • • • Arch wire attachments [5]
- 7/28 • • Securing arch wire to bracket [5]
- 7/30 • • • by resilient means (A61C 7/34 takes precedence) [5]
- 7/32 • • • using ligature wires [5]
- 7/34 • • • using lock pins [5]
- 7/36 • Devices acting between upper and lower teeth [5]

**8/00 Means to be fixed to the jaw-bone for consolidating natural teeth or for fixing dental prostheses thereon; Dental implants; Implanting tools** (fastening of peg-teeth in the mouth A61C 13/30) [2]

- 8/02 • Means for transfixation of natural teeth [4]

**Dental prosthetics; Artificial teeth [3]****9/00 Impression methods specially adapted for dental prosthetics; Impression cups therefor [3]****11/00 Dental articulators, i.e. for simulating movement of the temporo-mandibular joints; Articulation forms or mouldings**

- 11/02 • characterised by the arrangement, location or type of the hinge means [5]
- 11/04 • • resiliently biased [5]

- 11/06 • with incisal guide [5]

- 11/08 • with means to secure dental casts to articulator [5]

**13/00 Dental prostheses; Making same** (tooth crowns for capping teeth A61C 5/08; dental implants A61C 8/00) [4]

- 13/003 • Prostheses without bases, e.g. dental bridges (fastening prostheses in the mouth A61C 13/225); Making same (artificial teeth A61C 13/08) [6]
- 13/007 • Prostheses with bases, e.g. palates or plates; Making same [6]
- 13/01 • • Bases [4]
- 13/02 • • • made by galvanoplastic methods; Surface treatment; Enamelling; Perfuming; Making antiseptic [4]
- 13/03 • • • of metal with a ceramic layer [6]
- 13/06 • • • made by punching [4]
- 13/07 • • Linings or cushions therefor (characterised by means to improve suction A61C 13/24) [6]
- 13/08 • Artificial teeth; Making same
- 13/083 • • Porcelain or ceramic teeth [4]
- 13/087 • • Artificial resin teeth [4]
- 13/09 • • Multilayer teeth [4]
- 13/093 • • characterised by a shape which improves retention [4]
- 13/097 • • characterised by occlusal profiles [4]
- 13/10 • Fastening of artificial teeth to artificial base material, e.g. to palates or to adjacent artificial tooth (A61C 13/093 takes precedence; fastening prostheses in the mouth A61C 13/225)
- 13/103 • • connected to base material by additional connecting member, e.g. knob or bar [6]
- 13/105 • • • with the connecting member embedded in base material [6]
- 13/107 • Prostheses for temporary restoration; Vestibular masks [4]
- 13/113 • Modular prostheses, e.g. using prefabricated bases or having prefabricated sets of teeth [4]
- 13/12 • Tools for fastening artificial teeth; Holders, clamps, or stands for artificial teeth
- 13/14 • Curing devices for plastics prostheses
- 13/15 • • for curing by the action of light [6]
- 13/16 • • Curing flasks; Holders therefor
- 13/18 • • Presses for flasks
- 13/20 • Methods or devices for soldering, casting, moulding or melting [4]
- 13/225 • Fastening prostheses in the mouth (securing tooth crowns in capping teeth A61C 5/08) [4]
- 13/23 • • using adhesive foils or adhesive compositions (A61C 13/263 takes precedence) [4]
- 13/235 • • Magnetic fastening (magnetic implants A61C 8/00) [4]
- 13/24 • • Fastening by suction
- 13/25 • • • including valve or air passageway leading from suction area to lingual cavity [6]
- 13/263 • • Screwing pinning or gluing of prostheses to natural teeth [4]
- 13/265 • • Sliding or snap attachments [4]
- 13/267 • • Clasp fastening [4]
- 13/271 • • resiliently engaging between, or to, natural teeth [4]
- 13/273 • • Locking prostheses to residual teeth by using rotational or sliding-locks or levers (A61C 13/265, A61C 13/277 take precedence) [4, 6]
- 13/275 • • Securing prostheses by using bridging bars or rails between residual teeth [4]

- 13/277 • • Telescopic anchoring [4]  
 13/28 • • Fastening by spring action between upper and lower parts of prostheses  
 13/30 • • Fastening of peg-teeth in the mouth; Root pins [4]  
 13/32 • • Stress-breakers [4]  
 13/34 • • Making or working of models, e.g. preliminary castings, trial dentures; Dowel pins [4]  
 13/36 • • Orienting or positioning of artificial teeth, e.g. determining precise location or attitude therefor [6]  
 13/38 • • Tools not otherwise provided for, for use in connection with dental prostheses or the making thereof [6]
- Tooth-cleaning or mouth-rinsing devices [3, 5]**
- 15/00 Devices for cleaning between the teeth**  
 15/02 • Toothpicks [4]  
 15/04 • Dental floss; Floss holders [4]
- 17/00 Devices for cleaning, polishing, rinsing or drying teeth, teeth cavities or prostheses** (instruments acting like a sandblast machine A61C 3/025; tooth polishing discs or holders therefor A61C 3/06; devices for cleaning between the teeth A61C 15/00); **Saliva removers; Dental appliances for receiving spittle [5]**
- Note(s)**  
 Cleaning of prostheses using ultrasonic techniques similar to those used for natural teeth is classified in this group. Other ultrasonic cleaning of prostheses is classified in group B08B 3/12.
- 
- 17/02 • Rinsing or air-blowing devices, e.g. using fluid jets (combined with receptacles for spittle A61C 17/14; combined with power-driven cleaning or polishing devices A61C 17/16) [5]  
 17/022 • • Air-blowing devices [5]  
 17/024 • • with constant liquid flow [4]  
 17/028 • • with intermittent liquid flow [4]  
 17/032 • • using pressurised tap-water [4]  
 17/06 • Saliva removers; Accessories therefor [5]
- 17/08 • • Aspiration nozzles [5]  
 17/10 • • with mouth props, tongue guards, tongue depressors or cheek spreaders [5]  
 17/12 • • Control devices, e.g. for suction [5]  
 17/14 • Dental appliances for receiving spittle, with or without rinsing means therefor, e.g. dental basins, spittoons, cuspidors [5]  
 17/16 • Power-driven cleaning or polishing devices [5]  
 17/18 • • Chiselling scalers (A61C 17/20 takes precedence) [5]  
 17/20 • • using ultrasonics [5]  
 17/22 • • with brushes, cushions, cups or the like (brush bodies, e.g. arrangements of the bristles, A46B) [5]  
 17/24 • • • rotating continuously (A61C 17/40 takes precedence) [5]  
 17/26 • • • • driven by electric motor [5]  
 17/28 • • • • with rinsing means [5]  
 17/30 • • • • driven by hydraulic motor, e.g. water motor [5]  
 17/32 • • • reciprocating or oscillating [5]  
 17/34 • • • • driven by electric motor [5]  
 17/36 • • • • with rinsing means [5]  
 17/38 • • • • driven by hydraulic motor, e.g. water motor [5]  
 17/40 • • • orbiting, e.g. nutating [5]
- 19/00 Dental auxiliary appliances** (dental chairs or accessories therefor, working stands whether or not combined with chairs A61G 15/00)  
 19/02 • Protective casings, e.g. boxes for instruments; Bags  
 19/04 • Measuring instruments specially adapted for dentistry (radiation diagnosis A61B 6/14)  
 19/045 • • for recording mandibular movement, e.g. face bows [5]  
 19/05 • • for determining occlusion [5]  
 19/055 • • Paralleling devices [5]  
 19/06 • Implements for therapeutic treatment (radiation therapy A61N 5/00)  
 19/08 • • combined with anaesthetising implements (dental hypodermic syringes A61M 5/00)  
 19/10 • Supports for artificial teeth for transport or for comparison of the colour

## A61D VETERINARY INSTRUMENTS, IMPLEMENTS, TOOLS, OR METHODS

### Note(s)

This subclass covers only instruments, implements, tools, or methods specially adapted for use with animals.

### Subclass index

SURGERY AND DENTAL TREATMENT.....1/00, 5/00  
 CARE OF ANIMALS.....7/00-13/00  
 IMPLEMENTS FOR RESTRAINING, FOR MOUTH-OPENING.....3/00, 15/00  
 DEVICES FOR INDICATING TROUBLE DURING LABOUR.....17/00  
 INSTRUMENTS OR METHODS FOR REPRODUCTION OR FERTILISATION.....19/00  
 SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....99/00

### 1/00 Surgical instruments for veterinary use

- 1/02 • Trocars or cannulas for teats; Vaccination appliances  
 1/04 • Cropping devices for tails or ears  
 1/06 • Castrating appliances

- 1/08 • Veterinary obstetrical instruments or devices (devices for indicating trouble during labour of animals A61D 17/00)  
 1/10 • Embryotomic instruments

## A61D

1/12	• Instruments for removing foreign bodies from animals' throats, oesophagus, or stomachs	9/02	• Prolapsus appliances
1/14	• Devices for degassing animals' stomachs	<b>11/00</b>	<b>Washing devices or gaseous curative baths specially adapted to veterinary purposes</b>
1/16	• Magnets for the stomach (A61D 1/12 takes precedence)	<b>13/00</b>	<b>Thermometer holders specially adapted to veterinary purposes</b>
<b>3/00</b>	<b>Appliances for supporting or fettering animals for operative purposes</b>	<b>15/00</b>	<b>Mouth openers</b>
<b>5/00</b>	<b>Instruments for treating animals' teeth</b>	<b>17/00</b>	<b>Devices for indicating trouble during labour of animals</b>
<b>7/00</b>	<b>Devices or methods for introducing solid, liquid, or gaseous remedies or other materials into or onto the bodies of animals</b> (for reproduction or fertilisation A61D 19/00) [5]	<b>19/00</b>	<b>Instruments or methods for reproduction or fertilisation [5]</b>
7/04	• Devices for anaesthetising animals by gases or vapours; Inhaling devices	19/02	• for artificial insemination [5]
		19/04	• for embryo transplantation [5]
<b>9/00</b>	<b>Bandages, poultices, compresses specially adapted to veterinary purposes</b>	<b>99/00</b>	<b>Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]</b>

**A61F FILTERS IMPLANTABLE INTO BLOOD VESSELS; PROSTHESES; DEVICES PROVIDING PATENCY TO, OR PREVENTING COLLAPSING OF, TUBULAR STRUCTURES OF THE BODY, E.G. STENTS; ORTHOPAEDIC, NURSING OR CONTRACEPTIVE DEVICES; FOMENTATION; TREATMENT OR PROTECTION OF EYES OR EARS; BANDAGES, DRESSINGS OR ABSORBENT PADS; FIRST-AID KITS** (dental prosthetics A61C) [6, 2006.01]

### Subclass index

FILTERS IMPLANTABLE INTO BLOOD VESSELS; PROSTHESES OR ACCESSORIES.....	2/00, 3/00
INVALID OPERATED APPARATUS OR DEVICES.....	4/00
ORTHOPAEDICS, NURSING, CONTRACEPTIVE DEVICES.....	5/00, 6/00
FOMENTATION, HEATING OR COOLING.....	7/00
TREATMENT OR PROTECTION OF THE EYES OR EARS, SUBSTITUTION BY OTHER SENSES.....	9/00, 11/00
BANDAGES, DRESSINGS OR ABSORBENT PADS; FIRST-AID KITS.....	13/00, 15/00, 17/00

### Filters; Devices providing patency to tubular structures; Prostheses; Accessories

<b>2/00</b>	<b>Filters implantable into blood vessels; Prostheses, i.e. artificial substitutes or replacements for parts of the body; Appliances for connecting them with the body; Devices providing patency to, or preventing collapsing of, tubular structures of the body, e.g. stents</b> (as cosmetic articles, <u>see</u> the relevant subclasses, e.g. wigs, hair pieces, A41G 3/00, A41G 5/00, artificial nails A45D 31/00; dental prostheses A61C 13/00; materials for prostheses A61L 27/00; artificial hearts A61M 1/10; artificial kidneys A61M 1/14) [4, 6, 2006.01]	2/16	• • • Intraocular lenses [4]
2/01	• Filters implantable into blood vessels [6]	2/18	• • Internal ear or nose parts, e.g. ear-drums [4]
2/02	• Prostheses implantable into the body [4]	2/20	• • Larynxes; Tracheae combined with larynxes or for use therewith (tracheae, bronchi <u>per se</u> A61F 2/04) [4]
2/04	• • Hollow or tubular parts of organs, e.g. bladders, tracheae, bronchi, bile ducts (A61F 2/18, A61F 2/20 take precedence; devices providing patency to, or preventing collapsing of, tubular structures of the body, e.g. stents A61F 2/82) [4, 2006.01]	2/24	• • Heart valves [4]
2/06	• • • Blood vessels [4]	2/26	• • Penis implants [4]
2/08	• • Muscles; Tendons; Ligaments [4]	2/28	• • Bones (joints A61F 2/30) [4]
2/10	• • Hair or skin implants [4]	2/30	• • Joints [4]
2/12	• • Mammary prostheses [4]	2/32	• • • for the hip [4]
2/14	• • Eye parts, e.g. lenses, corneal implants (removable contact lenses G02C 7/04); Artificial eyes (making thereof from organic plastic material B29C, B29D 11/02) [4]	2/34	• • • • Acetabular cups [4]
		2/36	• • • • Femoral heads [4]
		2/38	• • • for elbows or knees [4]
		2/40	• • • for shoulders [4]
		2/42	• • • for wrists or ankles; for hands, e.g. fingers; for feet, e.g. toes [4]
		2/44	• • • for the spine, e.g. vertebrae, spinal discs [4]
		2/46	• • • Special tools for implanting artificial joints (surgical instruments A61B 17/00) [4]
		2/48	• • Operating or control means, e.g. from outside the body, control of sphincters [4]
		2/50	• Prostheses not implantable in the body [4]
		2/52	• • Mammary prostheses (brassières A41C 3/00) [4]
		2/54	• • Artificial arms or hands or parts thereof [4]
		2/56	• • • adjustable [4]
		2/58	• • • Elbows; Wrists [4]
		2/60	• • Artificial legs or feet or parts thereof [4]

2/62	• • • adjustable, e.g. adjustable shank, thigh, or tubular skeletal system [4]	5/058	• • • • Splints (A61F 5/052 takes precedence) [6]
2/64	• • • Knee joints [4]	5/08	• • Devices for correcting deformities of the nose
2/66	• • • Feet; Ankle joints [4]	5/10	• • Devices for correcting deformities of the fingers
2/68	• • Operating or control means [4]	5/11	• • Devices for correcting deformities of the nails
2/70	• • • electrical [4]	5/14	• • Special medical insertions for shoes for flat-feet, club-feet, or the like (ordinary arch supports A43B 7/14)
2/72	• • • • Bioelectric control, e.g. myoelectric [4]	5/24	• • Trusses
2/74	• • • fluid [4]	5/26	• • • with belt springs
2/76	• • Means for assembling, fitting, or testing prostheses, e.g. for measuring or balancing [4]	5/28	• • • Supports for trusses
2/78	• • Means for protecting prostheses or for attaching them to the body, e.g. bandages, harnesses, straps, or stockings for the limb stump [4]	5/30	• • Pressure pads (corn-pads, corn-rings A61F 13/06)
2/80	• • • Sockets, e.g. of suction type [4]	5/32	• • • Adjustable pressure pads
2/82	• Devices providing patency to, or preventing collapsing of, tubular structures of the body, e.g. stents (for closing wounds, or holding wounds closed A61B 17/03; dilators A61M 29/00) [2006.01]	5/34	• • • Pressure pads filled with air or liquid (valves specially adapted for medical use A61M 39/00)
2/84	• • Instruments specially adapted for their placement or removal [2006.01]	5/37	• Restraining devices for the body or for body parts; Restraining shirts
2/86	• • Stents formed from wire-like elements [2006.01]	5/40	• Suspensory bandages
2/88	• • • formed as helical or spiral coils (nets formed from intersecting coils A61F 2/90) [2006.01]	5/41	• Devices for promoting penis erection (penis implants A61F 2/26; massage of the genitals A61H 19/00) [4]
2/90	• • • the wire-like elements forming a net structure [2006.01]	5/44	• Devices worn by the patient for reception of urine, faeces, catamenial or other discharge (absorbent pads, e.g. sanitary towels, A61F 13/15; drainage appliances for wounds A61M 27/00); Colostomy devices (adhesives for colostomy devices A61L 24/00; materials for colostomy devices A61L 28/00)
2/92	• • Stents in the form of a rolled-up sheet expanding after insertion into the vessel [2006.01]	5/441	• • having deodorant means, e.g. filters [4]
2/94	• • Stents retaining their form after locating in the predetermined place [2006.01]	5/442	• • having irrigation ports or means (irrigators A61M 3/02) [4]
3/00	<b>Lengthening pieces for natural legs</b>	5/443	• • having hydrocolloid type seals, e.g. gels, starches, karaya gums [4]
4/00	<b>Methods or devices enabling patients or disabled persons to operate an apparatus or a device not forming part of the body</b> (operating or control means for prostheses A61F 2/48, A61F 2/68) [4]	5/445	• • Colostomy devices (A61F 5/441, A61F 5/442, A61F 5/443 take precedence) [4]
5/00	<b>Orthopaedic methods or devices for non-surgical treatment of bones or joints</b> (surgical instruments or methods for treatment of bones or joints, devices specially adapted therefor A61B 17/56); <b>Nursing devices</b> (bandages, dressings or absorbent pads A61F 13/00) [3, 4, 5]	5/447	• • • Bag anticollapse features [4]
	<b>Note(s)</b>	5/448	• • • Means attaching bag to seal ring [4]
	This group <u>does not cover</u> chiropractic methods or devices, which are covered by group A61H 1/00.	5/449	• • • Body securing means, e.g. belts, garments [4]
5/01	• Orthopaedic devices, e.g. long-term immobilising or pressure directing devices for treating broken or deformed bones such as splints, casts or braces	5/451	• • Genital receptacles (A61F 5/441, A61F 5/442, A61F 5/443 take precedence) [4]
5/02	• • Orthopaedic corsets	5/452	• • • with separate faecal receiving compartment [4]
5/03	• • Corsets or bandages for abdomen, teat, or breast support, with or without pads (brassières A41C 3/00)	5/453	• • • for collecting urine or other discharge from male member (A61F 6/04 takes precedence) [4]
5/04	• • Devices for stretching or reducing fractured limbs; Devices for distractions; Splints [4]	5/455	• • • for collecting urine or discharge from female member [4]
5/042	• • • for extension or stretching [6]	5/457	• • • Body securing means, e.g. belts, straps or harnesses [4]
5/045	• • • • Equipment for beds, treatment tables, floor frames or the like [6]	5/458	• • • • adherent or inflatable type [4]
5/048	• • • • Traction splints [6]	5/48	• Devices for preventing wetting or pollution of the bed
5/05	• • • for immobilising (A61F 5/042 takes precedence) [6]	5/50	• Devices for preventing finger-sucking
5/052	• • • • specially adapted to facilitate walking, e.g. ambulatory braces [6]	5/56	• Devices for preventing snoring
5/055	• • • • Cervical collars [6]	5/58	• Apparatus for correcting stammering or stuttering
		6/00	<b>Contraceptive devices; Pessaries; Applicators therefor</b> (chemical aspects of contraception A61K) [5]
		6/02	• for use by males (A61F 6/20 takes precedence) [5]
		6/04	• • Condoms, sheaths or the like [5]
		6/06	• for use by females (A61F 6/20 takes precedence) [5]
		6/08	• • Pessaries, i.e. devices worn in the vagina to support the uterus, remedy a malposition or prevent conception [5]
		6/10	• • • Diaphragms [5]
		6/12	• • • Inserters or removers [5]
		6/14	• • intra-uterine type [5]
		6/16	• • • inflatable [5]
		6/18	• • • Inserters or removers [5]
		6/20	• Vas deferens occluders; Fallopian occluders [5]

## A61F

- 6/22 • • implantable in tubes [5]
- 6/24 • • characterised by valve means [5]
- 7/00 Heating or cooling appliances for medical or therapeutic treatment of the human body** (heating or cooling means in connection with bedsteads or mattresses A47C 21/00; hyperthermia using electric or magnetic fields or ultrasound A61N) [5]
- 7/02 • Compresses or poultices for effecting heating or cooling [3]
- 7/03 • • thermophore, i.e. self-heating [3]
- 7/08 • Warming pads, pans or mats (A61F 7/02 takes precedence); Hot-water bottles [3]
- 7/10 • Cooling bags, e.g. ice-bags
- 7/12 • Devices for heating or cooling internal body cavities

### Treatment or protection of the eyes or ears; Substitution by other senses

- 9/00 Methods or devices for treatment of the eyes; Devices for putting in contact-lenses; Devices to correct squinting; Apparatus to guide the blind; Protective devices for the eyes, carried on the body or in the hand** (caps with means for protecting the eyes A42B 1/06; visors for helmets A42B 3/22; eye baths A61H 35/02; sunglasses or goggles having the same features as spectacles G02C)
- 9/007 • Methods or devices for eye surgery [6]
- 9/008 • • using laser [7]
- 9/009 • • • Auxiliary devices for making contact with the eyeball and coupling-in laser light [7]
- 9/01 • • • Treatment of the cornea [7]
- 9/011 • • • invasive [7]
- 9/013 • • for compensation of ocular refraction (A61F 9/008 takes precedence) [6, 7]
- 9/02 • Goggles (for swimming A63B 33/00)
- 9/04 • Eye-masks
- 9/06 • • Masks, shields, or hoods for welders (safety devices for welding in general F16P 1/00)
- 9/08 • Devices or methods enabling eye-patients to replace direct visual perception by another kind of perception
- 11/00 Methods or devices for treatment of the ears, e.g. surgical; Protective devices for the ears, carried on the body or in the hand** (headwear, e.g. caps or helmets, with means for protecting the ears A42B 1/06, A42B 3/16)
- 11/04 • Devices or methods enabling ear patients to replace direct auditory perception by another kind of perception
- 11/06 • Protective devices for the ears [5]
- 11/08 • • internal, e.g. earplugs [5]
- 11/10 • • • inflatable or expandable [5]
- 11/12 • • • External mounting means [5]
- 11/14 • • external, e.g. earcaps or earmuffs [5]

### Bandages, dressings or absorbent pads; First-aid kits

- 13/00 Bandages or dressings** (suspensory bandages A61F 5/40; radioactive dressings A61M 36/14); **Absorbent pads** (chemical aspects of, or use of materials for, bandages, dressings or absorbent pads A61L 15/00, A61L 26/00)
- 13/02 • Adhesive plasters or dressings (A61F 13/06-A61F 13/15 take precedence; surgical adhesives or cements A61L 24/00) [4, 5]

- 13/04 • Plaster of Paris bandages; Other stiffening bandages (A61F 13/06-A61F 13/15 take precedence; orthopaedic casts made from stiffening bandages A61F 5/01)
- 13/06 • specially adapted for feet or legs; Corn-pads; Corn-rings
- 13/08 • • Elastic stockings; for contracting aneurisms
- 13/10 • specially adapted for fingers, hands, or arms; Finger-stalls; Nail-protectors
- 13/12 • specially adapted for the head or neck
- 13/14 • specially adapted for the breast or abdomen (corsets or bandages for support of breast or abdomen A61F 5/03)
- 13/15 • Absorbent pads, e.g. sanitary towels, swabs or tampons for external or internal application to the body (non-absorbent catamenial receptacles A61F 5/44); Supporting or fastening means therefor; Tampon applicators [5]
- 13/20 • • Tampons, e.g. catamenial tampons; Accessories therefor [5]
- 13/22 • • • Tampons made of rolled-up material [5]
- 13/24 • • • Cup-shaped type tampons [5]
- 13/26 • • • Means for inserting tampons [5]
- 13/28 • • • • with lubricating means [5]
- 13/30 • • • • Distal portion of inserting means being deformed, expanded, or ruptured to permit passage of insert therethrough [5]
- 13/32 • • • • with slidable ejector, e.g. plunger or ram, inside tubular inserting means [5]
- 13/34 • • • Means for withdrawing tampons [5]
- 13/36 • • Surgical swabs, e.g. for absorbency or packing body cavities during surgery (A61F 13/38, A61F 13/40 take precedence) [5]
- 13/38 • • Swabs having a stick-type handle (A61F 13/40 takes precedence) [5]
- 13/40 • • having means integral therewith for supplying media to the absorbent material, e.g. contained in a rupturable reservoir [5]
- 13/42 • • with wetness indicator or alarm [5]
- 13/44 • • with radio-opaque material or signalling means for residual material [5]
- 13/45 • • characterised by the shape (cup-shaped type tampons A61F 13/24) [7]
- 13/47 • • • Sanitary towels, incontinence pads or napkins (A61F 13/49 takes precedence) [7]
- 13/471 • • • • specially adapted for male use [7, 2006.01]
- 13/472 • • • • specially adapted for female use [7, 2006.01]
- 13/474 • • • • adjustable [7]
- 13/475 • • • • characterised by edge leakage prevention means [7]
- 13/476 • • • • characterised by encircling the crotch region of the undergarment, e.g. with flaps [7]
- 13/49 • • • specially adapted to be worn around the waist, e.g. diapers, nappies [7]
- 13/491 • • • • specially adapted for gender distinct urine discharge pattern [7]
- 13/493 • • • • adjustable [7]
- 13/494 • • • • characterised by edge leakage prevention means [7]
- 13/495 • • • • with faecal cavity [7]
- 13/496 • • • • in the form of pants or briefs [7]
- 13/505 • • with separable parts, e.g. combination of disposable and reusable parts (A61F 13/20 takes precedence; supporting or fastening means A61F 13/56) [7]

- 13/51 • • characterised by the outer layers of the pads (A61F 13/20 takes precedence) [7]
- 13/511 • • • Topsheet, i.e. the permeable cover or layer facing the skin [7]
- 13/512 • • • • characterised by its apertures, e.g. perforations [7]
- 13/513 • • • • having areas of different permeability [7]
- 13/514 • • • Backsheet, i.e. the impermeable cover or layer furthest from the skin [7]
- 13/515 • • • characterised by the interconnection of the topsheet and the backsheet [7]
- 13/53 • • characterised by the absorbing medium (A61F 13/20 takes precedence) [7]
- 13/531 • • • having a homogeneous composition through the thickness of the pad (A61F 13/538, A61F 13/539 take precedence) [7]
- 13/532 • • • • inhomogeneous in the plane of the pad [7]
- 13/533 • • • • • having discontinuous areas of compression [7]
- 13/534 • • • having an inhomogeneous composition through the thickness of the pad (A61F 13/538, A61F 13/539 take precedence; homogeneous cores with tissue wrapping A61F 13/531) [7]
- 13/535 • • • • inhomogeneous in the plane of the pad, e.g. core absorbent layers being of different sizes (A61F 13/537 takes precedence) [7]
- 13/536 • • • • • having discontinuous areas of compression [7]
- 13/537 • • • • characterised by a layer facilitating or inhibiting flow in one direction or plane, e.g. a wicking layer [7]
- 13/538 • • • characterised by specific fibre orientation or weave [7]
- 13/539 • • • characterised by the connection of absorbent layers with each other or with the outer layers [7]
- 13/551 • • Packages or wrapping arrangements for used pads, e.g. for disposal [7]
- 13/56 • • Supporting or fastening means [5]
- 13/58 • • • Adhesive tab fastener elements (A61F 13/66 takes precedence) [5]
- 13/60 • • • • with release means associated with tab fasteners [5]
- 13/62 • • • Fabric strip fastener elements, e.g. hook and loop (A61F 13/66 takes precedence) [5]
- 13/64 • • • Straps, belts, ties or endless bands (A61F 13/66 takes precedence) [5]
- 13/66 • • • Garments, holders or supports not integral with absorbent pads [5]
- 13/68 • • • • abdominal enclosing type [5]
- 13/70 • • • • • with openable or removable crotch portion [5]
- 13/72 • • • • • with endless waist encircling band, e.g. panty type [5]
- 13/74 • • • • having means to retain absorbent pads [5]
- 13/76 • • • • • transverse to width of the pads or fastener elements, e.g. straps, end flaps or tucks [5]
- 13/78 • • • • • Button or snap fastener elements [5]
- 13/80 • • • • adjustable relative to body crotch area [5]
- 13/82 • • • • with means for attaching to the body [5]
- 13/84 • • Accessories, not otherwise provided for, for absorbent pads [7]
- 15/00 Auxiliary appliances for wound dressings; Dispensing containers for dressings or bandages**
- 15/02 • Devices for cutting bandages of any kind, e.g. shears, cast-cutting saws
- 17/00 First-aid kits**

**A61G TRANSPORT, PERSONAL CONVEYANCES, OR ACCOMMODATION SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR PATIENTS OR DISABLED PERSONS** (appliances for aiding patients or disabled persons to walk A61H 3/00); **OPERATING TABLES OR CHAIRS; CHAIRS FOR DENTISTRY; FUNERAL DEVICES** (embalming corpses A01N 1/00)

**Subclass index**

MEANS FOR DISPLACING DISABLED PERSONS OR PATIENTS.....1/00-7/00  
 BEDS; TREATMENT ROOMS; NURSING FACILITIES.....7/00, 10/00, 9/00, 12/00  
 INCUBATORS OR COUVEUSES FOR BABIES.....11/00  
 APPLIANCES FOR OPERATING ROOMS OR DENTISTS ROOMS.....13/00, 15/00  
 FUNERAL DEVICES.....17/00-21/00  
 SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....99/00

**1/00 Stretchers**

- 1/003 • with facilities for picking up patients or disabled persons, e.g. break-away type or using endless belts [5]
- 1/007 • with skis or sled runners [5]
- 1/01 • Sheets specially adapted for use as or with stretchers [5]
- 1/013 • foldable or collapsible (A61G 1/017 takes precedence) [5]
- 1/017 • convertible into chairs [5]
- 1/02 • with wheels
- 1/04 • Parts, details or accessories, e.g. head-, foot-, or like rests specially adapted for stretchers [5]
- 1/044 • • Straps, bands or belts [5]

- 1/048 • • Handles [5]
- 1/052 • • Struts, spars or legs [5]
- 1/056 • • • Swivelling legs [5]
- 1/06 • Supports for stretchers, e.g. to be placed in or on vehicles

**3/00 Ambulance aspects of vehicles; Vehicles with special provisions for transporting patients or disabled persons, or their personal conveyances, e.g. for facilitating access of, or for loading, wheelchairs [5]**

- 3/02 • Loading or unloading personal conveyances; Facilitating access of patients or disabled persons to, or exit from, vehicles [5]

## A61G

- 3/04 • • Transfer of seated patients or disabled persons by swinging about an upright axis [5]
- 3/06 • • Transfer using ramps, lifts or the like (A61G 3/04 takes precedence) [5]
- 3/08 • Accommodating or securing wheelchairs [5]
- 5/00 Chairs or personal conveyances specially adapted for patients or disabled persons, e.g. wheelchairs** (devices enabling patients or disabled persons to operate an apparatus or device not forming part of the body A61F 4/00; bicycles specially adapted for disabled riders B62K 3/16) [1, 2006.01]
- Note(s)**  
Chairs for patients or disabled persons having removable seats specially adapted to be transferred with the patient or disabled person to a vehicle and support the patient or disabled person during use of the vehicle are classified in group A61G 3/00.
- 5/02 • propelled by the patient or disabled person
- 5/04 • motor-driven (A61G 5/06 takes precedence; motor-operated rests A61G 5/12) [5]
- 5/06 • with obstacle-mounting facilities, e.g. for climbing stairs [5]
- 5/08 • foldable [5]
- 5/10 • Parts, details or accessories [5]
- 5/12 • • Rests specially adapted therefor, e.g. for the head or feet [5]
- 5/14 • • Standing-up or sitting-down aids [5]

### **Beds or accessories for patients or disabled persons; Treatment rooms for medical purposes; Accommodation for nursing**

- 7/00 Beds specially adapted for nursing; Devices for lifting patients or disabled persons** (equipment for beds, treatment tables, floor frames or the like for extending or stretching A61F 5/045; stretchers with facilities for picking up patients or disabled persons A61G 1/003) [5, 6]
- 7/002 • having adjustable mattress frame [5]
- 7/005 • • tiltable around transverse horizontal axis, e.g. for Trendelenburg position [5]
- 7/008 • • tiltable around longitudinal axis, e.g. for rolling [5]
- 7/012 • • raising or lowering of the whole mattress frame (A61G 7/005, A61G 7/008 take precedence) [5]
- 7/015 • • divided into different adjustable sections, e.g. for Gatch position [5]
- 7/018 • • Control or drive mechanisms (A61G 7/005-A61G 7/015 take precedence) [5]
- 7/02 • with toilet conveniences, or specially adapted for use with, toilets [5]
- 7/043 • Beds for promoting or observing sleep [5]
- 7/047 • Beds for special sanitary purposes (A61G 7/02 takes precedence) [5]
- 7/05 • Parts, details or accessories of beds (devices for prevention against falling out A47C 21/08, A47D 7/00) [5]
- 7/053 • • Aids for getting into, or out of, bed, e.g. steps or chairs [5]
- 7/057 • • Arrangements for preventing bed-sores or for supporting patients with burns, e.g. mattresses specially adapted therefor [5]
- 7/065 • • Rests specially adapted therefor [5]
- 7/07 • • • for the head or torso [5]
- 7/075 • • • for the limbs [5]
- 7/08 • Apparatus for transporting beds

- 7/10 • Devices for lifting patients or disabled persons, e.g. special adaptations of hoists thereto
- 7/12 • • for hoisting the patient or disabled person under the arms (A61G 7/14 takes precedence) [5]
- 7/14 • • facilitating both lifting and lateral movement of the patient or disabled person [5]
- 7/16 • • converting a lying surface into a chair [5]
- 9/00 Bed-pans, urinals or other sanitary devices for bed-ridden persons; Cleaning devices therefor, e.g. combined with toilet-urinals** (urinals worn by the patient A61F 5/44)
- 9/02 • Cleaning devices [5]
- 10/00 Treatment rooms for medical purposes** (baby incubators, couveuses A61G 11/00; devices for gas baths with ozone, hydrogen or the like A61H 33/14; containers or portable cabins for affording breathing protection in general A62B 31/00) [4]
- 10/02 • with artificial climate; with means to maintain a desired pressure, e.g. for germ-free rooms [4]
- 10/04 • Oxygen tents [4]
- 11/00 Baby-incubators; Couvercles**
- 12/00 Accommodation for nursing, e.g. in hospitals, not covered by groups A61G 1/00-A61G 11/00, e.g. trolleys for transport of medicaments or food; Prescription lists**

### **Operating tables or chairs; Dental chairs**

- 13/00 Operating tables; Auxiliary appliances therefor** (illumination of operating tables F21L, F21Sor F21V)
- 13/02 • Adjustable operating tables; Controls therefor [5]
- 13/04 • • tiltable around transverse or longitudinal axis [5]
- 13/06 • • raising or lowering of the whole table surface (A61G 13/04 takes precedence) [5]
- 13/08 • • the table being divided into different adjustable sections [5]
- 13/10 • Parts, details or accessories (surgical drape sheets A61B 19/08) [5]
- 13/12 • • Rests specially adapted therefor; Arrangements of patient-supporting surfaces [5]
- 15/00 Operating chairs; Dental chairs; Accessories specially adapted therefor, e.g. work stands [5]**
- 15/02 • Chairs with means to adjust position of patient; Controls therefor [5]
- 15/04 • • to tilt patient [5]
- 15/06 • • to raise or lower patient (A61G 15/04 takes precedence) [5]
- 15/08 • • associated with seats for the surgeon or dentist [5]
- 15/10 • Parts, details or accessories (A61G 15/14 takes precedence; dental instruments A61C) [5]
- 15/12 • • Rests specially adapted therefor, e.g. for the head or feet [5]
- 15/14 • Dental work stands; Accessories therefor [5]
- 15/16 • • Storage, holding or carrying means for dental handpieces or the like [5]
- 15/18 • • • including retractor for storing flexible hose [5]

### **Funeral devices**

- 17/00 Coffins; Funeral wrappings; Funeral urns**
- 17/007 • characterised by the construction material used, e.g. biodegradable material; Use of several materials [5]



17/013	• Foldable coffins [5]	21/00	Funeral aspects of hearses or like vehicles [5]
17/02	• Coffin closures; Packings therefor		
17/04	• Fittings for coffins		
17/06	• Sacks for corpses; Corpse wrappings [5]		
17/08	• Urns	99/00	Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]
19/00	Hoisting or lowering devices for coffins		
A61H	<b>PHYSICAL THERAPY APPARATUS, e.g. DEVICES FOR LOCATING OR STIMULATING REFLEX POINTS IN THE BODY; ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION; MASSAGE; BATHING DEVICES FOR SPECIAL THERAPEUTIC OR HYGIENIC PURPOSES OR SPECIFIC PARTS OF THE BODY</b> (electrotherapy, magnetotherapy, radiation therapy, ultrasound therapy A61N)		

**Note(s)**

In this subclass, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:

- "physical therapy" covers the treatment of disease or disability by means, e.g. mechanical means, as opposed to drugs or surgery. It includes, by way of example, massage, whirlpool baths and devices for exercising a passive body member.

**Subclass index**

APPLIANCES FOR AIDING PATIENTS OR DISABLED PERSONS TO WALK ABOUT.....	3/00
APPARATUS FOR PASSIVE EXERCISING, FOR EXERCISING THE EYES.....	1/00, 5/00
MASSAGE	
Techniques of massage.....	7/00, 9/00, 15/00, 23/00
Belts, strips or combs for massage.....	11/00
Massage of particular parts of the body and devices therefor.....	13/00, 19/00, 21/00
Accessories for massage.....	37/00
ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION.....	31/00
THERAPEUTIC OR HYGIENIC BATHING.....	33/00, 35/00, 36/00
DEVICES FOR LOCATING OR STIMULATING REFLEX POINTS OF THE BODY.....	39/00
SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....	99/00

1/00	Apparatus for passive exercising (A61H 5/00 takes precedence); Vibrating apparatus; Chiropractic devices, e.g. body impacting devices, external devices for briefly extending or aligning unbroken bones [2]	15/00	Massage by means of rollers, balls, e.g. inflatable, chains, or roller chains
		15/02	• adapted for simultaneous treatment with light, heat, or drugs
	<b>Note(s)</b>	19/00	Massage of the genitals
	This group <u>does not cover</u> orthopaedic methods or devices, which are covered by group A61F 5/00	21/00	Massage devices for cavities of the body
1/02	• Stretching or bending apparatus for exercising	23/00	Percussion or vibration massage, e.g. using supersonic vibration; Suction-vibration massage; Massage with moving diaphragms
3/00	Appliances for aiding patients or disabled persons to walk about (apparatus for helping babies to walk A47D 13/04)	23/02	• with electric or magnetic drive [2]
3/02	• Crutches	23/04	• with hydraulic or pneumatic drive
3/04	• Wheeled walking aids for patients or disabled persons	23/06	• Hand percussion
3/06	• Walking aids for blind persons (replacing direct visual perception by another kind of perception A61F 9/08)	31/00	Artificial respiration or heart stimulation, e.g. heart massage (artificial respiration by treatment with gas or air, e.g. mouth-to-mouth respiration, A61M 16/00; applying electric currents by contact electrodes for stimulation, e.g. heart pace-makers, A61N 1/36)
5/00	Exercisers for the eyes	31/02	• "Iron-lungs", whether or not combined with gas breathing means
7/00	Devices for suction-kneading massage; Devices for massaging the skin by rubbing or brushing not otherwise provided for (electro-medical massage devices applying electric current by contact A61N 1/18)	33/00	Bathing devices for special therapeutic or hygienic purposes (A61H 35/00 takes precedence; for subaquatic intestinal cleaning A61M 9/00; electric or magnetic baths, applying ionised fluids A61N 1/44) [6]
9/00	Pneumatic or hydraulic massage	33/02	• Bathing devices for use with gas-containing liquid, or liquid in which gas is led or generated, e.g. carbon dioxide baths
11/00	Belts, strips, or combs for massage purposes	33/04	• Appliances for sand, mud, or foam baths; Appliances for metal baths, e.g. using metal salt solutions [6]
11/02	• Massage devices with strips oscillating lengthwise		
13/00	Gum massage		

## A61H

- 33/06 • Artificial hot-air or cold-air baths; Steam or gas baths or douches, e.g. sauna or Finnish baths (pneumatic chambers A61G 10/00)
- 33/08 • • Air douches for hygienic purposes
- 33/10 • • Devices on tubs for steam baths
- 33/12 • • Steam baths for the face
- 33/14 • Devices for gas baths with ozone, hydrogen, or the like
- 35/00 Baths for specific parts of the body, e.g. breast douches** (bidets without upward-spraying means A47K 3/26; devices for cleaning the buttocks A47K 7/08; for subaquatic intestinal cleaning A61M 9/00) **[6]**
- 35/02 • for the eyes **[6]**
- 35/04 • for the nose **[6]**

- 36/00 Sweating suits**
- 37/00 Accessories for massage [6]**
- 39/00 Devices for locating or stimulating specific reflex points of the body for physical therapy, e.g. acupuncture** (locating by bioelectric signal detection A61B 5/04; locating by using electric currents or magnetic fields A61B 5/05) **[2]**
- 39/02 • Devices for locating such points **[2]**
- 39/04 • Devices for pressing such points, e.g. shiatsu **[2]**
- 39/06 • Devices for heating or cooling such points within cell-life limits **[2]**
- 39/08 • Devices for applying needles to such points, i.e. for acupuncture **[2]**
- 99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]**

## A61J CONTAINERS SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR MEDICAL OR PHARMACEUTICAL PURPOSES; DEVICES OR METHODS SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR BRINGING PHARMACEUTICAL PRODUCTS INTO PARTICULAR PHYSICAL OR ADMINISTERING FORMS; DEVICES FOR ADMINISTERING FOOD OR MEDICINES ORALLY; BABY COMFORTERS; DEVICES FOR RECEIVING SPITTLE

### Subclass index

CONTAINERS SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR MEDICAL OR PHARMACEUTICAL PURPOSES.....	1/00
DEVICES OR METHODS SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR BRINGING PHARMACEUTICAL PRODUCTS INTO PARTICULAR PHYSICAL OR ADMINISTERING FORMS.....	3/00
ADMINISTRATION OF FOOD OR MEDICINE	
Feeding-bottles, teats, feeding-tubes.....	9/00, 11/00, 15/00
Other devices.....	7/00
Breast-nipple shields.....	13/00
BABY COMFORTERS.....	17/00
DEVICES FOR RECEIVING SPITTLE.....	19/00

- 1/00 Containers specially adapted for medical or pharmaceutical purposes** (capsules or the like for oral use A61J 3/07; boxes for medical appliances, doctors' bags A61B 19/02; containers for radioactive substances G21F 5/00) **[4, 5]**
- 1/03 • for pills or tablets (containers for pills or tablets with special dispensing means therefor B65D 83/04) **[5]**
- 1/05 • for collecting, storing or administering blood, plasma or medical fluids **[5]**
- 1/06 • • Ampoules or cartridges (syringe ampoules or cartridges A61M 5/28)
- 1/10 • • Bag-type containers **[5]**
- 1/12 • • • with means for holding samples of contents **[5]**
- 1/14 • • Details; Accessories therefor (A61J 7/00 takes precedence; openers B65D, B67B 7/00) **[5]**
- 1/16 • • • Holders for containers **[5]**
- 1/18 • • • Arrangements for indicating condition of container contents, e.g. sterile condition **[5]**
- 1/20 • • • Arrangements for transferring fluids, e.g. from vial to syringe **[5]**
- 1/22 • • • • with means for metering the amount of fluid **[5]**
- 3/00 Devices or methods specially adapted for bringing pharmaceutical products into particular physical or administering forms** (chemical aspects, see the relevant classes)
- 3/02 • into the form of powders
- 3/04 • into the form of ointments

- 3/06 • into the form of pills, lozenges or dragees
- 3/07 • into the form of capsules or similar small containers for oral use
- 3/08 • into the form of suppositories or sticks
- 3/10 • into the form of compressed tablets (tablet presses B30B 11/00)

### Administering medicines orally; Feeding-bottles in general; Teats; Devices for receiving spittle

- 7/00 Devices for administering medicines orally, e.g. spoons** (weighing spoons G01G 19/56); **Pill counting devices; Arrangements for time indication or reminder for taking medicine**
- 7/02 • Pill counting devices **[5]**
- 7/04 • Arrangements for time indication or reminder for taking medicine, e.g. programmed dispensers **[5]**
- 9/00 Feeding-bottles in general**
- 9/02 • with thermometers
- 9/04 • with means for supplying air
- 9/06 • Holders for bottles
- 9/08 • Protective covers for bottles
- 11/00 Teats**
- 11/02 • with means for supplying air
- 11/04 • with means for fastening to bottles
- 13/00 Breast-nipple shields**

**15/00 Feeding-tubes for therapeutic purposes**

**17/00 Baby comforters; Teething rings**

- Teething rings [5]

**19/00 Devices for receiving spittle, e.g. spittoons** (for dentists A61C 17/14; on invalid beds A61G 7/05)

- 19/02 • Sputum flasks
- 19/04 • Spittoons with water supply
- 19/06 • Combustible sputum cups

**A61K PREPARATIONS FOR MEDICAL, DENTAL, OR TOILET PURPOSES** (devices or methods specially adapted for bringing pharmaceutical products into particular physical or administering forms A61J 3/00; chemical aspects of, or use of materials for deodorisation of air, for disinfection or sterilisation, or for bandages, dressings, absorbent pads or surgical articles A61L; soap compositions C11D)

### Note(s)

- This subclass covers the following subject matter, whether set forth as a composition (mixture), process of preparing the composition or process of treating using the composition:
  - Drug or other biological compositions which are capable of:
    - preventing, alleviating, treating or curing abnormal or pathological conditions of the living body by such means as destroying a parasitic organism, or limiting the effect of the disease or abnormality by chemically altering the physiology of the host or parasite (biocides A01N 25/00-A01N 65/00);
    - maintaining, increasing, decreasing, limiting, or destroying a physiological body function, e.g. vitamin compositions, sex sterilants, fertility inhibitors, growth promoters, or the like (sex sterilants for invertebrates, e.g. insects, A01N; plant growth regulators A01N 25/00-A01N 65/00);
    - diagnosing a physiological condition or state by an *in vivo* test, e.g. X-ray contrast or skin patch test compositions (measuring or testing processes involving enzymes or micro-organisms C12Q; *in vitro* testing of biological material, e.g. blood, urine, G01N, e.g. G01N 33/48);
  - Body treating compositions generally intended for deodorising, protecting, adorning or grooming a body, e.g. cosmetics, dentifrices, tooth filling materials.
- Attention is drawn to the definitions of groups of chemical elements following the title of section C.
- Attention is drawn to the notes in class C07, for example the notes following the title of the subclass C07D, setting forth the rules for classifying organic compounds in that class, which rules are also applicable, if not otherwise indicated, to the classification of organic compounds in A61K.
- In this subclass, with the exception of group A61K 8/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
- Therapeutic activity of medicinal preparations is further classified in subclass A61P.

### Subclass index

DENTAL PREPARATIONS.....	6/00
COSMETICS, PERFUMES.....	8/00
PHARMACEUTICAL PREPARATIONS	
characterised by form.....	9/00
characterised by active ingredients	
organic active ingredients.....	31/00, 35/00, 36/00, 38/00
materials from animals, protozoa, bacteria or viruses.....	35/00
materials from algae, fungi lichens or plants.....	36/00
inorganic active ingredients.....	33/00, 35/00
obtained by treating material with wave energy or particle radiation.....	41/00
for testing <i>in vivo</i> .....	49/00, 51/00
radioactive ingredients.....	51/00
Vaccines.....	39/00, 45/00
Carriers.....	47/00
Medicinal preparations with genetic material, gene therapy.....	48/00

**6/00 Preparations for dentistry** (teeth cleaning preparations A61K 8/00, A61Q 11/00; fastening dental prostheses in the mouth using adhesive foils or adhesive compositions A61C 13/23) [3]

- 6/02 • Use of preparations for artificial teeth, for filling or for capping teeth [3]

- 6/027 • • Use of non-metallic elements or compounds thereof, e.g. carbon [5]

- 6/033 • • • Phosphorus compounds, e.g. apatite [5]

- 6/04 • • Use of metals or alloys [3]

- 6/05 • • • Amalgams [5]

- 6/06 • • Use of inorganic cements [3]

- 6/08 • • Use of natural or synthetic resins [3]

- 6/083 • • • Compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]

- 6/087 • • • Compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]

- 6/09 • • • Polyurethanes [5]

- 6/093 • • • Polyorganosilicon compounds [5]

- 6/097 • • • Polysaccharides [5]

- 6/10 • Compositions for taking dental impressions [3]

**8/00 Cosmetics or similar toilet preparations [2006.01]**

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

Use of cosmetics or similar toilet preparations is further classified in subclass A61K.

- 8/02 • characterised by special physical form [2006.01]

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

In this group, in the absence of an indication of the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

- 8/03 • • Liquid compositions with two or more distinct layers [2006.01]

- 8/04 • • Dispersions; Emulsions [2006.01]

- 8/06 • • • Emulsions [2006.01]

- 8/11 • • Encapsulated compositions [2006.01]

- 8/14 • • Liposomes [2006.01]

- 8/18 • characterised by the composition [2006.01]

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

In this group, in the absence of an indication of the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

- 8/19 • • containing inorganic ingredients [2006.01]

- 8/20 • • • Halogens; Compounds thereof [2006.01]

- 8/21 • • • • Fluorides; Derivatives thereof [2006.01]

- 8/22 • • • Peroxides; Oxygen; Ozone [2006.01]

- 8/23 • • • Sulfur; Selenium; Tellurium; Compounds thereof [2006.01]

- 8/24 • • • Phosphorus; Compounds thereof [2006.01]

- 8/25 • • • Silicon; Compounds thereof [2006.01]

- 8/26 • • • Aluminium; Compounds thereof [2006.01]

- 8/27 • • • Zinc; Compounds thereof [2006.01]

- 8/28 • • • Zirconium; Compounds thereof [2006.01]

- 8/29 • • • Titanium; Compounds thereof [2006.01]

- 8/30 • • containing organic compounds [2006.01]

- 8/31 • • • Hydrocarbons [2006.01]

- 8/33 • • • containing oxygen [2006.01]

- 8/34 • • • • Alcohols [2006.01]

- 8/35 • • • • Ketones, e.g. quinones, benzophenone [2006.01]

- 8/36 • • • • Carboxylic acids; Salts or anhydrides thereof [2006.01]

- 8/362 • • • • • Polycarboxylic acids [2006.01]

- 8/365 • • • • • Hydroxycarboxylic acids; Ketocarboxylic acids [2006.01]

- 8/368 • • • • • with carboxyl groups directly bound to carbon atoms of aromatic rings [2006.01]

- 8/37 • • • • Esters of carboxylic acids [2006.01]

- 8/38 • • • • Percompounds, e.g. peracids [2006.01]

- 8/39 • • • • Derivatives containing from 2 to 10 oxyalkylene groups [2006.01]

- 8/40 • • • containing nitrogen (quinones containing nitrogen A61K 8/35) [2006.01]

- 8/41 • • • • Amines [2006.01]

- 8/42 • • • • Amides [2006.01]

- 8/43 • • • • Guanidines [2006.01]

- 8/44 • • • • Aminocarboxylic acids or derivatives thereof, e.g. aminocarboxylic acids containing sulfur; Salts, esters or N-acylated derivatives thereof [2006.01]

- 8/45 • • • • Derivatives containing from 2 to 10 oxyalkylene groups [2006.01]

- 8/46 • • • containing sulfur (A61K 8/44 takes precedence) [2006.01]

- 8/49 • • • containing heterocyclic compounds [2006.01]

- 8/55 • • • containing phosphorus [2006.01]

- 8/58 • • • containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, halogen, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur or phosphorus [2006.01]

- 8/60 • • • Sugars; Derivatives thereof [2006.01]

- 8/63 • • • Steroids; Derivatives thereof [2006.01]

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

This group covers steroids, as defined in Note (1) after the title of subclass C07J.

- 8/64 • • • Proteins; Peptides; Derivatives or degradation products thereof [2006.01]

- 8/65 • • • • Collagen; Gelatin; Keratin; Derivatives or degradation products thereof [2006.01]

- 8/66 • • • • Enzymes [2006.01]

- 8/67 • • • Vitamins [2006.01]

- 8/68 • • • Sphingolipids, e.g. ceramides, cerebroside, gangliosides [2006.01]

- 8/69 • • • containing fluorine [2006.01]

- 8/70 • • • • containing perfluoro groups, e.g. perfluoroethers [2006.01]

- 8/72 • • containing organic macromolecular compounds [2006.01]

- 8/73 • • • Polysaccharides [2006.01]

- 8/81 • • • obtained by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2006.01]

- 8/84 • • • obtained by reactions other than those involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2006.01]

- 8/85 • • • • Polyesters [2006.01]

- 8/86 • • • • Polyethers [2006.01]

- 8/87 • • • • Polyurethanes [2006.01]

- 8/88 • • • • Polyamides [2006.01]

- 8/89 • • • • Polysiloxanes [2006.01]

- 8/891 • • • • • saturated, e.g. dimethicone, phenyl trimethicone, C24-C28 methicone or stearyl dimethicone [2006.01]

- 8/892 • • • • • modified by a hydroxy group, e.g. dimethiconol [2006.01]

- 8/893 • • • • • modified by an alkoxy or aryloxy group, e.g. behenoxy dimethicone or stearoxy dimethicone [2006.01]

- 8/894 • • • • • modified by a polyoxyalkylene group, e.g. cetyl dimethicone copolyol [2006.01]

- 8/895 • • • • • containing silicon bound to unsaturated aliphatic groups, e.g. vinyl dimethicone [2006.01]

- 8/896 • • • • • containing atoms other than silicon, carbon, oxygen and hydrogen, e.g. dimethicone copolyol phosphate [2006.01]

- 8/897 • • • • • containing halogen, e.g. fluorosilicones [2006.01]

- 8/898 • • • • • containing nitrogen, e.g. amodimethicone, trimethyl silyl amodimethicone or dimethicone propyl PG-betaine [2006.01]

- 8/899 • • • • • containing sulfur, e.g. sodium PG-propyldimethicone thiosulfate copolyol [2006.01]

- 8/90 • • • Block copolymers (A61K 8/89 takes precedence) [2006.01]

- 8/91 • • • Graft copolymers (A61K 8/89 takes precedence) [2006.01]
- 8/92 • • Oils, fats or waxes; Derivatives thereof, e.g. hydrogenation products [2006.01]
- 8/96 • • containing materials, or derivatives thereof, of undetermined constitution [2006.01]
- 8/97 • • • of vegetable origin, e.g. plant extracts [2006.01]
- 8/98 • • • of animal origin [2006.01]
- 8/99 • • • from micro-organisms [2006.01]

#### 9/00 Medicinal preparations characterised by special physical form

- 9/02 • Suppositories; Bougies; Bases for suppositories or bougies (apparatus for making A61J 3/08; devices for introducing into the body A61M 31/00)
- 9/06 • Ointments; Bases therefor (apparatus for making A61J 3/04)
- 9/08 • Solutions [2, 3]
- 9/10 • Dispersions; Emulsions [2, 3]
- 9/107 • • Emulsions [5]
- 9/113 • • • Multiple emulsions, e.g. oil-in-water-in-oil [5]
- 9/12 • • Aerosols; Foams [2, 3]
- 9/127 • • Liposomes [5]
- 9/133 • • • Unilamellar vesicles [5]
- 9/14 • Particulate form, e.g. powders (microcapsules A61K 9/50) [2]
- 9/16 • • Agglomerates; Granulates; Microbeadlets [2]
- 9/18 • • Adsorbates [2]
- 9/19 • • lyophilised [6]
- 9/20 • Pills, lozenges or tablets [2]
- 9/22 • • Sustained or differential release type [2]
- 9/24 • • • Layered or laminated unitary dosage forms [2]
- 9/26 • • • Discrete particles in supporting matrix [2]
- 9/28 • • Dragees; Coated pills or tablets [2]
- 9/30 • • • Organic coatings [2]
- 9/32 • • • • containing solid synthetic polymers [2]
- 9/34 • • • • containing natural gums or resins [2]
- 9/36 • • • • containing carbohydrates or derivatives thereof (A61K 9/34 takes precedence) [2]
- 9/38 • • • • containing proteins or derivatives thereof [2]
- 9/40 • • • • • Gelatin containing [2]
- 9/42 • • • • containing waxes, higher fatty acids, higher fatty alcohols, or derivatives thereof, e.g. chocolate [2]
- 9/44 • • printed, embossed, grooved, or perforated [2]
- 9/46 • • effervescent [2]
- 9/48 • Preparations in capsules, e.g. of gelatin, of chocolate [2]
- 9/50 • • Microcapsules (A61K 9/52 takes precedence) [2]
- 9/51 • • • Nanocapsules [5]
- 9/52 • • Sustained or differential release type [2]
- 9/54 • • • containing discrete particles with coatings of different thicknesses or different materials [2]
- 9/56 • • • • Organic coatings [2]
- 9/58 • • • • • containing solid synthetic polymers [2]
- 9/60 • • • • • containing natural gums or resins [2]
- 9/62 • • • • • containing carbohydrates or derivatives thereof (A61K 9/60 takes precedence) [2]
- 9/64 • • • • • containing proteins or derivatives thereof [2]
- 9/66 • • • containing emulsions, dispersions or solutions [2]
- 9/68 • chewing gum type [2]
- 9/70 • Web, sheet or filament bases [2]

- 9/72 • for smoking or inhaling [2]

#### Note(s) [2006.01]

1. A composition, i.e. a mixture of two or more components, is classified in the last of groups A61K 31/00-A61K 47/00 that provides for at least one of these components. The components may be single compounds or other single ingredients.
2. Any part of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (1), and which itself is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in the last appropriate place in groups A61K 31/00-A61K 47/00. The part can be either a single component or a composition in itself.
3. Any part of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (1) or (2), and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in the last appropriate place in groups A61K 31/00-A61K 47/00. This can for example be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as "additional information".

#### 31/00 Medicinal preparations containing organic active ingredients [2]

##### Note(s)

1. Organic active compounds forming salts or complexes with heavy metals are not classified in groups A61K 31/28, A61K 31/555 or A61K 31/7135, unless explicit indication to the contrary is made, e.g. hemin A61K 31/555.
2. In this group, the expressions "containing further heterocyclic rings" and "condensed with heterocyclic rings" also cover compounds having two or more identical heterocyclic rings.

- 31/01 • Hydrocarbons [2]
- 31/015 • • carbocyclic [2]
- 31/02 • Halogenated hydrocarbons [2]
- 31/025 • • carbocyclic [2]
- 31/03 • • • aromatic [2]
- 31/035 • • • having aliphatic unsaturation [2]
- 31/04 • Nitro compounds [2]
- 31/045 • Hydroxy compounds, e.g. alcohols; Salts thereof, e.g. alcoholates (hydroperoxides A61K 31/327) [2, 7]
- 31/047 • • having two or more hydroxy groups, e.g. sorbitol [7]
- 31/05 • • Phenols [2]
- 31/055 • • • the aromatic ring being substituted by halogen [2]
- 31/06 • • • the aromatic ring being substituted by nitro groups [2]
- 31/065 • • Diphenyl-substituted acyclic alcohols [2]
- 31/07 • • Retinol compounds, e.g. vitamin A (retinoic acids A61K 31/203) [2, 7]
- 31/075 • Ethers or acetals [2]
- 31/08 • • acyclic, e.g. paraformaldehyde [2]
- 31/085 • • having an ether linkage to aromatic ring nuclear carbon [2]
- 31/09 • • • having two or more such linkages [2]
- 31/095 • Sulfur, selenium or tellurium compounds, e.g. thiols [2]
- 31/10 • • Sulfides; Sulfoxides; Sulfones [2]

- 31/105 • • Persulfides (thiuram disulfides A61K 31/145; thiosulfonic acids A61K 31/185) [2]
- 31/11 • Aldehydes [2]
- 31/115 • • Formaldehyde [2]
- 31/12 • Ketones [2]
- 31/121 • • acyclic [7]
- 31/122 • • having the oxygen atom directly attached to a ring, e.g. quinones, vitamin K<sub>1</sub>, anthralin [7]
- 31/125 • • • Camphor; Nuclear substituted derivatives thereof [2]
- 31/13 • Amines, e.g. amantadine (A61K 31/04 takes precedence) [2]
- 31/131 • • acyclic [7]
- 31/132 • • having two or more amino groups, e.g. spermidine, putrescine [7]
- 31/133 • • having hydroxy groups, e.g. sphingosine [7]
- 31/135 • • having aromatic rings, e.g. methadone [2, 7]
- 31/136 • • • having the amino group directly attached to the aromatic ring, e.g. benzeneamine [7]
- 31/137 • • • Arylalkylamines, e.g. amphetamine, epinephrine, salbutamol, ephedrine [7]
- 31/138 • • • Aryloxyalkylamines, e.g. propranolol, tamoxifen, phenoxybenzamine (atenolol A61K 31/165; pindolol A61K 31/404; timolol A61K 31/5377) [7]
- 31/14 • • Quaternary ammonium compounds, e.g. edrophonium, choline (betaines A61K 31/205) [2]
- 31/145 • • having sulfur atoms, e.g. thiurams ( $\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{S})-\text{S}-\text{C}(\text{S})-\text{N}$  or  $\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{S})-\text{S}-\text{S}-\text{C}(\text{S})-\text{N}$ ); Sulfinylamines ( $-\text{N}=\text{SO}$ ); Sulfonylamine ( $-\text{N}=\text{SO}_2$ ) (isothioureas A61K 31/155) [2, 7]
- 31/15 • • Oximes ( $\text{C}=\text{N}-\text{O}-$ ); Hydrazines ( $\text{N}-\text{N}$ ); Hydrazones ( $\text{N}=\text{N}=\text{N}$ ) [2]
- 31/155 • • Amidines ( $-\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{N})-\text{N}-$ ), e.g. guanidine ( $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{C}(=\text{NH})-\text{NH}_2$ ), isourea ( $\text{HN}=\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{NH}_2$ ), isothiourea ( $\text{HN}=\text{C}(\text{SH})-\text{NH}_2$ ) [2]
- 31/16 • Amides, e.g. hydroxamic acids [2]
- 31/164 • • of a carboxylic acid with an aminoalcohol, e.g. ceramides [7]
- 31/165 • • having aromatic rings, e.g. colchicine, atenolol, progabide [2]
- 31/166 • • • having the carbon atom of a carboxamide group directly attached to the aromatic ring, e.g. procainamide, procarbazine, metoclopramide, labetalol [7]
- 31/167 • • • having the nitrogen atom of a carboxamide group directly attached to the aromatic ring, e.g. lidocaine, paracetamol [7]
- 31/17 • • having the group  $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{N}$  or  $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{S})-\text{N}$ , e.g. urea, thiourea, carmustine (isoureas, isothioureas A61K 31/155; sulfonylureas A61K 31/64) [2, 7]
- 31/175 • • • having the group  $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{N}=\text{N}$ ,  $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{N}=\text{N}-$  or  $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{O})-\text{N}=\text{N}$ , e.g. carbonohydrazides, carbazones, semicarbazides, semicarbazones; Thioanalogues thereof [2, 7]
- 31/18 • • Sulfonamides (compounds containing a para-N-benzene-sulfonyl-N-group A61K 31/63) [2]
- 31/185 • Acids; Anhydrides, halides or salts thereof, e.g. sulfur acids, imidic, hydrazonic or hydroximic acids (hydroxamic acids A61K 31/16; peroxy acids A61K 31/327) [2, 7]
- 31/19 • • Carboxylic acids, e.g. valproic acid (salicylic acid A61K 31/60) [2, 7]

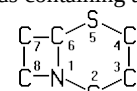
- 31/191 • • • Acyclic acids having two or more hydroxy groups, e.g. gluconic acid [7]
- 31/192 • • • having aromatic groups, e.g. sulindac, 2-aryl-propionic acids, ethacrynic acid [7]
- 31/194 • • • having two or more carboxyl groups, e.g. succinic, maleic or phthalic acid [7]
- 31/195 • • • having an amino group [2, 7]
- Note(s)**  
In this group, the expression "amino group" also covers "acyl amino group".
- 31/196 • • • the amino group being directly attached to a ring, e.g. anthranilic acid, mefenamic acid, diclofenac, chlorambucil [7]
- 31/197 • • • the amino and the carboxyl groups being attached to the same acyclic carbon chain, e.g. gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA), beta-alanine, epsilon-aminocaproic acid, pantothenic acid (carnitine A61K 31/205) [7]
- 31/198 • • • • Alpha-amino acids, e.g. alanine, edetic acid (EDTA) (betaine A61K 31/205; proline A61K 31/401; tryptophan A61K 31/405; histidine A61K 31/4172; peptides not degraded to individual amino acids A61K 38/00) [7]
- 31/20 • • • having a carboxyl group bound to an acyclic chain of seven or more carbon atoms, e.g. stearic, palmitic or arachidic acid [2]
- 31/201 • • • • having one or two double bonds, e.g. oleic or linoleic acid [7]
- 31/202 • • • • having three or more double bonds, e.g. linolenic acid (eicosanoids, e.g. leukotrienes, A61K 31/557) [7]
- 31/203 • • • • Retinoic acids [7]
- 31/205 • • Amine addition salts of organic acids; Inner quaternary ammonium salts, e.g. betaine, carnitine [2]
- 31/21 • Esters, e.g. nitroglycerine, selenocyanates [2]
- 31/215 • • of carboxylic acids [2]
- 31/216 • • • of acids having aromatic rings, e.g. benactizyne, clofibrate [7]
- 31/22 • • • of acyclic acids, e.g. pravastatin [2]
- 31/221 • • • • with compounds having an amino group, e.g. acetylcholine, acetylcarnitine [7]
- 31/222 • • • • with compounds having aromatic groups, e.g. dipivefrine, ibopamine [7]
- 31/223 • • • • of alpha-amino acids [7]
- 31/225 • • • • Polycarboxylic acids [2]
- 31/23 • • • • of acids having a carboxyl group bound to a chain of seven or more carbon atoms [2]
- 31/231 • • • • • having one or two double bonds [7]
- 31/232 • • • • • having three or more double bonds, e.g. etretinate [7]
- 31/235 • • • having an aromatic ring attached to a carboxyl group [2]
- 31/24 • • • • having an amino or nitro group [2]
- 31/245 • • • • • Amino benzoic acid types, e.g. procaine, novocaine (salicylic acid esters A61K 31/60) [2]
- 31/25 • • • with polyoxyalkylated alcohols, e.g. esters of polyethylene glycol [2]
- 31/255 • • of sulfoxy acids or sulfur analogues thereof [2]
- 31/26 • • Cyanate or isocyanate esters; Thiocyanate or isothiocyanate esters [2, 7]
- 31/265 • • of carbonic, thiocarbonic or thiocarboxylic acids, e.g. thioacetic acid, xanthogenic acid, trithiocarbonic acid [2]

- 31/27 • • of carbamic or thiocarbamic acids, e.g. meprobamate, carbachol, neostigmine [2]
- 31/275 • Nitriles; Isonitriles [2]
- 31/277 • • having a ring, e.g. verapamil [7]
- 31/28 • Compounds containing heavy metals [2]
- 31/282 • • Platinum compounds [7]
- 31/285 • • Arsenic compounds [2]
- 31/29 • • Antimony or bismuth compounds [2]
- 31/295 • • Iron group metal compounds [2]
- 31/30 • • Copper compounds [2]
- 31/305 • • Mercury compounds [2]
- 31/31 • • • containing nitrogen [2]
- 31/315 • • Zinc compounds [2]
- 31/32 • • Tin compounds [2]
- 31/325 • Carbamic acids; Thiocarbamic acids; Anhydrides or salts thereof (thiurams A61K 31/145) [2]
- 31/327 • Peroxy compounds, e.g. hydroperoxides, peroxides, peroxy acids [7]
- 31/33 • Heterocyclic compounds [2]
- 31/335 • • having oxygen as the only ring hetero atom, e.g. fungichromin [2]
- 31/336 • • • having three-membered rings, e.g. oxirane, fumagillin [7]
- 31/337 • • • having four-membered rings, e.g. taxol [7]
- 31/34 • • • having five-membered rings with one oxygen as the only ring hetero atom, e.g. isosorbide [2]
- 31/341 • • • • not condensed with another ring, e.g. ranitidine, furosemide, bufetolol, muscarine [7]
- 31/343 • • • • condensed with a carbocyclic ring, e.g. coumaran, bufuralol, befunolol, clobenfurol, amiodarone [7]
- 31/345 • • • • Nitrofurans (nitrofurantoin A61K 31/4178) [2, 7]
- 31/35 • • • having six-membered rings with one oxygen as the only ring hetero atom [2]
- 31/351 • • • • not condensed with another ring [7]
- 31/352 • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings, e.g. cannabinoids, methantheline [7]
- 31/353 • • • • • 3,4-Dihydrobenzopyrans, e.g. chroman, catechin [7]
- 31/355 • • • • • Tocopherols, e.g. vitamin E [2]
- 31/357 • • • having two or more oxygen atoms in the same ring, e.g. crown ethers, guanadrel [7]
- 31/36 • • • • Compounds containing methylenedioxyphenyl groups, e.g. sesamin [2]
- 31/365 • • • Lactones [2]
- 31/366 • • • • having six-membered rings, e.g. delta-lactones [7]
- 31/37 • • • • • Coumarins, e.g. psoralen [2]
- 31/375 • • • • Ascorbic acid, i.e. vitamin C; Salts thereof [2]
- 31/38 • • having sulfur as a ring hetero atom [2]
- 31/381 • • • having five-membered rings [7]
- 31/382 • • • having six-membered rings, e.g. thioxanthenes (thiothixene A61K 31/496) [7]
- 31/385 • • • having two or more sulfur atoms in the same ring [2]
- 31/39 • • • having oxygen atoms in the same ring [2]
- 31/395 • • having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. guanethidine, rifamycins (rifampin A61K 31/496) [2, 7]
- 31/396 • • • having three-membered rings, e.g. aziridine [7]
- 31/397 • • • having four-membered rings, e.g. azetidine [7]
- 31/40 • • • having five-membered rings with one nitrogen as the only ring hetero atom, e.g. sulpiride, succinimide, tolmetin, buflomedil [2]
- 31/401 • • • • Proline; Derivatives thereof, e.g. captopril [7]
- 31/4015 • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. piracetam, ethosuximide [7]
- 31/402 • • • • 1-aryl-substituted, e.g. piretanide [7]
- 31/4025 • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings, e.g. cromakalim [7]
- 31/403 • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings, e.g. carbazole [7]
- 31/4035 • • • • • Isoindoles, e.g. phthalimide [7]
- 31/404 • • • • • Indoles, e.g. pindolol [7]
- 31/4045 • • • • • • Indole-alkylamines; Amides thereof, e.g. serotonin, melatonin [7]
- 31/405 • • • • • • Indole-alkanecarboxylic acids; Derivatives thereof, e.g. tryptophan, indomethacin [2]
- 31/407 • • • • condensed with heterocyclic ring systems, e.g. ketorolac, physostigmine [7]
- 31/409 • • • • having four such rings, e.g. porphine derivatives, bilirubin, biliverdine (hemin, hematin A61K 31/555) [7]
- 31/41 • • • having five-membered rings with two or more ring hetero atoms, at least one of which is nitrogen, e.g. tetrazole [2]
- 31/415 • • • • 1,2-Diazoles [2, 7]
- 31/4152 • • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. antipyrine, phenylbutazone, sulfinpyrazone [7]
- 31/4155 • • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/416 • • • • • condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. indazole [7]
- 31/4162 • • • • • condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/4164 • • • • • 1,3-Diazoles [7]
- 31/4166 • • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. phenytoin [7]
- 31/4168 • • • • • having a nitrogen atom attached in position 2, e.g. clonidine [7]
- 31/417 • • • • • Imidazole-alkylamines, e.g. histamine, phentolamine [7]
- 31/4172 • • • • • • Imidazole-alkanecarboxylic acids, e.g. histidine [7]
- 31/4174 • • • • • Arylalkylimidazoles, e.g. oxymetazolin, naphazoline, miconazole [7]
- 31/4178 • • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings, e.g. pilocarpine, nitrofurantoin [7]
- 31/4184 • • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings, e.g. benzimidazoles [7]
- 31/4188 • • • • • condensed with heterocyclic ring systems, e.g. biotin, sorbinil [7]
- 31/4192 • • • • 1,2,3-Triazoles [7]
- 31/4196 • • • • 1,2,4-Triazoles [7]
- 31/42 • • • • Oxazoles [2, 7]
- 31/421 • • • • • 1,3-Oxazoles, e.g. pemoline, trimethadione [7]
- 31/422 • • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/423 • • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings [7]
- 31/424 • • • • • condensed with heterocyclic ring systems, e.g. clavulanic acid [7]

- 31/4245 • • • • Oxadiazoles [7]
- 31/425 • • • • Thiazoles [2, 7]
- 31/426 • • • • 1,3-Thiazoles [7]
- 31/427 • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/428 • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings [7]
- 31/429 • • • • condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/43 • • • • Compounds containing 4-thia-1-azabicyclo [3.2.0] heptane ring systems, i.e. compounds containing a ring system of the formula
- C1CN2C(S1)CCC2, e.g. penicillins, penems [2, 6]
- 31/431 • • • • containing further heterocyclic ring systems, e.g. ticarcillin, azlocillin, oxacillin [7]
- 31/433 • • • • Thiadiazoles [7]
- 31/435 • • • having six-membered rings with one nitrogen as the only ring hetero atom [2]
- 31/4353 • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/4355 • • • • the heterocyclic ring system containing a five-membered ring having oxygen as a ring hetero atom [7]
- 31/436 • • • • the heterocyclic ring system containing a six-membered ring having oxygen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. rapamycin [7]
- 31/4365 • • • • the heterocyclic ring system having sulfur as a ring hetero atom, e.g. ticlopidine [7]
- 31/437 • • • • the heterocyclic ring system containing a five-membered ring having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. indolizine, beta-carboline [7]
- 31/4375 • • • • the heterocyclic ring system containing a six-membered ring having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. quinolizines, naphthyridines, berberine, vincamine [7]
- 31/438 • • • • the ring being spiro-condensed with carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/439 • • • • the ring forming part of a bridged ring system, e.g. quinuclidine (8-azabicyclo [3.2.1] octanes A61K 31/46) [7]
- 31/44 • • • • Non-condensed pyridines; Hydrogenated derivatives thereof [2, 7]
- 31/4402 • • • • only substituted in position 2, e.g. pheniramine, bisacodyl [7]
- 31/4406 • • • • only substituted in position 3, e.g. zimeldine (nicotinic acid A61K 31/455) [7]
- 31/4409 • • • • only substituted in position 4, e.g. isoniazid, iproniazid [7]
- 31/4412 • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring [7]
- 31/4415 • • • • Pyridoxine, i.e. vitamin B<sub>6</sub> (pyridoxal phosphate A61K 31/675) [7]
- 31/4418 • • • • having a carbocyclic ring directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. cyproheptadine [7]
- 31/4422 • • • • 1,4-Dihydropyridines, e.g. nifedipine, nicardipine [7]
- 31/4425 • • • • Pyridinium derivatives, e.g. pralidoxime, pyridostigmine [7]
- 31/4427 • • • • containing further heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/443 • • • • containing a five-membered ring with oxygen as a ring hetero atom [7]
- 31/4433 • • • • containing a six-membered ring with oxygen as a ring hetero atom [7]
- 31/4436 • • • • containing a heterocyclic ring having sulfur as a ring hetero atom [7]
- 31/4439 • • • • containing a five-membered ring with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. omeprazole (nicotine A61K 31/465) [7]
- 31/444 • • • • containing a six-membered ring with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. amrinone [7]
- 31/445 • • • • Non-condensed piperidines, e.g. piperocaine [2, 7]
- 31/4453 • • • • only substituted in position 1, e.g. propipocaine, dipiperodon [7]
- 31/4458 • • • • only substituted in position 2, e.g. methylphenidate [7]
- 31/4462 • • • • only substituted in position 3 [7]
- 31/4465 • • • • only substituted in position 4 [7]
- 31/4468 • • • • having a nitrogen atom directly attached in position 4, e.g. clebopride, fentanyl [7]
- 31/45 • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. cycloheximide [2, 7]
- 31/451 • • • • having a carbocyclic ring directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. glutethimide, meperidine, loperamide, phencyclidine, piminodine [7]
- 31/4515 • • • • having a butyrophenone group in position 1, e.g. haloperidol (pipamperone A61K 31/4545) [7]
- 31/452 • • • • Piperidinium derivatives (pancuronium A61K 31/58) [7]
- 31/4523 • • • • containing further heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/4525 • • • • containing a five-membered ring with oxygen as a ring hetero atom [7]
- 31/453 • • • • containing a six-membered ring with oxygen as a ring hetero atom [7]
- 31/4535 • • • • containing a heterocyclic ring having sulfur as a ring hetero atom, e.g. pizotifen [7]
- 31/454 • • • • containing a five-membered ring with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. pimozide, domperidone [7]
- 31/4545 • • • • containing a six-membered ring with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. pipamperone, anabesine [7]
- 31/455 • • • • Nicotinic acid, i.e. niacin; Derivatives thereof, e.g. esters, amides [2]
- 31/46 • • • • 8-Azabicyclo [3.2.1] octane; Derivatives thereof, e.g. atropine, cocaine [2]
- 31/465 • • • • Nicotine; Derivatives thereof [2]
- 31/47 • • • • Quinolines; Isoquinolines [2]
- 31/4704 • • • • 2-Quinolines, e.g. carbostyryl [7]
- 31/4706 • • • • 4-Aminoquinolines; 8-Aminoquinolines, e.g. chloroquine, primaquine [7]
- 31/4709 • • • • Non-condensed quinolines containing further heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/472 • • • • Non-condensed isoquinolines, e.g. papaverine [7]



- 31/4725 • • • • • containing further heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/473 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. acridines, phenanthridines [7]
- 31/4738 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/4741 • • • • • condensed with ring systems having oxygen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. tubocuraran derivatives, noscapine, bicuculline [7]
- 31/4743 • • • • • condensed with ring systems having sulfur as a ring hetero atom [7]
- 31/4745 • • • • • condensed with ring systems having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. phenanthrolines (yohimbine derivatives, vinblastine A61K 31/475; ergoline derivatives A61K 31/48) [7]
- 31/4747 • • • • • spiro-condensed [7]
- 31/4748 • • • • • forming part of bridged ring systems (strychnine A61K 31/475; morphinan derivatives A61K 31/485) [7]
- 31/475 • • • • • having an indole ring, e.g. yohimbine, reserpine, strychnine, vinblastine (vincamine A61K 31/4375) [2, 7]
- 31/48 • • • • • Ergoline derivatives, e.g. lysergic acid, ergotamine [2, 7]
- 31/485 • • • • • Morphinan derivatives, e.g. morphine, codeine [2, 7]
- 31/49 • • • • • Cinchonan derivatives, e.g. quinine [2, 7]
- 31/495 • • • • • having six-membered rings with two nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, e.g. piperazine (A61K 31/48 takes precedence) [2]
- 31/496 • • • • • Non-condensed piperazines containing further heterocyclic rings, e.g. rifampin, thiothixene [7]
- 31/4965 • • • • • Non-condensed pyrazines [7]
- 31/497 • • • • • containing further heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/498 • • • • • Pyrazines or piperazines ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. quinoxaline, phenazine [7]
- 31/4985 • • • • • Pyrazines or piperazines ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/499 • • • • • Spiro-condensed pyrazines or piperazines [7]
- 31/4995 • • • • • Pyrazines or piperazines forming part of bridged ring systems [7]
- 31/50 • • • • • Pyridazines; Hydrogenated pyridazines [2, 7]
- 31/501 • • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/502 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. cinnoline, phthalazine [7]
- 31/5025 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/503 • • • • • spiro-condensed [7]
- 31/504 • • • • • forming part of bridged ring systems [7]
- 31/505 • • • • • Pyrimidines; Hydrogenated pyrimidines, e.g. trimethoprim [2, 7]
- 31/506 • • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/51 • • • • • Thiamines, e.g. vitamin B<sub>1</sub> [2]
- 31/513 • • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. cytosine [7]
- 31/515 • • • • • Barbituric acids; Derivatives thereof, e.g. sodium pentobarbital [2]
- 31/517 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. quinazoline, perimidine [7]
- 31/519 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/52 • • • • • Purines, e.g. adenine [2, 7]
- 31/522 • • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the heterocyclic ring, e.g. hypoxanthine, guanine, acyclovir [7]
- 31/525 • • • • • Isoalloxazines, e.g. riboflavins, vitamin B<sub>2</sub> [2]
- 31/527 • • • • • spiro-condensed [7]
- 31/529 • • • • • forming part of bridged ring systems [7]
- 31/53 • • • • • having six-membered rings with three nitrogens as the only ring hetero atoms, e.g. chlorazani, melamine (melarsoprol A61K 31/555) [2]
- 31/535 • • • • • having six-membered rings with at least one nitrogen and at least one oxygen as the ring hetero atoms, e.g. 1,2-oxazines [2]
- 31/5355 • • • • • Non-condensed oxazines containing further heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/536 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/5365 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/537 • • • • • spiro-condensed or forming part of bridged ring systems [7]
- 31/5375 • • • • • 1,4-Oxazines, e.g. morpholine [7]
- 31/5377 • • • • • not condensed and containing further heterocyclic rings, e.g. timolol [7]
- 31/538 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/5383 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/5386 • • • • • spiro-condensed or forming part of bridged ring systems [7]
- 31/539 • • • • • having two or more oxygen atoms in the same ring, e.g. dioxazines [7]
- 31/5395 • • • • • having two or more nitrogen atoms in the same ring, e.g. oxadiazines [7]
- 31/54 • • • • • having six-membered rings with at least one nitrogen and at least one sulfur as the ring hetero atoms, e.g. sulthiame [2]
- 31/541 • • • • • Non-condensed thiazines containing further heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/5415 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic ring systems, e.g. phenothiazine, chlorpromazine, piroxicam [7]
- 31/542 • • • • • ortho- or peri-condensed with heterocyclic ring systems [7]
- 31/545 • • • • • Compounds containing 5-thia-1-azabicyclo [4.2.0] octane ring systems, i.e. compounds containing a ring system



of the formula  
C1CN(C2CCSC2)CC1, e.g.  
 cephalosporins, cefaclor,  
 cephalaxine [2, 6]

- 31/546 • • • • • containing further heterocyclic rings, e.g. cephalothin [7]
- 31/547 • • • • • spiro-condensed or forming part of bridged ring systems [7]
- 31/548 • • • • • having two or more sulfur atoms in the same ring [7]

- 31/549 • • • • having two or more nitrogen atoms in the same ring, e.g. hydrochlorothiazide [7]
- 31/55 • • • having seven-membered rings, e.g. azelastine, pentylene-tetrazole [2]
- 31/551 • • • • having two nitrogens as ring hetero atoms, e.g. clozapine, dilazep [7]
- 31/5513 • • • • • 1,4-Benzodiazepines, e.g. diazepam [7]
- 31/5517 • • • • • condensed with five-membered rings having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. imidazobenzodiazepines, triazolam [7]
- 31/553 • • • • having at least one nitrogen and at least one oxygen as ring hetero atoms, e.g. loxapine, staurosporine [7]
- 31/554 • • • • having at least one nitrogen and at least one sulfur as ring hetero atoms, e.g. clothiapine, diltiazem [7]
- 31/555 • • containing heavy metals, e.g. hemin, hematin, melarsoprol [2]
- 31/557 • Eicosanoids, e.g. leukotrienes [3, 7]
- 31/5575 • • having a cyclopentane ring, e.g. prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub>, prostaglandin F<sub>2- $\alpha$</sub>  [7]
- 31/5578 • • having a pentalene ring system, e.g. carbacyclin, iloprost [7]
- 31/558 • • having heterocyclic rings containing oxygen as the only ring hetero atom, e.g. thromboxanes [7]
- 31/5585 • • • having five-membered rings containing oxygen as the only ring hetero atom, e.g. prostacyclin [7]
- 31/559 • • having heterocyclic rings containing hetero atoms other than oxygen [7]
- 31/56 • Compounds containing cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene ring systems; Derivatives thereof, e.g. steroids [4, 7]

**Note(s)**

Attention is drawn to Note (1) following the title of subclass C07J, which explains what is covered by the term "steroids".

- 31/565 • • not substituted in position 17 beta by a carbon atom, e.g. oestrane, oestradiol [2]
- 31/566 • • • having an oxo group in position 17, e.g. oestrone [7]
- 31/567 • • • substituted in position 17 alpha, e.g. mestranol, norethandrolone [7]
- 31/568 • • • substituted in positions 10 and 13 by a chain having at least one carbon atom, e.g. androstane, testosterone [7]
- 31/5685 • • • • having an oxo group in position 17, e.g. androsterone [7]
- 31/569 • • • • substituted in position 17 alpha, e.g. ethisterone [7]
- 31/57 • • substituted in position 17 beta by a chain of two carbon atoms, e.g. pregnane, progesterone [2]
- 31/573 • • • substituted in position 21, e.g. cortisone, dexamethasone, prednisone [7]
- 31/575 • • substituted in position 17 beta by a chain of three or more carbon atoms, e.g. cholane, cholestane, ergosterol, sitosterol [2]
- 31/58 • • containing heterocyclic rings, e.g. aldosterone, danazol, stanozolol, pancuronium, digitogenin (digitoxin A61K 31/704) [2, 7]
- 31/585 • • • containing lactone rings, e.g. oxandrolone, bufalin [2]
- 31/59 • Compounds containing 9,10-seco-cyclopenta[a]hydro-phenanthrene ring systems [2]

- 31/592 • • 9,10-Secoergostane derivatives, e.g. ergocalciferol, vitamin D<sub>2</sub> [7]
- 31/593 • • 9,10-Secocholestane derivatives, e.g. cholecalciferol, vitamin D<sub>3</sub> [7]
- 31/60 • Salicylic acid; Derivatives thereof [2]
- 31/603 • • having further aromatic rings, e.g. diflunisal [7]
- 31/606 • • having amino groups [7]
- 31/609 • • Amides, e.g. salicylamide [7]
- 31/612 • • having the hydroxy group in position 2 esterified, e.g. salicylsulfuric acid (fosfosal A61K 31/661) [7]
- 31/616 • • • by carboxylic acids, e.g. acetylsalicylic acid [7]
- 31/618 • • having the carboxyl group in position 1 esterified, e.g. salsalate [7]
- 31/621 • • • having the hydroxy group in position 2 esterified, e.g. benorylate [7]
- 31/625 • • having heterocyclic substituents, e.g. 4-salicyloylmorpholine (sulfasalazine A61K 31/635) [2, 7]
- 31/63 • Compounds containing para-N-benzene- sulfonyl-N-groups, e.g. sulfanilamide, p-nitrobenzenesulfonohydrazide [2]
- 31/635 • • having a heterocyclic ring, e.g. sulfasalazine [2]
- 31/64 • Sulfonylureas, e.g. glibenclamide, tolbutamide, chlorpropamide [2]
- 31/65 • Tetracyclines [2]
- 31/655 • Azo ( $\text{—N=N—}$ ), diazo ( $\text{=N}_2$ ), azoxy ( $\text{:N—O—N:}$  or  $\text{N(=O)—N:}$ ), azido ( $\text{—N}_3$ ) or diazoamino ( $\text{—N=N—N:}$ ) compounds [2]
- 31/66 • Phosphorus compounds [2]
- 31/661 • • Phosphorus acids or esters thereof not having P—C bonds, e.g. fosfosal, dichlorvos, malathion [7]
- 31/6615 • • • Compounds having two or more esterified phosphorus acid groups, e.g. inositol triphosphate, phytic acid [7]
- 31/662 • • Phosphorus acids or esters thereof having P—C bonds, e.g. foscarnet, trichlorfon [7]
- 31/663 • • • Compounds having two or more phosphorus acid groups or esters thereof, e.g. clodronic acid, pamidronic acid [7]
- 31/664 • • Amides of phosphorus acids [7]
- 31/665 • • having oxygen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. fosfomycin [2]
- 31/67 • • having sulfur as a ring hetero atom [2]
- 31/675 • • having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. pyridoxal phosphate [2]
- 31/683 • • Diesters of a phosphorus acid with two hydroxy compounds, e.g. phosphatidylinositols [7]
- 31/685 • • • one of the hydroxy compounds having nitrogen atoms, e.g. phosphatidylserine, lecithin [2, 7]
- 31/688 • • • both hydroxy compounds having nitrogen atoms, e.g. sphingomyelins [7]
- 31/69 • Boron compounds [2]
- 31/695 • Silicon compounds [2]
- 31/70 • Carbohydrates; Sugars; Derivatives thereof (sorbitol A61K 31/047) [2, 7]

**Note(s)**

In this group, the expressions are used with the meanings indicated in Note (3) following the title of subclass C07H.

- 31/7004 • • Monosaccharides having only carbon, hydrogen and oxygen atoms [7]
- 31/7008 • • Compounds having an amino group directly attached to a carbon atom of the saccharide radical, e.g. D-galactosamine, ranimustine [7]

- 31/7012 • • • Compounds having a free or esterified carboxyl group attached, directly or through a carbon chain, to a carbon atom of the saccharide radical, e.g. glucuronic acid, neuraminic acid (gluconic acid A61K 31/191; ascorbic acid A61K 31/375) [7]
- 31/7016 • • • Disaccharides, e.g. lactose, lactulose (lactobionic acid A61K 31/7032) [7]
- 31/702 • • • Oligosaccharides, i.e. having three to five saccharide radicals attached to each other by glycosidic linkages [7]
- 31/7024 • • • Esters of saccharides [7]
- 31/7028 • • • Compounds having saccharide radicals attached to non-saccharide compounds by glycosidic linkages [7]
- 31/7032 • • • attached to a polyol, i.e. compounds having two or more free or esterified hydroxy groups, including the hydroxy group involved in the glycosidic linkage, e.g. monoglucosyl-diacylglycerides, lactobionic acid, gangliosides [7]
- 31/7034 • • • attached to a carbocyclic compound, e.g. phloridzin [7]
- 31/7036 • • • • having at least one amino group directly attached to the carbocyclic ring, e.g. streptomycin, gentamycin, amikacin, validamycin, fortimicins [7]
- 31/704 • • • • attached to a condensed carbocyclic ring system, e.g. sennosides, thiocolchicosides, escin, daunorubicin, digitoxin [7]
- 31/7042 • • • Compounds having saccharide radicals and heterocyclic rings [7]
- 31/7048 • • • • having oxygen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. leucoglucosan, hesperidin, erythromycin, nystatin [7]
- 31/7052 • • • • having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom, e.g. nucleosides, nucleotides [7]
- 31/7056 • • • • containing five-membered rings with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom [7]
- 31/706 • • • • containing six-membered rings with nitrogen as a ring hetero atom [7]
- 31/7064 • • • • • containing condensed or non-condensed pyrimidines [7]
- 31/7068 • • • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the pyrimidine ring, e.g. cytidine, cytidylic acid [7]
- 31/7072 • • • • • • • having two oxo groups directly attached to the pyrimidine ring, e.g. uridine, uridylic acid, thymidine, zidovudine [7]
- 31/7076 • • • • • • • containing purines, e.g. adenosine, adenylic acid [7]
- 31/708 • • • • • • • having oxo groups directly attached to the purine ring system, e.g. guanosine, guanylic acid [7]
- 31/7084 • • • Compounds having two nucleosides or nucleotides, e.g. nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide, flavine-adenine dinucleotide [7]
- 31/7088 • • • Compounds having three or more nucleosides or nucleotides [7]
- 31/7105 • • • • Natural ribonucleic acids, i.e. containing only riboses attached to adenine, guanine, cytosine or uracil and having 3'-5' phosphodiester links [7]
- 31/711 • • • • Natural deoxyribonucleic acids, i.e. containing only 2'-deoxyriboses attached to adenine, guanine, cytosine or thymine and having 3'-5' phosphodiester links [7]
- 31/7115 • • • • Nucleic acids or oligonucleotides having modified bases, i.e. other than adenine, guanine, cytosine, uracil or thymine [7]
- 31/712 • • • • Nucleic acids or oligonucleotides having modified sugars, i.e. other than ribose or 2'-deoxyribose [7]
- 31/7125 • • • • Nucleic acids or oligonucleotides having modified internucleoside linkage, i.e. other than 3'-5' phosphodiester [7]
- 31/713 • • • • Double-stranded nucleic acids or oligonucleotides [7]
- 31/7135 • • • Compounds containing heavy metals [7]
- 31/714 • • • • Cobalamins, e.g. cyanocobalamin, vitamin B<sub>12</sub> [7]
- 31/715 • • • Polysaccharides, i.e. having more than five saccharide radicals attached to each other by glycosidic linkages; Derivatives thereof, e.g. ethers, esters [2]
- 31/716 • • • • Glucans [7]
- 31/717 • • • • Celluloses [7]
- 31/718 • • • • Starch or degraded starch, e.g. amylose, amylopectin [7]
- 31/719 • • • • Pullulans [7]
- 31/721 • • • • Dextrans [7]
- 31/722 • • • • Chitin; Chitosan [7]
- 31/723 • • • • Xanthans [7]
- 31/724 • • • • Cyclodextrins [7]
- 31/726 • • • • Glycosaminoglycans, i.e. mucopolysaccharides (chondroitin sulfate, dermatan sulfate A61K 31/737) [7]
- 31/727 • • • • Heparin; Heparan [7]
- 31/728 • • • • Hyaluronic acid [7]
- 31/729 • • • • Agar; Agarose; Agaropectin [7]
- 31/731 • • • • Carrageenans [7]
- 31/732 • • • • Pectin [7]
- 31/733 • • • • Fructosans, e.g. inulin [7]
- 31/734 • • • • Alginic acid [7]
- 31/736 • • • • Glucomannans or galactomannans, e.g. locust bean gum, guar gum [7]
- 31/737 • • • • Sulfated polysaccharides, e.g. chondroitin sulfate, dermatan sulfate (A61K 31/727 takes precedence) [7]
- 31/738 • • • • Cross-linked polysaccharides [7]
- 31/739 • • • • Lipopolysaccharides [7]
- 31/74 • • Synthetic polymeric materials [2]
- 31/745 • • • Polymers of hydrocarbons [2]
- 31/75 • • • • of ethene [2]
- 31/755 • • • Polymers containing halogen [2]
- 31/76 • • • • of vinyl chloride [2]
- 31/765 • • • Polymers containing oxygen [2]
- 31/77 • • • • of oxiranes [2]
- 31/775 • • • • Phenolic resins [2]
- 31/78 • • • • of acrylic acid or derivatives thereof [2]
- 31/785 • • • Polymers containing nitrogen [2]
- 31/787 • • • • containing heterocyclic rings having nitrogen as a ring hetero atom [7]
- 31/79 • • • • Polymers of vinyl pyrrolidone [2]
- 31/795 • • • Polymers containing sulfur [2]
- 31/80 • • • Polymers containing hetero atoms not provided for in groups A61K 31/755-A61K 31/795 [2]
- 33/00 Medicinal preparations containing inorganic active ingredients [2]**
- 33/02 • • Ammonia; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/04 • • Sulfur, selenium or tellurium; Compounds thereof [2]

- 33/06 • Aluminium, calcium or magnesium; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/08 • • Oxides; Hydroxides [2]
- 33/10 • • Carbonates; Bicarbonates [2]
- 33/12 • • Magnesium silicate [2]
- 33/14 • Alkali metal chlorides; Alkaline earth metal chlorides [2]
- 33/16 • Fluorine compounds [2]
- 33/18 • Iodine; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/20 • Elemental chlorine; Inorganic compounds releasing chlorine [2]
- 33/22 • Boron compounds [2]
- 33/24 • Heavy metals; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/26 • • Iron; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/28 • • Mercury; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/30 • • Zinc; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/32 • • Manganese; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/34 • • Copper; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/36 • • Arsenic; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/38 • • Silver; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/40 • Peroxides [2]
- 33/42 • Phosphorus; Compounds thereof [2]
- 33/44 • Elemental carbon, e.g. charcoal, carbon black [2]

**35/00 Medicinal preparations containing material or reaction products thereof with undetermined constitution [2]**

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

When classifying in this group, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.

- 35/02 • from inanimate materials [2]
- 35/04 • • Tars; Bitumens; Mineral oils; Ammonium bituminosulfonate, e.g. Ichthylol® [2]
- 35/06 • • • Mineral oils [2]
- 35/08 • • Mineral waters [2]
- 35/10 • • Peat; Amber [2]
- 35/12 • Materials from mammals or birds [2]
- 35/14 • • Blood [2]
- 35/16 • • • Plasma; Serum [2]
- 35/18 • • • Erythrocytes [2]
- 35/20 • • Milk; Colostrum [2]
- 35/22 • • Urine; Urinary system [2]
- 35/23 • • • Kidney [3]
- 35/24 • • Mucus; Mucous glands; Bursa; Arthral fluid; Excreta; Spinal fluid [2]
- 35/26 • • Lymph; Lymph-glands; Thymus [2]
- 35/28 • • Marrow; Spleen [2]
- 35/30 • • Nerves; Brain [2]
- 35/32 • • Bones; Tendons; Teeth; Cartilage (marrow A61K 35/28) [2]
- 35/34 • • Muscles; Heart [2]
- 35/36 • • Skin; Hair; Nails; Sebaceous glands; Cerumen [4]
- 35/37 • • Digestive system [3]
- 35/38 • • • Stomach; Intestine [3]
- 35/39 • • • Pancreas [3]
- 35/407 • • • Liver [3]
- 35/413 • • • Bile [3]
- 35/42 • • Lungs [2]
- 35/44 • • Eyes; Vessels; Umbilical cord [2]
- 35/48 • • Reproductive organs; Embryos [2]
- 35/50 • • • Placenta; Amniotic fluid [2]

- 35/52 • • • Sperm [2]
- 35/54 • • • Ovary; Eggs; Embryos [2]
- 35/55 • • Glands not provided for in one of the preceding subgroups of this main group [3]
- 35/56 • Materials from animals other than mammals or birds [2]
- 35/58 • • Snakes (antigens A61K 39/38) [2]
- 35/60 • • Fish (vitamin A A61K 31/07; vitamin D A61K 31/59) [2]
- 35/62 • • Leeches [2]
- 35/64 • • Insects, e.g. royal jelly [2]
- 35/66 • Materials from micro-organisms [2]
- 35/68 • • Protozoa [2]
- 35/74 • • Bacteria [2]
- 35/76 • • Viruses [2]

**36/00 Medicinal preparations of undetermined constitution containing material from algae, lichens, fungi or plants, or derivatives thereof, e.g. traditional herbal medicines [2006.01]**

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

1. In this group, common names of plants, where given, are presented in brackets following their corresponding Latin names.
2. In this group, it is desirable to add the indexing codes A61K 125/00-A61K 135/00.

- 36/02 • Algae [2006.01]
- 36/03 • • Phaeophycota or phaeophyta (brown algae), e.g. Fucus [2006.01]
- 36/04 • • Rhodophycota or rhodophyta (red algae), e.g. Porphyra [2006.01]
- 36/05 • • Chlorophycota or chlorophyta (green algae), e.g. Chlorella [2006.01]
- 36/06 • Fungi, e.g. yeasts [2006.01]
- 36/062 • • Ascomycota [2006.01]
- 36/064 • • • Saccharomycetales, e.g. baker's yeast [2006.01]
- 36/066 • • • Clavicipitaceae [2006.01]
- 36/068 • • • Cordyceps [2006.01]
- 36/07 • • Basidiomycota, e.g. Cryptococcus [2006.01]
- 36/074 • • • Ganoderma [2006.01]
- 36/076 • • • Poria [2006.01]
- 36/09 • Lichens [2006.01]
- 36/10 • Bryophyta (mosses) [2006.01]
- 36/11 • Pteridophyta or Filicophyta (ferns) [2006.01]
- 36/12 • • Filicopsida or Pteridopsida [2006.01]
- 36/126 • • • Drynaria [2006.01]
- 36/13 • Coniferophyta (gymnosperms) [2006.01]
- 36/14 • • Cupressaceae (Cypress family), e.g. juniper or cypress [2006.01]
- 36/15 • • Pinaceae (Pine family), e.g. pine or cedar [2006.01]
- 36/16 • Ginkgophyta, e.g. Ginkgoaceae (Ginkgo family) [2006.01]
- 36/17 • Gnetophyta, e.g. Ephedraceae (Mormon-tea family) [2006.01]
- 36/18 • Magnoliophyta (angiosperms) [2006.01]
- 36/185 • • Magnoliopsida (dicotyledons) [2006.01]
- 36/19 • • • Acanthaceae (Acanthus family) [2006.01]
- 36/195 • • • Strobilanthes [2006.01]
- 36/20 • • • Aceraceae (Maple family) [2006.01]
- 36/21 • • • Amaranthaceae (Amaranth family), e.g. pigweed, rockwort or globe amaranth [2006.01]
- 36/22 • • • Anacardiaceae (Sumac family), e.g. smoketree, sumac or poison oak [2006.01]

- 36/23 • • • Apiaceae or Umbelliferae (Carrot family), e.g. dill, chervil, coriander or cumin **[2006.01]**
- 36/232 • • • • Angelica **[2006.01]**
- 36/233 • • • • Bupleurum **[2006.01]**
- 36/234 • • • • Cnidium (snowparsley) **[2006.01]**
- 36/235 • • • • Foeniculum (fennel) **[2006.01]**
- 36/236 • • • • Ligusticum (licorice-root) **[2006.01]**
- 36/237 • • • • Notopterygium **[2006.01]**
- 36/238 • • • • Saposhnikovia **[2006.01]**
- 36/24 • • • Apocynaceae (Dogbane family), e.g. plumeria or periwinkle **[2006.01]**
- 36/25 • • • Araliaceae (Ginseng family), e.g. ivy, aralia, schefflera or tetrapanax **[2006.01]**
- 36/254 • • • • Acanthopanax or Eleutherococcus **[2006.01]**
- 36/258 • • • • Panax (ginseng) **[2006.01]**
- 36/26 • • • Aristolochiaceae (Birthwort family), e.g. heartleaf **[2006.01]**
- 36/264 • • • • Aristolochia (Dutchman's pipe) **[2006.01]**
- 36/268 • • • • Asarum (wild ginger) **[2006.01]**
- 36/27 • • • Asclepiadaceae (Milkweed family), e.g. hoyo **[2006.01]**
- 36/28 • • • Asteraceae or Compositae (Aster or Sunflower family), e.g. chamomile, feverfew, yarrow or echinacea **[2006.01]**
- 36/282 • • • • Artemisia, e.g. wormwood or sagebrush **[2006.01]**
- 36/284 • • • • Atractylodes **[2006.01]**
- 36/285 • • • • Aucklandia **[2006.01]**
- 36/286 • • • • Carthamus (distaff thistle) **[2006.01]**
- 36/287 • • • • Chrysanthemum, e.g. daisy **[2006.01]**
- 36/288 • • • • Taraxacum (dandelion) **[2006.01]**
- 36/289 • • • • Vladimiria **[2006.01]**
- 36/29 • • • Berberidaceae (Barberry family), e.g. barberry, cohosh or mayapple **[2006.01]**
- 36/296 • • • • Epimedium **[2006.01]**
- 36/30 • • • Boraginaceae (Borage family), e.g. comfrey, lungwort or forget-me-not **[2006.01]**
- 36/31 • • • Brassicaceae or Cruciferae (Mustard family), e.g. broccoli, cabbage or kohlrabi **[2006.01]**
- 36/315 • • • • Isatis, e.g. Dyer's woad **[2006.01]**
- 36/32 • • • Burseraceae (Frankincense family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/324 • • • • Boswellia, e.g. frankincense **[2006.01]**
- 36/328 • • • • Commiphora, e.g. mecca myrrh or balm of Gilead **[2006.01]**
- 36/33 • • • Cactaceae (Cactus family), e.g. pricklypear or Cereus **[2006.01]**
- 36/34 • • • Campanulaceae (Bellflower family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/342 • • • • Adenophora **[2006.01]**
- 36/344 • • • • Codonopsis **[2006.01]**
- 36/346 • • • • Platycodon **[2006.01]**
- 36/35 • • • Caprifoliaceae (Honeysuckle family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/355 • • • • Lonicera (honeysuckle) **[2006.01]**
- 36/36 • • • Caryophyllaceae (Pink family), e.g. baby's breath or soapwort **[2006.01]**
- 36/37 • • • Celastraceae (Staff-tree or Bittersweet family), e.g. tripterygium or spindletree **[2006.01]**
- 36/38 • • • Clusiaceae, Hypericaceae or Guttiferae (Hypericum or Mangosteen family), e.g. common St. Johnswort **[2006.01]**
- 36/39 • • • Convolvulaceae (Morning-glory family), e.g. bindweed **[2006.01]**
- 36/40 • • • Cornaceae (Dogwood family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/41 • • • Crassulaceae (Stonecrop family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/42 • • • Cucurbitaceae (Cucumber family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/424 • • • • Gynostemma **[2006.01]**
- 36/428 • • • • Trichosanthes **[2006.01]**
- 36/43 • • • Cuscutaceae (Dodder family), e.g. Cuscuta epithymum or greater dodder **[2006.01]**
- 36/44 • • • Ebenaceae (Ebony family), e.g. persimmon **[2006.01]**
- 36/45 • • • Ericaceae or Vacciniaceae (Heath or Blueberry family), e.g. blueberry, cranberry or bilberry **[2006.01]**
- 36/46 • • • Eucommiaceae (Eucommia family), e.g. hardy rubber tree **[2006.01]**
- 36/47 • • • Euphorbiaceae (Spurge family), e.g. Ricinus (castorbean) **[2006.01]**
- 36/48 • • • Fabaceae or Leguminosae (Pea or Legume family); Caesalpiniaceae; Mimosaceae; Papilionaceae **[2006.01]**
- 36/481 • • • • Astragalus (milkvetch) **[2006.01]**
- 36/482 • • • • Cassia, e.g. golden shower tree **[2006.01]**
- 36/483 • • • • Gleditsia (locust) **[2006.01]**
- 36/484 • • • • Glycyrrhiza (licorice) **[2006.01]**
- 36/485 • • • • Gueldenstaedtia **[2006.01]**
- 36/486 • • • • Millettia **[2006.01]**
- 36/487 • • • • Psoralea **[2006.01]**
- 36/488 • • • • Pueraria (kudzu) **[2006.01]**
- 36/489 • • • • Sophora, e.g. necklace pod or mamani **[2006.01]**
- 36/49 • • • Fagaceae (Beech family), e.g. oak or chestnut **[2006.01]**
- 36/50 • • • Fumariaceae (Fumitory family), e.g. bleeding heart **[2006.01]**
- 36/505 • • • • Corydalis **[2006.01]**
- 36/51 • • • Gentianaceae (Gentian family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/515 • • • • Gentiana **[2006.01]**
- 36/52 • • • Juglandaceae (Walnut family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/53 • • • Lamiaceae or Labiatae (Mint family), e.g. thyme, rosemary or lavender **[2006.01]**
- 36/532 • • • • Agastache, e.g. giant hyssop **[2006.01]**
- 36/533 • • • • Leonurus (motherwort) **[2006.01]**
- 36/534 • • • • Mentha (mint) **[2006.01]**
- 36/535 • • • • Perilla (beefsteak plant) **[2006.01]**
- 36/536 • • • • Prunella or Brunella (selfheal) **[2006.01]**
- 36/537 • • • • Salvia (sage) **[2006.01]**
- 36/538 • • • • Schizonepeta **[2006.01]**
- 36/539 • • • • Scutellaria (skullcap) **[2006.01]**
- 36/54 • • • Lauraceae (Laurel family), e.g. cinnamon or saffron **[2006.01]**
- 36/55 • • • Linaceae (Flax family), e.g. Linum **[2006.01]**
- 36/56 • • • Loganiaceae (Logania family), e.g. trumpetflower or pinkroot **[2006.01]**
- 36/57 • • • Magnoliaceae (Magnolia family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/575 • • • • Magnolia **[2006.01]**
- 36/58 • • • Meliaceae (Chinaberry or Mahogany family), e.g. Azadirachta (neem) **[2006.01]**
- 36/59 • • • Menispermaceae (Moonseed family), e.g. hyperbaena or coralbead **[2006.01]**
- 36/60 • • • Moraceae (Mulberry family), e.g. breadfruit or fig **[2006.01]**
- 36/605 • • • • Morus (mulberry) **[2006.01]**
- 36/61 • • • Myrtaceae (Myrtle family), e.g. teatree or eucalyptus **[2006.01]**
- 36/62 • • • Nymphaeaceae (Water-lily family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/63 • • • Oleaceae (Olive family), e.g. jasmine, lilac or ash tree **[2006.01]**
- 36/634 • • • • Forsythia **[2006.01]**
- 36/638 • • • • Ligustrum, e.g. Chinese privet **[2006.01]**
- 36/64 • • • Orobanchaceae (Broomrape family) **[2006.01]**

- 36/65 • • • Paeoniaceae (Peony family), e.g. Chinese peony **[2006.01]**
- 36/66 • • • Papaveraceae (Poppy family), e.g. bloodroot **[2006.01]**
- 36/67 • • • Piperaceae (Pepper family), e.g. Jamaican pepper or kava **[2006.01]**
- 36/68 • • • Plantaginaceae (Plantain Family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/69 • • • Polygalaceae (Milkwort family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/70 • • • Polygonaceae (Buckwheat family), e.g. spinyflower or dock **[2006.01]**
- 36/704 • • • • Polygonum, e.g. knotweed **[2006.01]**
- 36/708 • • • • Rheum (rhubarb) **[2006.01]**
- 36/71 • • • Ranunculaceae (Buttercup family), e.g. larkspur, hepatica, hydrastis, columbine or goldenseal **[2006.01]**
- 36/714 • • • • Aconitum (monkshood) **[2006.01]**
- 36/716 • • • • Clematis (leather flower) **[2006.01]**
- 36/718 • • • • Coptis (goldthread) **[2006.01]**
- 36/72 • • • Rhamnaceae (Buckthorn family), e.g. buckthorn, chewstick or umbrella-tree **[2006.01]**
- 36/725 • • • • Ziziphus, e.g. jujube **[2006.01]**
- 36/73 • • • Rosaceae (Rose family), e.g. strawberry, chokeberry, blackberry, pear or firethorn **[2006.01]**
- 36/732 • • • • Chaenomeles, e.g. flowering quince **[2006.01]**
- 36/734 • • • • Crataegus (hawthorn) **[2006.01]**
- 36/736 • • • • Prunus, e.g. plum, cherry, peach, apricot or almond **[2006.01]**
- 36/738 • • • • Rosa (rose) **[2006.01]**
- 36/739 • • • • Sanguisorba (burnet) **[2006.01]**
- 36/74 • • • Rubiaceae (Madder family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/744 • • • • Gardenia **[2006.01]**
- 36/746 • • • • Morinda **[2006.01]**
- 36/748 • • • • Oldenlandia or Hedyotis **[2006.01]**
- 36/75 • • • Rutaceae (Rue family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/752 • • • • Citrus, e.g. lime, orange or lemon **[2006.01]**
- 36/754 • • • • Evodia **[2006.01]**
- 36/756 • • • • Phellodendron, e.g. corktree **[2006.01]**
- 36/758 • • • • Zanthoxylum, e.g. pricklyash **[2006.01]**
- 36/76 • • • Salicaceae (Willow family), e.g. poplar **[2006.01]**
- 36/77 • • • Sapindaceae (Soapberry family), e.g. lychee or soapberry **[2006.01]**
- 36/78 • • • Saururaceae (Lizard's-tail family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/79 • • • Schisandraceae (Schisandra family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/80 • • • Scrophulariaceae (Figwort family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/804 • • • • Rehmannia **[2006.01]**
- 36/808 • • • • Scrophularia (figwort) **[2006.01]**
- 36/81 • • • Solanaceae (Potato family), e.g. tobacco, nightshade, tomato, belladonna, capsicum or jimsonweed **[2006.01]**
- 36/815 • • • • Lycium (desert-thorn) **[2006.01]**
- 36/82 • • • Theaceae (Tea family), e.g. camellia **[2006.01]**
- 36/83 • • • Thymelaeaceae (Mezereum family), e.g. leatherwood or false ohelo **[2006.01]**
- 36/835 • • • • Aquilaria **[2006.01]**
- 36/84 • • • Valerianaceae (Valerian family), e.g. valerian **[2006.01]**
- 36/85 • • • Verbenaceae (Verbena family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/855 • • • • Clerodendrum, e.g. glorybower **[2006.01]**
- 36/86 • • • Violaceae (Violet family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/87 • • • Vitaceae or Ampelidaceae (Vine or Grape family), e.g. wine grapes, muscadine or peppervine **[2006.01]**
- 36/88 • • • Liliopsida (monocotyledons) **[2006.01]**
- 36/882 • • • Acoraceae (Calamus family), e.g. sweetflag or Acorus calamus **[2006.01]**
- 36/884 • • • Alismataceae (Water-plantain family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/886 • • • Aloeaceae (Aloe family), e.g. aloe vera **[2006.01]**
- 36/888 • • • Araceae (Arum family), e.g. caladium, calla lily or skunk cabbage **[2006.01]**
- 36/8884 • • • • Arisaema, e.g. Jack in the pulpit **[2006.01]**
- 36/8888 • • • • Pinellia **[2006.01]**
- 36/889 • • • Arecaceae, Palmae or Palmaceae (Palm family), e.g. date or coconut palm or palmetto **[2006.01]**
- 36/8895 • • • • Calamus, e.g. rattan **[2006.01]**
- 36/89 • • • Cyperaceae (Sedge family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/8905 • • • • Cyperus (flatsedge) **[2006.01]**
- 36/894 • • • Dioscoreaceae (Yam family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/8945 • • • • Dioscorea, e.g. yam, Chinese yam or water yam **[2006.01]**
- 36/896 • • • Liliaceae (Lily family), e.g. daylily, plantain lily, Hyacinth or narcissus **[2006.01]**
- 36/8962 • • • • Allium, e.g. garden onion, leek, garlic or chives **[2006.01]**
- 36/8964 • • • • Anemarrhena **[2006.01]**
- 36/8965 • • • • Asparagus, e.g. garden asparagus or asparagus fern **[2006.01]**
- 36/8966 • • • • Fritillaria, e.g. checker lily or mission bells **[2006.01]**
- 36/8967 • • • • Lilium, e.g. tiger lily or Easter lily **[2006.01]**
- 36/8968 • • • • Ophiopogon (Lilyturf) **[2006.01]**
- 36/8969 • • • • Polygonatum (Solomon's seal) **[2006.01]**
- 36/898 • • • Orchidaceae (Orchid family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/8984 • • • • Dendrobium **[2006.01]**
- 36/8988 • • • • Gastrodia **[2006.01]**
- 36/899 • • • Poaceae or Gramineae (Grass family), e.g. bamboo, corn or sugar cane **[2006.01]**
- 36/8994 • • • • Coix (Job's tears) **[2006.01]**
- 36/8998 • • • • Hordeum (barley) **[2006.01]**
- 36/90 • • • Smilacaceae (Catbrier family), e.g. greenbrier or sarsaparilla **[2006.01]**
- 36/902 • • • Sparganiaceae (Bur-reed family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/904 • • • Stemonaceae (Stemona family), e.g. croomia **[2006.01]**
- 36/906 • • • Zingiberaceae (Ginger family) **[2006.01]**
- 36/9062 • • • • Alpinia, e.g. red ginger or galangal **[2006.01]**
- 36/9064 • • • • Amomum, e.g. round cardamom **[2006.01]**
- 36/9066 • • • • Curcuma, e.g. common turmeric, East Indian arrowroot or mango ginger **[2006.01]**
- 36/9068 • • • • Zingiber, e.g. garden ginger **[2006.01]**
- 38/00 Medicinal preparations containing peptides** (peptides containing beta-lactam rings A61K 31/00; cyclic dipeptides not having in their molecule any other peptide link than those which form their ring, e.g. piperazine-2,5-diones, A61K 31/00; ergoline-based peptides A61K 31/48; containing macromolecular compounds having statistically distributed amino acid units A61K 31/74; medicinal preparations containing antigens or antibodies A61K 39/00; medicinal preparations characterised by the non-active ingredients, e.g. peptides as drug carriers, A61K 47/00) **[6]**

**Note(s)**

1. The terms or expressions used in this group follow exactly the definitions given in Note (1) following the title of subclass C07K.
2. Preparations containing fragments of peptides or peptides modified by removal or addition of amino acids, by substitution of amino acids by others, or by combination of these modifications are classified as the preparations containing parent peptides. However, preparations containing fragments of peptides having only four or less amino acids are also classified in groups A61K 38/05-A61K 38/07.
3. Preparations containing peptides prepared by recombinant DNA technology are not classified according to the host, but according to the original peptide expressed, e.g. preparations containing HIV peptide expressed in *E. coli* are classified with the preparations containing HIV peptides.

- 38/01 • Hydrolysed proteins; Derivatives thereof [6]  
 38/02 • Peptides of undefined number of amino acids; Derivatives thereof [6]  
 38/03 • Peptides having up to 20 amino acids in an undefined or only partially defined sequence; Derivatives thereof [6]  
 38/04 • Peptides having up to 20 amino acids in a fully defined sequence; Derivatives thereof (gastrins A61K 38/16, somatostatins A61K 38/31, melanotropins A61K 38/34) [6]  
 38/05 • • Dipeptides [6]  
 38/06 • • Tripeptides [6]  
 38/07 • • Tetrapeptides [6]  
 38/08 • • Peptides having 5 to 11 amino acids [6]  
 38/09 • • • Luteinising hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH); Related peptides [6]  
 38/10 • • Peptides having 12 to 20 amino acids [6]  
 38/11 • • • Oxytocins; Vasopressins; Related peptides [6]  
 38/12 • • Cyclic peptides [6]  
 38/13 • • • Cyclosporins [6]  
 38/14 • • Peptides containing saccharide radicals; Derivatives thereof [6]  
 38/15 • • Depsipeptides; Derivatives thereof [6]  
 38/16 • Peptides having more than 20 amino acids; Gastrins; Somatostatins; Melanotropins; Derivatives thereof [6]  
 38/17 • • from animals; from humans [6]  
 38/18 • • • Growth factors; Growth regulators [6]  
 38/19 • • • Cytokines; Lymphokines; Interferons [6]  
 38/20 • • • • Interleukins [6]  
 38/21 • • • • Interferons [6]  
 38/22 • • • Hormones (derived from pro-opiomelanocortin, pro-enkephalin or pro-dynorphin A61K 38/33, e.g. corticotropin A61K 38/35) [6]  
 38/23 • • • • Calcitonins [6]  
 38/24 • • • • Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH); Chorionic gonadotropins, e.g. HCG; Luteinising hormone (LH); Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) [6]  
 38/25 • • • • Growth hormone-releasing factor (GH-RF) (Somatoliberin) [6]  
 38/26 • • • • Glucagons [6]  
 38/27 • • • • Growth hormone (GH) (Somatotropin) [6]  
 38/28 • • • • Insulins [6]  
 38/29 • • • • Parathyroid hormone (parathormone); Parathyroid hormone-related peptides [6]  
 38/30 • • • • Insulin-like growth factors (Somatomedins), e.g. IGF-1, IGF-2 [6]

- 38/31 • • • • Somatostatins [6]  
 38/32 • • • • Thymopoietins [6]  
 38/33 • • • derived from pro-opiomelanocortin, pro-enkephalin or pro-dynorphin [6]  
 38/34 • • • • Melanocyte stimulating hormone (MSH), e.g. alpha- or beta-melanotropin [6]  
 38/35 • • • • Corticotropin (ACTH) [6]  
 38/36 • • • Blood coagulation or fibrinolysis factors [6]  
 38/37 • • • • Factors VIII [6]  
 38/38 • • • Albumins [6]  
 38/39 • • • Connective tissue peptides, e.g. collagen, elastin, laminin, fibronectin, vitronectin, cold insoluble globulin (CIG) [6]  
 38/40 • • • Transferrins, e.g. lactoferrins, ovotransferrins [6]  
 38/41 • • Porphyrin- or corrin-ring-containing peptides [6]  
 38/42 • • • Haemoglobins; Myoglobins [6]  
 38/43 • • Enzymes; Proenzymes; Derivatives thereof [6]

**Note(s)**

In this group:

- proenzymes are classified with the corresponding enzymes;
- enzymes are generally categorised according to the "Nomenclature and Classification of Enzymes" of the International Commission of Enzymes. Where appropriate, this designation appears in the subgroups below in parenthesis.

- 38/44 • • • Oxidoreductases (1) [6]  
 38/45 • • • Transferases (2) [6]  
 38/46 • • • Hydrolases (3) [6]  
 38/47 • • • • acting on glycosyl compounds (3.2), e.g. cellulases, lactases [6]  
 38/48 • • • • acting on peptide bonds (3.4) [6]  
 38/49 • • • • • Urokinase; Tissue plasminogen activator [6]  
 38/50 • • • • acting on carbon-nitrogen bonds, other than peptide bonds (3.5), e.g. asparaginase [6]  
 38/51 • • • Lyases (4) [6]  
 38/52 • • • Isomerases (5) [6]  
 38/53 • • • Ligases (6) [6]  
 38/54 • • • Mixtures of enzymes or proenzymes covered by more than a single one of groups A61K 38/44-A61K 38/46 or A61K 38/51-A61K 38/53 [6]  
 38/55 • • Protease inhibitors [6]  
 38/56 • • • from plants [6]  
 38/57 • • • from animals; from humans [6]  
 38/58 • • • • from leeches, e.g. hirudin, eglin [6]

**39/00 Medicinal preparations containing antigens or antibodies** (materials for immunoassay G01N 33/53) [2]

**Note(s)**

1. Preparation of antigen or antibody compositions is also classified in subclass C12N, if the step of cultivating the micro-organism is of interest.
2. Groups A61K 39/002-A61K 39/12 cover preparations containing protozoa, bacteria, viruses, or subunits thereof, e.g. membrane parts.

- 39/002 • Protozoa antigens [3]  
 39/005 • • Trypanosoma antigens [3]  
 39/008 • • Leishmania antigens [3]  
 39/012 • • Coccidia antigens [3]

- 39/015 • • Hemosporidia antigens, e.g. Plasmodium antigens [3]
- 39/018 • • • Babesia antigens, e.g. Theileria antigens [3]
- 39/02 • Bacterial antigens [2]
- 39/04 • • Mycobacterium, e.g. Mycobacterium tuberculosis [2, 3]
- 39/05 • • Corynebacterium; Propionibacterium [3]
- 39/07 • • Bacillus [3]
- 39/08 • • Clostridium, e.g. Clostridium tetani [2]
- 39/085 • • Staphylococcus [3]
- 39/09 • • Streptococcus [3]
- 39/095 • • Neisseria [3]
- 39/10 • • Brucella; Bordetella, e.g. Bordetella pertussis [2, 3]
- 39/102 • • Pasteurella; Haemophilus [3]
- 39/104 • • Pseudomonas [3]
- 39/106 • • Vibrio; Campylobacter [3]
- 39/108 • • Escherichia; Klebsiella [3]
- 39/112 • • Salmonella; Shigella [3]
- 39/114 • • Fusobacterium [3]
- 39/116 • • Polyvalent bacterial antigens [3]
- 39/118 • Chlamydiaceae, e.g. Chlamydia trachomatis or Chlamydia psittaci [3]
- 39/12 • Viral antigens [2]
- 39/125 • • Picornaviridae, e.g. calicivirus [3]
- 39/13 • • • Poliovirus [3]
- 39/135 • • • Foot-and-mouth disease virus [3]
- 39/145 • • Orthomyxoviridae, e.g. influenza virus [3]
- 39/15 • • Reoviridae, e.g. calf diarrhea virus [3]
- 39/155 • • Paramyxoviridae, e.g. parainfluenza virus [3]
- 39/165 • • • Mumps or measles virus [3]
- 39/17 • • • Newcastle disease virus [3]
- 39/175 • • • Canine distemper virus [3]
- 39/187 • • Hog cholera virus [3]
- 39/193 • • Equine encephalomyelitis virus [3]
- 39/20 • • Rubella virus [2]
- 39/205 • • Rhabdoviridae, e.g. rabies virus [3]
- 39/21 • • Retroviridae, e.g. equine infectious anemia virus [3]
- 39/215 • • Coronaviridae, e.g. avian infectious bronchitis virus [3]
- 39/225 • • • Porcine transmissible gastroenteritis virus [3]
- 39/23 • • Parvoviridae, e.g. feline panleukopenia virus [3]
- 39/235 • • Adenoviridae [3]
- 39/245 • • Herpesviridae, e.g. herpes simplex virus [3]
- 39/25 • • • Varicella-zoster virus [3]
- 39/255 • • • Marek's disease virus [3]
- 39/265 • • • Infectious rhinotracheitis virus [3]
- 39/27 • • • Equine rhinopneumonitis virus [3]
- 39/275 • • Poxviridae, e.g. avipoxvirus [3]
- 39/285 • • • Vaccinia virus or variola virus [3]
- 39/29 • • Hepatitis virus [3]
- 39/295 • • Polyvalent viral antigens (vaccinia virus or variola virus A61K 39/285); Mixtures of viral and bacterial antigens [3]
- 39/35 • Allergens [3]
- 39/36 • • from pollen [2, 3]
- 39/38 • Antigen from snakes [2]
- 39/385 • Haptens or antigens, bound to carriers [3]
- 39/39 • characterised by the immunostimulating additives, e.g. chemical adjuvants [3]
- 39/395 • Antibodies (agglutinins A61K 38/36); Immunoglobulins; Immune serum, e.g. antilymphocytic serum [3]
- 39/40 • • bacterial [2, 3]
- 39/42 • • viral [2, 3]
- 39/44 • • Antibodies bound to carriers [2, 3]
- 41/00 Medicinal preparations obtained by treating materials with wave energy or particle radiation (A61K 31/59 takes precedence) [2]**
- 45/00 Medicinal preparations containing active ingredients not provided for in groups A61K 31/00-A61K 41/00 [2, 6]**
- 45/06 • Mixtures of active ingredients without chemical characterisation, e.g. antiphlogistics and cardiaca [2]
- 45/08 • Mixtures of an active ingredient and an auxiliary substance neither being chemically characterised, e.g. antihistaminicum and surface active substance [2]
- 47/00 Medicinal preparations characterised by the non-active ingredients used, e.g. carriers, inert additives [2]**
- 47/02 • Inorganic compounds [5]
- 47/04 • • Non-metals; Compounds thereof [5]
- 47/06 • Organic compounds [5]
- 47/08 • • containing oxygen [5]
- 47/10 • • • Alcohols; Phenols; Salts thereof [5]
- 47/12 • • • Carboxylic acids; Salts or anhydrides thereof [5]
- 47/14 • • • Esters of carboxylic acids [5]
- 47/16 • • containing nitrogen [5]
- 47/18 • • • Amines; Quaternary ammonium compounds [5]
- 47/20 • • containing sulfur [5]
- 47/22 • • Heterocyclic compounds [5]
- 47/24 • • containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, halogen, oxygen, nitrogen or sulfur [5]
- 47/26 • • Carbohydrates [5]
- 47/28 • • Steroids [5]
- 47/30 • Macromolecular compounds [5]
- 47/32 • • Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]
- 47/34 • • Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]
- 47/36 • • Polysaccharides; Derivatives thereof [5]
- 47/38 • • • Cellulose; Derivatives thereof [5]
- 47/40 • • • Cyclodextrins; Derivatives thereof [5]
- 47/42 • • Proteins; Polypeptides; Degradation products thereof; Derivatives thereof [5]
- 47/44 • Oils, fats or waxes according to more than one of groups A61K 47/02-A61K 47/42 [5]
- 47/46 • Ingredients of undetermined constitution or reaction products thereof [5]
- 47/48 • the non-active ingredient being chemically bound to the active ingredient, e.g. polymer drug conjugates [5]
- 48/00 Medicinal preparations containing genetic material which is inserted into cells of the living body to treat genetic diseases; Gene therapy [5]**
- 49/00 Preparations for testing in vivo [3]**
- 49/04 • X-ray contrast preparations [3]
- 49/06 • Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) contrast preparations; Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) contrast preparations [7]
- 49/08 • • characterised by the carrier [7]
- 49/10 • • • Organic compounds [7]



- 49/12 • • • • Macromolecular compounds [7]  
 49/14 • • • • Peptides, e.g. proteins [7]  
 49/16 • • • • • Antibodies; Immunoglobulins; Fragments thereof [7]  
 49/18 • • characterised by a special physical form, e.g. emulsions, microcapsules, liposomes [7]  
 49/20 • • containing free radicals [7]  
 49/22 • Echographic preparations; Ultrasound imaging preparations [7]

**50/00 Electrically conductive preparations for use in therapy or testing *in vivo*, e.g. conductive adhesives or gels to be used with electrodes for electrocardiography (ECG) or for transcutaneous drug administration [2006.01]**

**51/00 Preparations containing radioactive substances for use in therapy or testing *in vivo* [6]**

**Note(s)**

In this group, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of groups A61K 101/00-A61K 103/00.

- 51/02 • characterised by the carrier [6]  
 51/04 • • Organic compounds [6]  
 51/06 • • • Macromolecular compounds [6]  
 51/08 • • • Peptides, e.g. proteins [6]  
 51/10 • • • • Antibodies or immunoglobulins; Fragments thereof [6]  
 51/12 • characterised by a special physical form, e.g. emulsion, microcapsules, liposomes [6]

**Indexing scheme associated with group A61K 51/00, relating to the nature of the radioactive substance. [6]**

**101/00 Radioactive non-metals [6]**

- 101/02 • Halogens [6]

**103/00 Radioactive metals [6]**

- 103/10 • Technetium; Rhenium [6]  
 103/20 • Indium [6]  
 103/30 • Rare earths [6]  
 103/32 • • Yttrium [6]  
 103/34 • • Gadolinium [6]  
 103/36 • • Ytterbium [6]  
 103/40 • Actinides [6]

**Indexing scheme associated with group A61K 36/00, relating to plant parts with medicinal activity. [2006.01]**

**125/00 Containing or obtained from roots, bulbs, tubers, corms or rhizomes [2006.01]**

**127/00 Containing or obtained from leaves [2006.01]**

**129/00 Containing or obtained from bark [2006.01]**

**131/00 Containing or obtained from seeds, nuts, fruits or grains [2006.01]**

**133/00 Containing or obtained from flowers or blossoms [2006.01]**

**135/00 Containing or obtained from stems, stalks, branches, twigs or shoots [2006.01]**

**A61L METHODS OR APPARATUS FOR STERILISING MATERIALS OR OBJECTS IN GENERAL; DISINFECTION, STERILISATION, OR DEODORISATION OF AIR; CHEMICAL ASPECTS OF BANDAGES, DRESSINGS, ABSORBENT PADS, OR SURGICAL ARTICLES; MATERIALS FOR BANDAGES, DRESSINGS, ABSORBENT PADS, OR SURGICAL ARTICLES (preservation of bodies or disinfecting characterised by the agent employed A01N; preserving, e.g. sterilising, food or foodstuffs A23; preparations for medical, dental or toilet purposes A61K) [4]**

**Note(s)**

Processes using enzymes or micro-organisms in order to:

- i. liberate, separate or purify a pre-existing compound or composition, or to
- ii. treat textiles or clean solid surfaces of materials

are further classified in subclass C12S.

**Subclass index**

**DISINFECTION OR STERILISATION OF MATERIALS**

General methods or apparatus.....	2/00
of air.....	9/00
of refuse.....	11/00
of contact lenses.....	12/00

**MATERIALS FOR**

Bandages, dressings or absorbent pads.....	15/00
sutures or for ligaturing blood vessels.....	17/00
liquid bandages.....	26/00
prostheses or for coating prostheses.....	27/00
colostomy devices.....	28/00
catheters or for coating catheters.....	29/00
other surgical articles.....	31/00

**SURGICAL ADHESIVES OR CEMENTS; ADHESIVES FOR COLOSTOMY DEVICES.....24/00**

**ANTITHROMBOGENIC TREATMENT OF SURGICAL ARTICLES.....33/00**

**Disinfection or sterilising****Note(s)**

In groups A61L 2/00-A61L 12/00, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of group A61L 101/00.

**2/00 Methods or apparatus for disinfecting or sterilising materials or objects other than foodstuffs or contact lenses; Accessories therefor** (atomisers for disinfecting agents A61M; sterilisation of packages or package contents in association with packaging B65B 55/00; treatment of water, waste water, sewage or sludge C02F; disinfecting paper D21H 21/36; disinfecting devices for water closets E03D; articles having provision for disinfection, see the relevant subclasses for these articles, e.g. H04R 1/12) [3, 5, 7]

- 2/02 • using physical phenomena [3]
- 2/025 • • Ultrasonics [7]
- 2/03 • • Electric current, e.g. electrolysis [7]
- 2/04 • • Heat (A61L 2/08 takes precedence) [3]
- 2/06 • • • Hot gas [3]
- 2/07 • • • • Steam [7]
- 2/08 • • Radiation [3]
- 2/10 • • • Ultra-violet radiation [3]
- 2/12 • • • Microwaves [3]
- 2/14 • • Plasma, i.e. ionised gases [3]
- 2/16 • using chemical substances [3]
- 2/18 • • Liquid substances [3]
- 2/20 • • Gaseous substances, e.g. vapours [3]
- 2/22 • • Phase substances, e.g. smokes, aerosols [3]
- 2/23 • • Solid substances, e.g. granules, powders, blocks, tablets [7]
- 2/232 • • • layered or coated [7]
- 2/235 • • • cellular, porous or foamed [7]
- 2/238 • • • Metals or alloys, e.g. oligodynamic metals [7]
- 2/24 • Apparatus using programmed or automatic operation [3]
- 2/26 • Accessories [3]
- 2/28 • • Devices for testing the effectiveness or completeness of sterilisation, e.g. indicators which change colour (apparatus involving enzymes or micro-organisms C12M 1/34) [7]

**9/00 Disinfection, sterilisation or deodorisation of air** (purifying air by respirators A62B, A62D 9/00; chemical or biological purification of waste gases B01D 53/34; air-conditioning systems incorporating sterilisation F24F 3/16)

- 9/01 • Deodorant compositions [2]
- 9/012 • • characterised by being in a special form, e.g. gels, emulsions [7]
- 9/013 • • containing animal or plant extracts, or vegetable material [7]
- 9/014 • • containing sorbent material, e.g. activated carbon [7]
- 9/015 • using gaseous or vaporous substances, e.g. ozone (A61L 9/20 takes precedence) [3]
- 9/02 • • using substances evaporated in the air by heating or combustion [3]
- 9/03 • • • Apparatus therefor [3]
- 9/04 • • using substances evaporated in the air without heating [3]
- 9/05 • • • specially adapted to be released by contact with a liquid, e.g. for toilets [7]
- 9/12 • • • Apparatus, e.g. holders, therefor [3]
- 9/14 • using sprayed or atomised substances [3]
- 9/16 • using physical phenomena [3]

- 9/18 • • Radiation (A61L 9/22 takes precedence) [3]
- 9/20 • • • Ultra-violet radiation [3]
- 9/22 • • Ionisation [3]

**11/00 Disinfection or sterilising methods specially adapted for refuse**

**12/00 Methods or apparatus for disinfecting or sterilising contact lenses; Accessories therefor** [7]

- 12/02 • using physical phenomena, e.g. electricity, ultrasonics or ultrafiltration [7]
- 12/04 • • Heat (A61L 12/06 takes precedence) [7]
- 12/06 • • Radiation, e.g. ultra-violet or microwaves [7]
- 12/08 • using chemical substances [7]
- 12/10 • • Halogens or compounds thereof [7]
- 12/12 • • Non-macromolecular oxygen-containing compounds, e.g. hydrogen peroxide or ozone (A61L 12/10 takes precedence) [7]
- 12/14 • • Organic compounds not covered by groups A61L 12/10 or A61L 12/12 [7]

**Chemical aspects of bandages, dressings, or absorbent pads or use of materials for their realisation; Materials for surgical articles, e.g. surgical sutures; Surgical adhesives or cements; Materials for prostheses, catheters or colostomy devices**

**15/00 Chemical aspects of, or use of materials for, bandages, dressings or absorbent pads** (for liquid bandages A61L 26/00; radioactive dressings A61M 36/14)

- 15/07 • Stiffening bandages

**Note(s)**

1. In groups A61L 15/08-A61L 15/12, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
2. When classifying in groups A61L 15/08-A61L 15/12, classification is also made in group A61L 15/14 if the use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties is of interest.

- 15/08 • • containing inorganic materials, e.g. plaster of Paris [5]
- 15/10 • • containing organic materials [5]
- 15/12 • • containing macromolecular materials [5]
- 15/14 • • Use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties [5]
- 15/16 • Bandages, dressings or absorbent pads for physiological fluids such as urine or blood, e.g. sanitary towels, tampons [5]

**Note(s)**

1. In groups A61L 15/18-A61L 15/40, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
2. When classifying in groups A61L 15/18-A61L 15/40, classification is also made in group A61L 15/42 if the use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties is of interest.

- 15/18 • • containing inorganic materials [5]
- 15/20 • • containing organic materials [5]
- 15/22 • • containing macromolecular materials [5]
- 15/24 • • • Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds; Derivatives thereof [5]

15/26	• • • Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds; Derivatives thereof [5]	24/04	• containing macromolecular materials [7]
15/28	• • • Polysaccharides or their derivatives [5]	24/06	• • obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7]
15/30	• • • Rubbers or their derivatives [5]	24/08	• • Polysaccharides [7]
15/32	• • • Proteins, polypeptides; Degradation products or derivatives thereof, e.g. albumin, collagen, fibrin, gelatin [5]	24/10	• • Polypeptides; Proteins [7]
15/34	• • • Oils, fats, waxes, or natural resins [5]	24/12	• • Ionomer cements, e.g. glass-ionomer cements [7]
15/36	• • containing micro-organisms [5]	<b>26/00</b>	<b>Chemical aspects of, or use of materials for, liquid bandages [7]</b>
15/38	• • containing enzymes [5]		<b>Note(s)</b>
15/40	• • containing ingredients of undetermined constitution or reaction products thereof [5]		When classifying in group A61L 26/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.
15/42	• • Use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties [5]	<b>27/00</b>	<b>Materials for prostheses or for coating prostheses</b> (dental prostheses A61C 13/00; shape or structure of prostheses A61F 2/00; use of preparations for artificial teeth A61K 6/02; artificial kidneys A61M 1/14) [4]
15/44	• • • Medicaments [5]		<b>Note(s)</b>
15/46	• • • Deodorants or malodour counteractants, e.g. to inhibit the formation of ammonia or bacteria [5]		When classifying in group A61L 27/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.
15/48	• • • Surfactants [5]		<b>Note(s)</b>
15/50	• • • Lubricants; Anti-adhesive agents [5]		1. In groups A61L 27/02-A61L 27/40, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
15/52	• • • Water-repellants [5]		2. When classifying in groups A61L 27/02-A61L 27/40 classification is also made in group A61L 27/50 if the use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties is of interest.
15/54	• • • Radio-opaque materials [5]		
15/56	• • • Wetness-indicators or colorants [5]		
15/58	• • • Adhesives (electrically conductive adhesives for use in therapy or testing <i>in vivo</i> A61K 50/00) [5]	27/02	• Inorganic materials [7]
15/60	• • • Liquid-swelling gel-forming materials, e.g. super-absorbents [5]	27/04	• • Metals or alloys [7]
15/62	• • • Hydrosoluble or hydrodegradable materials [5]	27/06	• • • Titanium or titanium alloys [7]
15/64	• • • specially adapted to be resorbable inside the body [5]	27/08	• • Carbon [7]
<b>17/00</b>	<b>Materials for surgical sutures or for ligaturing blood vessels [3, 4]</b>	27/10	• • Ceramics or glasses [7]
	<b>Note(s)</b>	27/12	• • Phosphorus-containing materials, e.g. apatite [7]
	When classifying in group A61L 17/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.	27/14	• Macromolecular materials [7]
	<b>Note(s)</b>	27/16	• • obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7]
	In groups A61L 17/04-A61L 17/14, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.	27/18	• • obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7]
17/04	• Non-resorbable materials [7]	27/20	• • Polysaccharides [7]
17/06	• At least partly resorbable materials [7]	27/22	• • Polypeptides or derivatives thereof [7]
17/08	• • of animal origin, e.g. catgut, collagen [7]	27/24	• • • Collagen [7]
17/10	• • containing macromolecular materials [7]	27/26	• • Mixtures of macromolecular materials [7]
17/12	• • • Homopolymers or copolymers of glycolic or lactic acid [7]	27/28	• Materials for coating prostheses [7]
17/14	• Post-treatment to improve physical properties [7]	27/30	• • Inorganic materials [7]
<b>24/00</b>	<b>Surgical adhesives or cements; Adhesives for colostomy devices</b> (electrically conductive adhesives for use in therapy or testing <i>in vivo</i> A61K 50/00) [7]	27/32	• • • Phosphorus-containing materials, e.g. apatite [7]
	<b>Note(s)</b>	27/34	• • Macromolecular materials [7]
	When classifying in group A61L 24/00, classification is also made in group A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.	27/36	• containing ingredients of undetermined constitution or reaction products thereof [7]
	<b>Note(s)</b>	27/38	• • Animal cells (for use in artificial skin A61L 27/60) [7]
	In groups A61L 24/02-A61L 24/04, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.	27/40	• Composite materials, i.e. layered or containing one material dispersed in a matrix of the same or different material [7]
24/02	• containing inorganic materials [7]	27/42	• • having an inorganic matrix [7]
		27/44	• • having a macromolecular matrix [7]
		27/46	• • • with phosphorus-containing inorganic fillers [7]
		27/48	• • • with macromolecular fillers [7]
		27/50	• Materials characterised by their function or physical properties [7]

## A61L

- 27/52 • • Hydrogels or hydrocolloids [7]
- 27/54 • • Biologically active materials, e.g. therapeutic substances [7]
- 27/56 • • Porous or cellular materials [7]
- 27/58 • • Materials at least partially resorbable by the body [7]
- 27/60 • • Materials for use in artificial skin [7]

**28/00 Materials for colostomy devices** (adhesives for colostomy devices A61L 24/00) [7]

### Note(s)

When classifying in group A61L 28/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.

**29/00 Materials for catheters or for coating catheters** (shape or structure of catheters A61M 25/00) [4]

### Note(s)

When classifying in group A61L 29/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.

### Note(s)

1. In groups A61L 29/02-A61L 29/12, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
2. When classifying in groups A61L 29/02-A61L 29/12, classification is also made in group A61L 29/14 if the use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties is of interest.

- 29/02 • Inorganic materials [7]
- 29/04 • Macromolecular materials [7]
- 29/06 • • obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7]
- 29/08 • Materials for coatings [7]
- 29/10 • • Inorganic materials [7]
- 29/12 • Composite materials, i.e. layered or containing one material dispersed in a matrix of the same or different material [7]
- 29/14 • Materials characterised by their function or physical properties [7]
- 29/16 • • Biologically active materials, e.g. therapeutic substances [7]
- 29/18 • • Materials at least partially X-ray or laser opaque [7]

**31/00 Materials for other surgical articles** [4]

### Note(s)

When classifying in group A61L 31/00, classification is also made in A61L 33/00 if the materials used are antithrombogenic.

### Note(s)

1. In groups A61L 31/02-A61L 31/12, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
2. When classifying in groups A61L 31/02-A61L 31/12, classification is also made in group A61L 31/14 if the use of materials characterised by their function or physical properties is of interest.

- 31/02 • Inorganic materials [7]
- 31/04 • Macromolecular materials [7]
- 31/06 • • obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7]

- 31/08 • Materials for coatings [7]
- 31/10 • • Macromolecular materials [7]
- 31/12 • Composite materials, i.e. layered or containing one material dispersed in a matrix of the same or different material [7]
- 31/14 • Materials characterised by their function or physical properties [7]
- 31/16 • • Biologically active materials, e.g. therapeutic substances [7]
- 31/18 • • Materials at least partially X-ray or laser opaque [7]

**33/00 Antithrombogenic treatment of surgical articles, e.g. sutures, catheters, prostheses, or of articles for the manipulation or conditioning of blood; Materials for such treatment** [4, 7]

### Note(s)

In groups A61L 33/02-A61L 33/18, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

- 33/02 • Use of inorganic materials [7]
- 33/04 • Use of organic materials, e.g. acetylsalicylic acid [7]
- 33/06 • Use of macromolecular materials [7]
- 33/08 • • Polysaccharides [7]
- 33/10 • • • Heparin, heparinoid or derivatives thereof [7]
- 33/12 • • Polypeptides, proteins or derivatives thereof [7]
- 33/14 • Use of fibrinolytic agents or platelet aggregation inhibitors [7]
- 33/16 • Use of enzymes, e.g. urokinase, streptokinase [7]
- 33/18 • Use of ingredients of undetermined constitution or reaction products thereof [7]

## Indexing scheme associated with groups A61L 2/00-A61L 12/00, relating to the chemical composition of the materials used in disinfecting, sterilising or deodorising. [7]

**101/00 Chemical composition of materials used in disinfecting, sterilising or deodorising** [7]

- 101/02 • Inorganic materials [7]
- 101/04 • • Elemental carbon, e.g. active charcoal [7]
- 101/06 • • containing halogen [7]
- 101/08 • • • Elemental halogen [7]
- 101/10 • • Ozone [7]
- 101/12 • • containing silicon [7]
- 101/14 • • containing sulfur [7]
- 101/16 • • containing phosphorus [7]
- 101/18 • • Ammonia [7]
- 101/20 • • Acids [7]
- 101/22 • • Peroxides [7]
- 101/24 • • containing aluminium [7]
- 101/26 • • containing copper [7]
- 101/28 • • containing iron [7]
- 101/30 • • containing zinc [7]
- 101/32 • Organic compounds [7]
- 101/34 • • Hydroxy compounds [7]
- 101/36 • • Carboxylic acids or derivatives thereof [7]
- 101/38 • • Ethers [7]
- 101/40 • • containing sulfur [7]
- 101/42 • • Organo-metallic compounds or complexes [7]
- 101/44 • • Heterocyclic compounds [7]
- 101/46 • • Macromolecular compounds [7]

- |        |   |        |  |
|--------|---|--------|--|
| 101/48 | • • • obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7] | 101/54 | • Enzymes [7]  |
| 101/50 | • • • Polysaccharides or derivatives thereof [7]                                  | 101/56 | • Plant extracts or vegetable products of undetermined chemical constitution, e.g. plant fibre [7] |
| 101/52 | • Micro-organisms or substances produced by or extracted from micro-organisms [7] |        |  |

**A61M DEVICES FOR INTRODUCING MEDIA INTO, OR ONTO, THE BODY** (introducing media into or onto the bodies of animals A61D 7/00; means for inserting tampons A61F 13/26; devices for administering food or medicines orally A61J; containers for collecting, storing or administering blood or medical fluids A61J 1/05); **DEVICES FOR TRANSDUCING BODY MEDIA OR FOR TAKING MEDIA FROM THE BODY** (surgery A61B; chemical aspects of surgical articles A61L; magnetotherapy using magnetic elements placed within the body A61N 2/10); **DEVICES FOR PRODUCING OR ENDING SLEEP OR STUPOR** [4, 5]

### Note(s)

1. This subclass covers suction, pumping or atomising devices for medical use (e.g. cups, breast relievers, irrigators, sprays, powder insufflators, atomisers, inhalers), apparatus for general or local anaesthetics, devices or methods for causing a change in the state of consciousness, catheters, dilators, apparatus for introducing medicines into the body other than orally.
2. In this subclass, group A61M 36/00, which relates to the application of radioactive material to the body, takes precedence over other groups.
3. When classifying in this subclass, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.

### Subclass index

SUCTION OR PUMPING DEVICES.....	1/00
SYRINGES; IRRIGATORS; BATHS FOR THE INTESTINES.....	3/00, 5/00, 9/00
SPRAYERS, ATOMISERS; INSUFFLATORS.....	11/00, 13/00
INHALING DEVICES.....	15/00, 16/00
DEVICES FOR PRODUCING OR ENDING SLEEP OR ANAESTHESIA.....	16/00, 19/00, 21/00
PROBES, CATHETERS; DRAINS; DILATORS.....	23/00, 25/00, 27/00, 29/00
TUBES, TUBE CONNECTORS, TUBE COUPLINGS, VALVES, ACCESS SITES OR THE LIKE, SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR MEDICAL USE.....	39/00
OTHER DEVICES FOR INTRODUCING OR RETAINING REMEDIES IN THE BODY.....	31/00, 37/00
OTHER DEVICES FOR SPREADING REMEDIES ON THE BODY.....	35/00
APPLYING RADIOACTIVE MATERIAL TO THE BODY.....	36/00

- 1/00 Suction or pumping devices for medical purposes; Devices for carrying-off, for treatment of, or for carrying-over, body-liquids; Drainage systems** (catheters A61M 25/00; tube connectors, tube couplings, valves or branch units, specially adapted for medical use A61M 39/00; devices for taking samples of blood A61B 5/15; saliva removers for dentists A61C 17/06; filters implantable into blood vessels A61F 2/01) [5]
- 1/02 • Blood transfusion apparatus (blood infusion by syringes A61M 5/14)
- 1/04 • Pneumothorax apparatus
- 1/06 • Milking pumps
- 1/08 • Cupping glasses
- 1/10 • Blood pumps; Artificial hearts; Devices for mechanical circulatory assistance, e.g. intra-aortic balloon pumps (heart stimulation A61H 31/00) [4]
- 1/12 • • implantable into the body [4]
- 1/14 • Dialysis systems; Artificial kidneys; Blood oxygenators (semi-permeable membranes characterised by the material, manufacturing processes therefor B01D 71/00) [4]
- 1/16 • • with membranes [4]
- 1/18 • • • in the shape of hollow fibres [4]
- 1/20 • • • tubular [4]
- 1/22 • • • sheet-like [4]
- 1/24 • • • spirally wound [4]
- 1/26 • • • which are moving [4]
- 1/28 • • Peritoneal dialysis [4]

- 1/30 • • Single needle dialysis [4]
- 1/32 • • Oxygenators without membranes [4]
- 1/34 • Filtering material out of the blood by passing it through a membrane, i.e. hemofiltration, diafiltration [4]
- 1/36 • Other treatment of blood in a by-pass of the natural circulatory system, e.g. temperature adaptation, irradiation [4]
- 1/38 • • Removing constituents from donor blood and returning remainder to body [5]

### Syringes; Irrigators; Baths for subaquatic intestinal cleaning [6]

- 3/00 Medical syringes, e.g. enemata; Irrigators** (A61M 5/00 takes precedence; pistons A61M 5/315) [2]
- 3/02 • Enemata; Irrigators [5]
- 3/04 • • specially adapted for the uterus [5]
- 3/06 • • combined with bidets [5]
- 5/00 Devices for bringing media into the body in a subcutaneous, intra-vascular or intramuscular way; Accessories therefor, e.g. filling or cleaning devices, arm rests** (tube connectors, tube couplings, valves or branch units, specially adapted for medical use A61M 39/00; containers specially adapted for medical or pharmaceutical purposes A61J 1/00) [5]

## A61M

- 5/14 • Infusion devices, e.g. infusing by gravity; Blood infusion; Accessories therefor [5]
- 5/142 • • Pressure infusion, e.g. using pumps [5]
- Note(s)**  
In this group, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:
  - "pressure infusion" includes powered injection working at a controlled rate.
- 5/145 • • • using pressurised reservoirs, e.g. by means of pistons [5]
- 5/148 • • • • flexible (A61M 5/155 takes precedence) [5]
- 5/152 • • • • • pressurised by contraction of elastic reservoirs [5]
- 5/155 • • • • • pressurised by gas [5]
- 5/158 • • Needles [5]
- 5/162 • • Needle sets, i.e. connections by puncture between reservoir and tube [5]
- 5/165 • • Filtering accessories, e.g. blood filters, filters for infusion liquids (A61M 1/34, A61M 5/36 take precedence) [5]
- 5/168 • • Means for controlling media flow to the body or for metering media to the body, e.g. drip meters, counters [5]
- 5/172 • • • electrical or electronic [5]
- 5/175 • • • mechanical [5]
- 5/178 • Syringes [5]
- 5/19 • • having more than one chamber [5]
- 5/20 • • Automatic syringes, e.g. with automatically actuated piston rod, with automatic needle injection, filling automatically (A61M 5/142 takes precedence) [2, 5]
- 5/24 • • Ampoule syringes, i.e. syringes with needle for use in combination with replaceable ampoules or cartridges, e.g. automatic [5]
- 5/28 • • Syringe ampoules or cartridges, i.e. ampoules or cartridges provided with a needle [5]
- 5/30 • • Syringes for injection by jet action, without needle, e.g. for use with replaceable ampoules or cartridges [5]
- 5/303 • • • Media expelled from injector by explosive charge [5]
- 5/307 • • • Media expelled from injector by pressurised fluid [5]
- 5/31 • • Details [2, 5]
- 5/315 • • • Pistons; Piston-rods; Guiding, blocking or restricting the movement of the rod; Appliances on the rod for facilitating dosing [2, 5]
- 5/32 • • • Needles; Details of needles pertaining to their connection with syringe or hub (infusion needles A61M 5/158); Accessories for bringing the needle into, or holding the needle on, the body; Devices for protection of needles [2, 5]
- 5/34 • • • • Constructions for connecting the needle [2, 5]
- 5/36 • with means for eliminating or preventing injection or infusion of air into body [5]
- 5/38 • • using hydrophilic or hydrophobic filters [5]
- 5/40 • • using low-level float-valve to cut off media flow from reservoir [5]
- 5/42 • having means for desensitising skin, for protruding skin to facilitate piercing, or for locating point where body is to be pierced [5]
- 5/44 • having means for cooling or heating the devices or media [5]
- 5/46 • having means for controlling depth of insertion [5]

- 5/48 • having means for varying, regulating, indicating or limiting injection pressure (A61M 5/142 takes precedence) [5]
- 5/50 • having means for preventing re-use, or for indicating if defective, used, tampered with or unsterile [5]
- 5/52 • Arm-rests [5]

### 9/00 Baths for subaquatic intestinal cleaning

#### Sprayers; Atomisers; Insufflators

##### 11/00 Sprayers or atomisers specially adapted for therapeutic purposes

- 11/02 • operated by air pressure applied to the liquid to be sprayed or atomised
- 11/04 • operated by the vapour pressure of the liquid to be sprayed or atomised
- 11/06 • of the injector type
- 11/08 • • Pocket atomisers of the injector type

##### 13/00 Insufflators for therapeutic or disinfectant purposes

#### Inhaling devices

##### 15/00 Inhalators

- 15/02 • with activated or ionized gases; Ozone-inhalators
- 15/06 • Inhaling appliances shaped like cigars, cigarettes or pipes
- 15/08 • Inhaling devices inserted into the nose

##### 16/00 Devices for influencing the respiratory system of patients by gas treatment, e.g. mouth-to-mouth respiration; Tracheal tubes (stimulating the respiratory movement by mechanical, pneumatic or electrical means, iron lungs combined with gas breathing means A61H 31/00) [4]

- 16/01 • specially adapted for anaesthetising [4]
- 16/04 • Tracheal tubes [4]
- 16/06 • Respiratory or anaesthetic masks [4]
- 16/08 • Bellows; Connecting tubes [4]
- 16/10 • Preparation of respiratory gases or vapours [4]
- 16/12 • • by mixing different gases [4]
- 16/14 • • by mixing different fluids, one of them being in a liquid phase [4]
- 16/16 • • • Devices to humidify the respiration air [4]
- 16/18 • • • Vaporising devices for anaesthetic preparations [4]
- 16/20 • Valves specially adapted to medical respiratory devices [4]
- 16/22 • Carbon dioxide-absorbing devices [4]

#### Other devices for producing sleep or stupor; Devices for ending sleep or stupor [4]

##### 19/00 Devices for local anaesthesia; Devices for hypothermia (A61M 5/42 takes precedence) [2]

##### 21/00 Other devices or methods to cause a change in the state of consciousness; Devices for producing or ending sleep by mechanical, optical, or acoustical means, e.g. for hypnosis (beds for promoting sleep A61G 7/043)

- 21/02 • for inducing sleep or relaxation, e.g. by direct nerve stimulation, hypnosis, analgesia (for massage A61H; electrotherapy A61N, e.g. applying alternating or intermittent electric currents for producing anaesthesia A61N 1/34) [5]

#### **Probes; Catheters; Dilators; Drainage appliances for wounds**

##### **23/00 Solid probes; Bougies**

##### **25/00 Catheters; Hollow probes** (for measuring or testing A61B)

- 25/01 • Introducing, guiding, advancing, emplacing or holding catheters (A61M 25/10 takes precedence) [5]
- 25/02 • • Holding devices, e.g. on the body [5]
- 25/04 • • • in the body, e.g. expansible [5]
- 25/06 • • Body-piercing guide needles or the like (A61M 25/088 takes precedence) [5, 6]
- 25/08 • • Advancing means, e.g. self-propelled [5]
- 25/082 • • • Self-propulsion arrangements (A61M 25/085 takes precedence) [6]
- 25/085 • • • Fluid propulsion [6]
- 25/088 • • using an additional catheter, e.g. to reach relatively inaccessible places [6]
- 25/09 • • Guide wires [6]
- 25/092 • • Remote control of the orientation of the distal end [6]
- 25/095 • • Arrangements for enabling the detection of the internal position of the catheter, e.g. radiographically [6]
- 25/098 • • • using radio-opaque markers [6]
- 25/10 • Balloon catheters [5]
- 25/12 • • Arrangements for detaching the balloon when in place [6]
- 25/14 • Arrangement or shape of fluid flow passages, e.g. of plural fluid passages (A61M 25/10 takes precedence) [6]
- 25/16 • Making or assembling not otherwise provided for [6]
- 25/18 • • Connecting catheters or probes to hubs [6]

##### **27/00 Drainage appliances for wounds, or the like** (implements for holding wounds open A61B 17/02)

##### **29/00 Dilators with or without means for introducing media, e.g. remedies** (stents A61F 2/82) [2]

- 29/02 • Inflatable dilators (connection of valves to inflatable elastic bodies B60C 29/00); Dilators made of swellable materials [3]
- 29/04 • • Dilators made of swellable materials [5]

##### **31/00 Devices for introducing or retaining media, e.g. remedies, in cavities of the body** (A61M 25/00 takes precedence) [2, 5]

**A61N ELECTROTHERAPY; MAGNETOTHERAPY; RADIATION THERAPY; ULTRASOUND THERAPY** (measurement of bioelectric currents A61B; surgical instruments, devices or methods for transferring non-mechanical forms of energy to or from the body A61B 18/00; anaesthetic apparatus in general A61M; incandescent lamps H01K; infra-red radiators for heating H05B) [6]

#### **Note(s)**

In this subclass, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

**35/00 Devices for applying media, e.g. remedies, on the human body** (devices for handling toilet or cosmetic substances A45D; absorbent pads, e.g. swabs, A61F 13/15) [2]

##### **36/00 Applying radioactive material to the body** [5]

- 36/02 • combined with other radiant- or wave-energy source, e.g. electromagnetic, thermal, micro-wave [5]
- 36/04 • Arrangements specially adapted for placing, e.g. inhaling or injecting, radioactive material within the body [5]
- 36/06 • • by fluid injection of radioactive or enhancing agent through a body-piercing conduit [5]
- 36/08 • • • Fluid reservoir shielding, e.g. syringe shielding [5]
- 36/10 • • Utero-vaginal or pelvic application [5]
- 36/12 • • Injectors, holders for seeds or implants, e.g. capsules [5]
- 36/14 • Radioactive dressings [5]

**37/00 Other apparatus for introducing media into the body** (for reproduction or fertilisation A61B 17/425; apparatus for iontophoresis or cataphoresis A61N 1/30); **Percutany, i.e. introducing medicines into the body by diffusion through the skin** (salt baths A61H 33/04) [5]

**39/00 Tubes, tube connectors, tube couplings, valves, access sites or the like, specially adapted for medical use** (for respiratory devices, e.g. tracheal tubes, A61M 16/00; artificial heart valves A61F 2/24) [5]

- 39/02 • Access sites [5]
- 39/04 • • having pierceable self-sealing members [5]
- 39/06 • • Haemostasis valves, i.e. gaskets sealing around a needle, catheter or the like, closing on removal thereof [6]
- 39/08 • Tubes; Storage means specially adapted therefor [6]
- 39/10 • Tube connectors or tube couplings [6]
- 39/12 • • for joining a flexible tube to a rigid attachment [6]
- 39/14 • • for connecting tubes having sealed ends [6]
- 39/16 • • having provision for disinfection or sterilisation [6]
- 39/18 • • • Methods or apparatus for making the connection under sterile conditions, i.e. sterile docking [6]
- 39/20 • Closure caps or plugs for connectors or open ends of tubes [6]
- 39/22 • Valves or arrangement of valves [6]
- 39/24 • • Check- or non-return valves [6]
- 39/26 • • Valves closing automatically on disconnecting the line and opening on reconnection thereof [6]
- 39/28 • • Clamping means for squeezing flexible tubes, e.g. roller clamps [6]

## A61N

- "therapy" implies that the treatment, when it aims at destroying sick or abnormal cells, is performed within the limits of healthy cell life, the destruction thereof being undesired, contrary to that which takes place with instruments, devices or methods covered by group A61B 18/00.

### Subclass index

ELECTROTHERAPY.....	1/00
MAGNETOTHERAPY.....	2/00
RADIATION THERAPY.....	5/00
ULTRASOUND THERAPY.....	7/00

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Electrotherapy; Circuits therefor</b> (A61N 2/00 takes precedence; electrically conductive preparations for use in therapy or testing <u>in vivo</u> A61K 50/00) [5]	1/375	• • • • • Constructional arrangements, e.g. casings [4]
1/02	• Details	1/378	• • • • • Electrical supply [4]
1/04	• • Electrodes	1/38	• • • for producing shock effects
1/05	• • • for implantation or insertion into the body, e.g. heart electrode (A61N 1/06 takes precedence) [4]	1/39	• • • • Heart defibrillators [4]
1/06	• • • for high-frequency therapy	1/40	• Applying electric fields by inductive or capacitive coupling
1/08	• • Arrangements or circuits for monitoring, protecting, controlling or indicating (for a single specific type of apparatus A61N 1/10-A61N 1/44) [4]	1/44	• Applying ionised fluids
1/10	• Applying static electricity (applying ionised gases or vapours A61N 1/44)	<b>2/00</b>	<b>Magnetotherapy</b> [5]
1/14	• Leading-off electric charges, e.g. by earthing	2/02	• using magnetic fields produced by coils, including single turn loops or electromagnets (A61N 2/12 takes precedence) [5]
1/16	• Screening or neutralising undesirable influences from atmospheric or terrestrial radiation or fields	2/04	• • using variable fields, e.g. low frequency or pulsating fields [5]
1/18	• Applying electric currents by contact electrodes	2/06	• using magnetic fields produced by permanent magnets (A61N 2/12 takes precedence) [5]
1/20	• • continuous direct currents	2/08	• • applied externally [5]
1/22	• • • Electromedical belts	2/10	• • applied within the body, e.g. with injected or implanted elements [5]
1/24	• • • • with built-in power source	2/12	• using variable magnetic fields obtained by mechanical movement [5]
1/26	• • • Electromedical brushes; Electromedical massage devices	<b>5/00</b>	<b>Radiation therapy</b> (devices or apparatus applicable to both therapy and diagnosis A61B 6/00; applying radioactive material to the body A61M 36/00) [5, 6]
1/28	• • • Apparatus for applying thermoelectric currents	5/01	• Devices for producing movement of radiation source during therapy
1/30	• • • Apparatus for iontophoresis or cataphoresis	5/02	• using microwaves (A61N 5/01 takes precedence)
1/32	• • alternating or intermittent currents	5/04	• • Radiators for near-field treatment
1/34	• • • for producing anaesthesia	5/06	• using light (A61N 5/01 takes precedence)
1/36	• • • for stimulation, e.g. heart pace-makers	5/067	• • using laser light [7]
1/362	• • • • Heart stimulators (A61N 1/372 takes precedence; heart defibrillators A61N 1/39) [4]	5/073	• • using polarised light (A61N 5/067 takes precedence) [7]
1/365	• • • • • controlled by a physiological parameter, e.g. by heart potential [4]	5/08	• • using combined infra-red and ultra-violet light
1/368	• • • • • comprising more than one electrode co-operating with different heart regions [4]	5/10	• X-ray therapy; Gamma-ray therapy; Particle-irradiation therapy (A61N 5/01 takes precedence)
1/37	• • • • • Monitoring; Protecting [4]	<b>7/00</b>	<b>Ultrasound therapy</b> (lithotripsy A61B 17/22, A61B 17/225; massage using supersonic vibration A61H 23/00) [6]
1/372	• • • • Arrangements in connection with the implantation of stimulators [4]	7/02	• Localised ultrasound hyperthermia [6]

## A61P SPECIFIC THERAPEUTIC ACTIVITY OF CHEMICAL COMPOUNDS OR MEDICINAL PREPARATIONS [7]

### Note(s)

1. This subclass covers therapeutic activity of chemical compounds or medicinal preparations already classified as such in subclasses A61K or C12N, or in classes C01, C07 or C08.
2. In this subclass, the term "drugs" includes chemical compounds or compositions with therapeutic activity.
3. In this subclass, therapeutic activity is classified in all appropriate places.
4. The classification symbols of this subclass are not listed first when assigned to patent documents.



**1/00 Drugs for disorders of the alimentary tract or the digestive system [7]**

- 1/02 • Stomatological preparations, e.g. drugs for caries, aphtae, periodontitis [7]
- 1/04 • for ulcers, gastritis or reflux esophagitis, e.g. antacids, inhibitors of acid secretion, mucosal protectants [7]
- 1/06 • Anti-spasmodics, e.g. drugs for colics, esophagic dyskinesia [7]
- 1/08 • for nausea, cinetosis or vertigo; Antiemetics [7]
- 1/10 • Laxatives [7]
- 1/12 • Antidiarrhoeals [7]
- 1/14 • Prodigestives, e.g. acids, enzymes, appetite stimulants, antidyseptics, tonics, antifatulents [7]
- 1/16 • for liver or gallbladder disorders, e.g. hepatoprotective agents, cholagogues, litholytics [7]
- 1/18 • for pancreatic disorders, e.g. pancreatic enzymes [7]

**3/00 Drugs for disorders of the metabolism (of the blood or the extracellular fluid A61P 7/00) [7]**

- 3/02 • Nutrients, e.g. vitamins, minerals [7]
- 3/04 • Anorexiant; Antiobesity agents [7]
- 3/06 • Antihyperlipidemics [7]
- 3/08 • for glucose homeostasis (pancreatic hormones A61P 5/48) [7]
- 3/10 • • for hyperglycaemia, e.g. antidiabetics [7]
- 3/12 • for electrolyte homeostasis [7]
- 3/14 • • for calcium homeostasis (vitamin D A61P 3/02; parathyroid hormones A61P 5/18; calcitonin A61P 5/22; osteoporosis A61P 19/10; bone metastasis A61P 35/04) [7]

**5/00 Drugs for disorders of the endocrine system [7]**

- 5/02 • of the hypothalamic hormones, e.g. TRH, GnRH, CRH, GRH, somatostatin [7]
- 5/04 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of the hypothalamic hormones [7]
- 5/06 • of the anterior pituitary hormones, e.g. TSH, ACTH, FSH, LH, PRL, GH [7]
- 5/08 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of the anterior pituitary hormones [7]
- 5/10 • of the posterior pituitary hormones, e.g. oxytocin, ADH [7]
- 5/12 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of the posterior pituitary hormones [7]
- 5/14 • of the thyroid hormones, e.g. T3, T4 [7]
- 5/16 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of the thyroid hormones [7]
- 5/18 • of the parathyroid hormones [7]
- 5/20 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of PTH [7]
- 5/22 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of calcitonin [7]
- 5/24 • of the sex hormones [7]
- 5/26 • • Androgens [7]
- 5/28 • • Antiandrogens [7]
- 5/30 • • Oestrogens [7]
- 5/32 • • Antioestrogens [7]
- 5/34 • • Gestagens [7]
- 5/36 • • Antigestagens [7]
- 5/38 • of the suprarenal hormones [7]
- 5/40 • • Mineralocorticosteroids, e.g. aldosterone; Drugs increasing or potentiating the activity of mineralocorticosteroids [7]
- 5/42 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of mineralocorticosteroids [7]

- 5/44 • • Glucocorticosteroids; Drugs increasing or potentiating the activity of glucocorticosteroids [7]
- 5/46 • • for decreasing, blocking or antagonising the activity of glucocorticosteroids [7]
- 5/48 • of the pancreatic hormones [7]
- 5/50 • • for increasing or potentiating the activity of insulin [7]

**7/00 Drugs for disorders of the blood or the extracellular fluid [7]**

- 7/02 • Antithrombotic agents; Anticoagulants; Platelet aggregation inhibitors [7]
- 7/04 • Antihaemorrhagics; Procoagulants; Haemostatic agents; Antifibrinolytic agents [7]
- 7/06 • Antianaemics [7]
- 7/08 • Plasma substitutes; Perfusion solutions; Dialytics or haemodialytics; Drugs for electrolytic or acid-base disorders, e.g. hypovolemic shock (artificial tears A61P 27/04) [7]
- 7/10 • Antioedematous agents; Diuretics [7]
- 7/12 • Antidiuretics, e.g. drugs for diabetes insipidus (ADH A61P 5/10) [7]

**9/00 Drugs for disorders of the cardiovascular system [7]**

- 9/02 • Non-specific cardiovascular stimulants, e.g. drugs for syncope, antihypotensives [7]
- 9/04 • Inotropic agents, i.e. stimulants of cardiac contraction; Drugs for heart failure [7]
- 9/06 • Antiarrhythmics [7]
- 9/08 • Vasodilators for multiple indications [7]
- 9/10 • for treating ischaemic or atherosclerotic diseases, e.g. antianginal drugs, coronary vasodilators, drugs for myocardial infarction, retinopathy, cerebrovascula insufficiency, renal arteriosclerosis [7]
- 9/12 • Antihypertensives [7]
- 9/14 • Vasoprotectives; Antihaemorrhoidals; Drugs for varicose therapy; Capillary stabilisers [7]

**11/00 Drugs for disorders of the respiratory system [7]**

- 11/02 • Nasal agents, e.g. decongestants [7]
- 11/04 • for throat disorders [7]
- 11/06 • Antiasthmatics [7]
- 11/08 • Bronchodilators [7]
- 11/10 • Expectorants [7]
- 11/12 • Mucolytics [7]
- 11/14 • Antitussive agents [7]
- 11/16 • Central respiratory analeptics [7]

**13/00 Drugs for disorders of the urinary system (diuretics A61P 7/10) [7]**

- 13/02 • of urine or of the urinary tract, e.g. urine acidifiers [7]
- 13/04 • for urolithiasis [7]
- 13/06 • Anti-spasmodics [7]
- 13/08 • of the prostate [7]
- 13/10 • of the bladder [7]
- 13/12 • of the kidneys [7]

**15/00 Drugs for genital or sexual disorders (for disorders of sex hormones A61P 5/24); Contraceptives [7]**

- 15/02 • for disorders of the vagina [7]
- 15/04 • for inducing labour or abortion; Uterotonics [7]
- 15/06 • Antiabortive agents; Labour repressants [7]
- 15/08 • for gonadal disorders or for enhancing fertility, e.g. inducers of ovulation or of spermatogenesis [7]
- 15/10 • for impotence [7]
- 15/12 • for climacteric disorders [7]

- 15/14 • for lactation disorders, e.g. galactorrhoea [7]
- 15/16 • Masculine contraceptives [7]
- 15/18 • Feminine contraceptives [7]
- 17/00 Drugs for dermatological disorders [7]**
  - 17/02 • for treating wounds, ulcers, burns, scars, keloids, or the like [7]
  - 17/04 • Antipruritics [7]
  - 17/06 • Antipsoriatics [7]
  - 17/08 • Antiseborrheics [7]
  - 17/10 • Anti-acne agents [7]
  - 17/12 • Keratolytics, e.g. wart or anti-corn preparations [7]
  - 17/14 • for baldness or alopecia [7]
  - 17/16 • Emollients or protectives, e.g. against radiation [7]
  - 17/18 • Antioxidants, e.g. antiradicals (preparations for protection against sunlight A61Q 17/00) [2006.01]
- 19/00 Drugs for skeletal disorders [7]**
  - 19/02 • for joint disorders, e.g. arthritis, arthrosis [7]
  - 19/04 • for non-specific disorders of the connective tissue [7]
  - 19/06 • Antigout agents, e.g. antihyperuricemic or uricosuric agents [7]
  - 19/08 • for bone diseases, e.g. rachitism, Paget's disease [7]
  - 19/10 • • for osteoporosis [7]
- 21/00 Drugs for disorders of the muscular or neuromuscular system [7]**
  - 21/02 • Muscle relaxants, e.g. for tetanus or cramps [7]
  - 21/04 • for myasthenia gravis [7]
  - 21/06 • Anabolic agents (androgens A61P 5/26) [7]
- 23/00 Anaesthetics [7]**
  - 23/02 • Local anaesthetics [7]
- 25/00 Drugs for disorders of the nervous system [7]**
  - 25/02 • for peripheral neuropathies [7]
  - 25/04 • Centrally acting analgesics, e.g. opioids [7]
  - 25/06 • Antimigraine agents [7]
  - 25/08 • Antiepileptics; Anticonvulsants [7]
  - 25/10 • • for petit-mal [7]
  - 25/12 • • for grand-mal [7]
  - 25/14 • for treating abnormal movements, e.g. chorea, dyskinesia [7]
  - 25/16 • • Anti-Parkinson drugs [7]
  - 25/18 • Antipsychotics, i.e. neuroleptics; Drugs for mania or schizophrenia [7]
  - 25/20 • Hypnotics; Sedatives [7]
  - 25/22 • Anxiolytics [7]
  - 25/24 • Antidepressants [7]
  - 25/26 • Psychostimulants, e.g. nicotine, cocaine [7]
  - 25/28 • for treating neurodegenerative disorders of the central nervous system, e.g. nootropic agents, cognition enhancers, drugs for treating Alzheimer's disease or other forms of dementia [7]
  - 25/30 • for treating abuse or dependence [7]
  - 25/32 • • Alcohol-abuse [7]
  - 25/34 • • Tobacco-abuse [7]
  - 25/36 • • Opioid-abuse [7]
- 27/00 Drugs for disorders of the senses [7]**
  - 27/02 • Ophthalmic agents [7]
  - 27/04 • • Artificial tears; Irrigation solutions [7]
  - 27/06 • • Antiglaucoma agents or miotics [7]
  - 27/08 • • Mydriatics or cycloplegics [7]
  - 27/10 • • for accommodation disorders, e.g. myopia [7]
  - 27/12 • • for cataracts [7]
- 27/14 • • Decongestants or antiallergics [7]
- 27/16 • Otologicals [7]
- 29/00 Non-central analgesic, antipyretic or antiinflammatory agents, e.g. antirheumatic agents; Non-steroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) [7]**
  - 29/02 • without antiinflammatory effect [7]
- 31/00 Antiinfectives, i.e. antibiotics, antiseptics, chemotherapeutics [7]**
  - 31/02 • Local antiseptics [7]
  - 31/04 • Antibacterial agents [7]
  - 31/06 • • for tuberculosis [7]
  - 31/08 • • for leprosy [7]
  - 31/10 • Antimycotics [7]
  - 31/12 • Antivirals [7]
  - 31/14 • • for RNA viruses [7]
  - 31/16 • • • for influenza or rhinoviruses [7]
  - 31/18 • • • for HIV [7]
  - 31/20 • • for DNA viruses [7]
  - 31/22 • • • for herpes viruses [7]
- 33/00 Antiparasitic agents [7]**
  - 33/02 • Antiprotozoals, e.g. for leishmaniasis, trichomoniasis, toxoplasmosis [7]
  - 33/04 • • Amoebicides [7]
  - 33/06 • • Antimalarials [7]
  - 33/08 • • for Pneumocystis carinii [7]
  - 33/10 • Anthelmintics [7]
  - 33/12 • • Schistosomicides [7]
  - 33/14 • Ectoparasiticides, e.g. scabicides [7]
- 35/00 Antineoplastic agents [7]**
  - 35/02 • specific for leukemia [7]
  - 35/04 • specific for metastasis [7]
- 37/00 Drugs for immunological or allergic disorders [7]**
  - 37/02 • Immunomodulators [7]
  - 37/04 • • Immunostimulants [7]
  - 37/06 • • Immunosuppressants, e.g. drugs for graft rejection [7]
  - 37/08 • Antiallergic agents (asthmatic agents A61P 11/06; ophthalmic antiallergics A61P 27/14) [7]
- 39/00 General protective or antinoxious agents [7]**
  - 39/02 • Antidotes [7]
  - 39/04 • Chelating agents [7]
  - 39/06 • Free radical scavengers or antioxidants [7]
- 41/00 Drugs used in surgical methods, e.g. surgery adjuvants for preventing adhesion or for vitreum substitution [7]**
- 43/00 Drugs for specific purposes, not provided for in groups A61P 1/00-A61P 41/00 [7]**

**Note(s) [2010.01]**

Classification is only made in this group when a specific therapeutic activity for a chemical compound or medicinal preparation has been clearly disclosed, the specific therapeutic activity not being appropriate to any of groups A61P 1/00-A61P 41/00.

**A61Q SPECIFIC USE OF COSMETICS OR SIMILAR TOILET PREPARATIONS [2006.01]****Note(s) [2006.01]**

1. This subclass covers the use of cosmetics or similar toilet preparations already classified as such in main group A61K 8/00, in subclasses C11D or C12N, or in classes C01, C07 or C08.
2. When classifying in this subclass, classification is also made in subclass A61P if the preparation is stated to have therapeutic activity.
3. In this subclass, the use of cosmetics or similar toilet preparations is classified in all appropriate places.
4. The classification symbols of this subclass are not listed first when assigned to patent documents.

**1/00 Make-up preparations; Body powders; Preparations for removing make-up [2006.01]**

- 1/02 • Preparations containing skin colorants, e.g. pigments (preparations in powder form A61Q 1/12) [2006.01]
- 1/04 • • for lips [2006.01]
- 1/06 • • • Lipsticks [2006.01]
- 1/08 • • for cheeks, e.g. rouge [2006.01]
- 1/10 • • for eyes, e.g. eyeliner, mascara [2006.01]
- 1/12 • Face or body powders, e.g. for grooming, adorning or absorbing [2006.01]
- 1/14 • Preparations for removing make-up [2006.01]

**3/00 Manicure or pedicure preparations [2006.01]**

- 3/02 • Nail coatings [2006.01]
- 3/04 • Nail coating removers [2006.01]

**5/00 Preparations for care of the hair [2006.01]**

- 5/02 • Preparations for cleaning the hair [2006.01]
- 5/04 • Preparations for permanent waving or straightening the hair [2006.01]
- 5/06 • Preparations for styling the hair, e.g. by temporary shaping or colouring [2006.01]
- 5/08 • Preparations for bleaching the hair [2006.01]
- 5/10 • Preparations for permanently dyeing the hair [2006.01]
- 5/12 • Preparations containing hair conditioners [2006.01]

**7/00 Preparations for affecting hair growth [2006.01]**

- 7/02 • Preparations for inhibiting or slowing hair growth [2006.01]

**9/00 Preparations for removing hair or for aiding hair removal [2006.01]**

- 9/02 • Shaving preparations [2006.01]
- 9/04 • Depilatories [2006.01]

**11/00 Preparations for care of the teeth, of the oral cavity or of dentures, e.g. dentifrices or toothpastes; Mouth rinses [2006.01]**

- 11/02 • Preparations for deodorising, bleaching or disinfecting dentures [2006.01]

**13/00 Formulations or additives for perfume preparations (essential oils or perfumes *per se* C11B 9/00) [2006.01]****15/00 Anti-perspirants or body deodorants (deodorisation of air A61L 9/00) [2006.01]****17/00 Barrier preparations; Preparations brought into direct contact with the skin for affording protection against external influences, e.g. sunlight, X-rays or other harmful rays, corrosive materials, bacteria or insect stings [2006.01]**

- 17/02 • containing insect repellants [2006.01]
- 17/04 • Topical preparations for affording protection against sunlight or other radiation; Topical sun tanning preparations [2006.01]

**19/00 Preparations for care of the skin [2006.01]**

- 19/02 • for chemically bleaching or whitening the skin [2006.01]
- 19/04 • for chemically tanning the skin (topical sun tanning preparations A61Q 17/04) [2006.01]
- 19/06 • for countering cellulitis [2006.01]
- 19/08 • Anti-ageing preparations [2006.01]
- 19/10 • Washing or bathing preparations [2006.01]

**90/00 Cosmetics or similar toilet preparations for specific uses not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2009.01]****Note(s) [2010.01]**

Classification is only made in this group when a specific use for a cosmetic or similar toilet preparation has been clearly disclosed, the specific use not being appropriate to any of the preceding groups in this subclass.

**A62 LIFE-SAVING; FIRE-FIGHTING**

**A62B DEVICES, APPARATUS OR METHODS FOR LIFE-SAVING** (valves specially adapted for medical use A61M 39/00; composition of chemical substances used in respirators, gas-masks, breathing apparatus or the like A62D; rescuing from mountains or trees A63B 27/00, A63B 29/00; life-saving devices, apparatus or methods specially adapted for use in water B63C 9/00; divers' equipment B63C 11/00; specially adapted for use with aircraft, e.g. parachutes or ejector seats, B64D; rescue devices peculiar to mining E21F 11/00)

**Subclass index****RESCUING, e.g. IN CASE OF FIRE**

Means for escape or protection.....1/00, 3/00, 5/00

Breathing containers.....31/00

Safety means for seemingly-dead persons.....	33/00
INDIVIDUAL BREATHING MASKS OR APPARATUS	
Types.....	7/00, 18/00
Details.....	9/00, 18/08
Cartridges, oxygen generators, filters.....	19/00, 21/00, 23/00
Storing, testing.....	25/00, 27/00
PROTECTIVE CLOTHING, SAFETY BELTS.....	17/00, 35/00
COLLECTIVE DEVICES FOR BREATHING PROTECTION OR FOR PROTECTION AGAINST CHEMICAL AGENTS	
Air conditioning or ventilation in sealed rooms.....	11/00, 13/00
Other protection.....	15/00, 29/00
OTHER LIFE SAVING.....	99/00

### **Rescuing from fire; Rescuing from buildings or the like**

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Devices for lowering persons from buildings or the like</b>	9/04	• Couplings; Supporting frames
1/02	• by making use of rescue cages, bags, or the like (elevators, escalators or moving walkways B66B)	9/06	• Mouthpieces; Nose-clips (for medical purposes A61M 15/00)
1/04	• • Single parts, e.g. fastening devices	<b>11/00</b>	<b>Devices for reconditioning breathing air in sealed rooms</b> (chemical purification, disinfection, or sterilisation of air A61L; in aircraft or submarines, insofar as they influence the construction of the vehicle or are influenced by its construction B63B, B64D, respectively; air-conditioning in general F24F)
1/06	• by making use of rope-lowering devices (capstans, winches B66D)	<b>13/00</b>	<b>Special devices for ventilating gasproof shelters</b> (ventilating in general F24F)
1/08	• • with brake mechanisms for the winches or pulleys	<b>15/00</b>	<b>Installations affording protection against poisonous or injurious substances, e.g. with separate breathing apparatus</b> (building aspects E04H 9/00)
1/10	• • • mechanically operated	<b>17/00</b>	<b>Protective clothing affording protection against heat or harmful chemical agents or for use at high altitudes</b> (protective clothing or garments for work or sport A41D 13/00; protecting eyes or ears A61F 9/00; composition of materials for protective clothing A62D 5/00; life-saving garments for use at sea B63C; diving suits B63C 11/02; flying suits B64D 10/00; space suits B64G 6/00; bullet-proof clothing F41H 1/02) [2]
1/12	• • • hydraulically operated	17/04	• Hoods
1/14	• • with brakes sliding on the rope	17/08	• Protective coverings for animals
1/16	• • Life-saving ropes or belts (safety belts A62B 35/00; mountain guy-ropes A63B 29/02; life-saving belts for use at sea B63C)	<b>18/00</b>	<b>Breathing masks or helmets, e.g. affording protection against chemical agents or for use at high altitudes</b> (A62B 17/00 takes precedence; anaesthetic masks A61M 16/06)
1/18	• • Other single parts for rope lowering-devices, e.g. take-up rollers for ropes, devices for shooting ropes	18/02	• Masks (gas-masks for animals A62B 18/06; masks for welders A61F 9/06)
1/20	• by making use of sliding-ropes, sliding-poles or chutes, e.g. hoses, pipes, sliding-grooves, sliding sheets	18/04	• Gas helmets
1/22	• by making use of jumping devices, e.g. jumping-sheet, jumping-mattresses	18/06	• Gas masks for animals
<b>3/00</b>	<b>Devices or single parts for facilitating escape from buildings or the like, e.g. protection shields, protection screens; Portable devices for preventing smoke penetrating into distinct parts of buildings</b> (A62B 1/00 takes precedence)	18/08	• Component parts for gas-masks or gas-helmets, e.g. windows, straps, speech transmitters, signal-devices (eye-pieces for protective goggles A61F 9/02; composition of materials for the windows or other transparent parts A62D 7/00)
<b>5/00</b>	<b>Other devices for rescuing from fire</b> (ladders E06C)	18/10	• • Valves

### **Respirators; Gas-masks, including breathing apparatus, e.g. for high altitude, or masks therefor; Devices affording protection against harmful chemical agents**

<b>7/00</b>	<b>Respiratory apparatus</b> (for medical purposes A61M 16/00)	<b>19/00</b>	<b>Cartridges with absorbing substances for respiratory apparatus</b>
7/02	• with compressed oxygen or air	19/02	• with oxidising agents
7/04	• • and lung-controlled oxygen or air valves	<b>21/00</b>	<b>Devices for producing oxygen from chemical substances for respiratory apparatus</b>
7/06	• with liquid oxygen	<b>23/00</b>	<b>Filters for breathing-protection purposes</b> (gas-filters in general B01D)
7/08	• containing chemicals producing oxygen	23/02	• for respirators
7/10	• with filter elements		
7/12	• with fresh-air hose		
7/14	• for high-altitude aircraft		
<b>9/00</b>	<b>Component parts for respiratory or breathing apparatus</b> (A62B 19/00, A62B 21/00, A62B 23/00 take precedence) [4]		
9/02	• Valves		

23/04	• for gasproof shelters	33/00	<b>Devices for allowing seemingly-dead persons to escape or draw attention; Breathing apparatus for accidentally buried person</b>
23/06	• Nose filters		
25/00	<b>Devices for storing respiratory or breathing apparatus [4]</b>		
27/00	<b>Methods or devices for testing respiratory or breathing apparatus</b> (apparatus for testing gastightness in general G01M) [4]	35/00	<b>Safety belts or body harnesses; Similar equipment for limiting displacement of the human body, especially in case of sudden changes of motion</b> (buckles A44B 11/00; accessories for children's furniture A47D 15/00; children's seats B60N 2/24; safety belts or body harnesses for land vehicles B60R 22/00; harnesses for parachutes B64D 17/30; harnessing in aircraft B64D 25/06; releasable fastenings F16B) [4]
29/00	<b>Devices, e.g. installations, for rendering harmless or for keeping off harmful chemical agents</b> (respiratory apparatus A62B 7/00; gasproof doors, windows, shutters E06B)	35/04	• incorporating energy absorbing means [4]
31/00	<b>Containers or portable cabins for affording breathing protection with devices for reconditioning the breathing air or for ventilating</b> (ventilation of gasproof shelters A62B 13/00; protective clothes or coverings A62B 17/00; treatment rooms for medical purposes A61G 10/00) [4]	99/00	<b>Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2009.01]</b>
A62C	<b>FIRE-FIGHTING</b> (fire-extinguishing compositions, use of chemical substances in extinguishing fires A62D 1/00; spraying, applying liquids or other fluent materials to surfaces in general B05; fire-fighting aircraft B64D 1/16; alarm arrangements G08B, e.g. fire alarms actuated by smoke or gases G08B 17/10)		

### Subclass index

#### FIRE PREVENTION OR CONTAINMENT; FIRE-EXTINGUISHING FOR PARTICULAR OBJECTS OR PLACES

Prevention or containment.....	2/00
Flame traps.....	4/00
For particular objects or places.....	3/00
MAKING FIRE-EXTINGUISHING MATERIALS BEFORE USE.....	5/00
HAND TOOLS OR ACCESSORIES.....	8/00
PORTABLE EXTINGUISHERS	
According to operating principle.....	11/00, 13/00, 19/00, 25/00
Knapsack type.....	15/00
Pistol or rifle type.....	17/00
FIRE-FIGHTING VEHICLES	
Land vehicles.....	27/00
Boats.....	29/00
DELIVERY OF FIRE-EXTINGUISHING MATERIALS.....	31/00
HOSE ACCESSORIES.....	33/00
STATIONARILY-INSTALLED EQUIPMENT.....	35/00
CONTROL OF FIRE-FIGHTING EQUIPMENT.....	37/00
OTHER METHODS, EQUIPMENT OR ACCESSORIES.....	99/00

<b>2/00</b>	<b>Fire prevention or containment</b> (A62C 3/00 takes precedence; flame traps A62C 4/00) [5]	<b>3/00</b>	<b>Fire prevention, containment or extinguishing specially adapted for particular objects or places</b> (for nuclear reactors G21C 9/04) [5]
2/04	• Removing or cutting-off the supply of inflammable material [5]	3/02	• for area conflagrations, e.g. forest fires, subterranean fires [5]
2/06	• Physical fire-barriers [5]	3/04	• for dust or loosely-baled or loosely-piled materials, e.g. in silos, in chimneys (flame traps A62C 4/00) [5]
2/08	• • Water curtains (nozzles A62C 31/02) [5]	3/06	• of highly inflammable material, e.g. light metals, petroleum products [5]
2/10	• • Fire-proof curtains [5]	3/07	• in vehicles, e.g. in road vehicles [5]
2/12	• • Hinged dampers [5]	3/08	• • in aircraft [5]
2/14	• • • with two or more blades [5]	3/10	• • in ships [5]
2/16	• • • multi-vane roll or fold-up type [5]	3/16	• in electrical installations, e.g. cableways [5]
2/18	• • Sliding dampers [5]	<b>4/00</b>	<b>Flame traps allowing passage of gas but not of flame or explosion wave [2]</b>
2/20	• • • at 90 degrees to the plane of the opening [5]	4/02	• in gas-pipes (safety valves F16K 17/00) [2]
2/22	• • Fire-dampers with provision for the removal of an obstacle, e.g. rails, conveyers, before closing the opening [5]	4/04	• in flues or chimneys [2]
2/24	• • Operating or controlling mechanisms [5]		

**5/00 Making of fire-extinguishing materials immediately before use** (nozzles A62C 31/02) [5]

- 5/02 • of foam [5]
- 5/027 • • Heavy foam [5]
- 5/033 • of gel [5]

**Hand fire-extinguishers [5]****8/00 Hand tools or accessories specially adapted for fire-fighting, e.g. tool boxes [5]**

- 8/02 • Buckets or pails [5]
- 8/04 • Rakes or beaters [5]
- 8/06 • Fire-blankets [5]
- 8/08 • Shields [5]

**11/00 Portable extinguishers with manually-operated pumps [5]****13/00 Portable extinguishers which are permanently pressurised or pressurised immediately before use** (A62C 11/00 takes precedence) [5]

- 13/02 • with pressure gas produced by chemicals
- 13/04 • • with separate acid container
- 13/06 • • • with acid container without closure device
- 13/08 • • • with acid container with closure device
- 13/10 • • • • with loose-lid closure device (loosely-engaging lids or covers for containers for liquids without means for effecting sealing of container in general B65D 51/02)
- 13/12 • • • • with valve closure device
- 13/14 • • • with acid container the shell of which is ruptured by pin, screw-pin, or similar device
- 13/16 • • • with movable acid container ruptured by falling when operated
- 13/18 • • • with acid container ruptured by a striking weight, e.g. by a falling weight
- 13/20 • • with the chemicals in a single case, e.g. in a cartridge
- 13/22 • • with incendiary substances producing pressure gas
- 13/62 • with a single permanently pressurised container [5]
- 13/64 • • the extinguishing material being released by means of a valve [5]
- 13/66 • with extinguishing material and pressure gas being stored in separate containers [5]
- 13/68 • • characterised by means for releasing the extinguishing material [5]
- 13/70 • • characterised by means for releasing the pressure gas [5]
- 13/72 • • characterised by releasing means operating essentially simultaneously on both containers [5]
- 13/74 • • • the pressure gas container being pierced or broken [5]
- 13/76 • Details or accessories [5]
- 13/78 • • Suspending or supporting devices [5]

**15/00 Extinguishers essentially of the knapsack type** (knapsacks, carrying-frames, pack-frames carried on the body A45F 3/00)**17/00 Hand fire-extinguishers essentially in the form of pistols or rifles****19/00 Hand fire-extinguishers in which the extinguishing substance is expelled by an explosion; Exploding containers thrown into the fire****25/00 Portable extinguishers with power-driven pumps [5]****27/00 Fire-fighting land vehicles** (vehicle aspects, see the appropriate subclasses of classes B60-B62)**29/00 Fire-fighting vessels or like floating structures** (shipbuilding or navigation aspects, see the appropriate subclasses of class B63) [5]**31/00 Delivery of fire-extinguishing material** (pumps F04; hoses F16L)

- 31/02 • Nozzles specially adapted for fire-extinguishing [5]
- 31/03 • • adjustable, e.g. from spray to jet or vice-versa [5]
- 31/05 • • with two or more outlets [5]
- 31/07 • • • for different media [5]
- 31/12 • • for delivering foam or atomized foam
- 31/22 • • specially adapted for piercing walls, heaped materials, or the like
- 31/24 • • attached to ladders, poles, towers, or other structures with or without rotary heads
- 31/28 • Accessories for delivery devices, e.g. supports

**33/00 Hose accessories [5]**

- 33/02 • Apparatus for cleaning or drying hoses (drying shelves F26B)
- 33/04 • Supports or clamps for fire hoses
- 33/06 • Hose or pipe bridges

**35/00 Permanently-installed equipment** (A62C 31/00, A62C 33/00, A62C 37/00 take precedence; for forming water curtains A62C 2/08)

- 35/02 • with containers for delivering the extinguishing substance (for forming water curtains A62C 2/08)
- 35/04 • • Swingable or tiltable containers
- 35/06 • • Containers destroyed or opened by falling [5]
- 35/08 • • Containers destroyed or opened by bursting charge [5]
- 35/10 • • Containers destroyed or opened by flames or heat [5]
- 35/11 • • controlled by a signal from the danger zone [5]
- 35/13 • • • with a finite supply of extinguishing material [5]
- 35/15 • • • with a system for topping-up the supply of extinguishing material automatically [5]
- 35/20 • Hydrants, e.g. wall-hoses, wall units, plug-in cabinets (hydrants in streets E03B 9/02) [5]
- 35/58 • Pipe-line systems [5]
- 35/60 • • wet, i.e. containing extinguishing material even when not in use [5]
- 35/62 • • dry, i.e. empty of extinguishing material when not in use [5]
- 35/64 • • pressurised [5]
- 35/66 • • • Accelerators [5]
- 35/68 • • Details, e.g. of pipes or valve systems (valves in general F16K) [5]

**37/00 Control of fire-fighting equipment** (heat-sensitive devices G01K) [5]

- 37/08 • comprising an outlet device containing a sensor, or itself being the sensor, i.e. self-contained sprinklers [5]
- 37/09 • • telescopic or adjustable [5]
- 37/10 • • Releasing means, e.g. electrically released [5]
- 37/11 • • • heat-sensitive [5]
- 37/12 • • • • with fusible links [5]
- 37/14 • • • • with frangible vessels [5]
- 37/16 • • • • with thermally-expansible links [5]

- 37/20 • • Resetting after use; Tools therefor [5]
- 37/21 • • • automatic [5]
- 37/36 • an actuating signal being generated by a sensor separate from an outlet device [5]
- 37/38 • • by both sensor and actuator, e.g. valve, being in the danger zone [5]
- 37/40 • • • with electric connection between sensor and actuator [5]

- 37/42 • • • with mechanical connection between sensor and actuator, e.g. rods, levers [5]
- 37/44 • • only the sensor being in the danger zone [5]
- 37/46 • • Construction of the actuator [5]
- 37/48 • • • Thermally sensitive initiators [5]
- 37/50 • Testing or indicating devices for determining the state of readiness of the equipment [5]

**99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2010.01]**

**A62D CHEMICAL MEANS FOR EXTINGUISHING FIRES; PROCESSES FOR MAKING HARMFUL CHEMICAL SUBSTANCES HARMLESS, OR LESS HARMFUL, BY EFFECTING A CHEMICAL CHANGE; COMPOSITION OF MATERIALS FOR COVERINGS OR CLOTHING FOR PROTECTING AGAINST HARMFUL CHEMICAL AGENTS; COMPOSITION OF MATERIALS FOR TRANSPARENT PARTS OF GAS-MASKS, RESPIRATORS, BREATHING BAGS OR HELMETS; COMPOSITION OF CHEMICAL MATERIALS FOR USE IN BREATHING APPARATUS**

#### **Note(s)**

Processes using enzymes or micro-organisms in order to:

- i. liberate, separate or purify a pre-existing compound or composition, or to
- ii. treat textiles or clean solid surfaces of materials

are further classified in subclass C12S.

#### **1/00 Fire-extinguishing compositions; Use of chemical substances in extinguishing fires**

- 1/02 • containing or yielding a gas phase, e.g. foams (A62D 1/06, A62D 1/08 take precedence) [3]
- 1/04 • • characterised by the foam stabiliser [3]
- 1/06 • containing gas-producing, chemically-reactive components [3]
- 1/08 • containing volatile or gas-charged liquids [3]

#### **3/00 Processes for making harmful chemical substances harmless, or less harmful, by effecting a chemical change in the substances (devices for rendering harmful chemical agents harmless A62B 29/00; consuming noxious gases by combustion F23G 7/06) [1, 2007.01]**

##### **Note(s)**

1. This group does not cover :
  - chemical or physico-chemical type processes where eradicating or diminishing the dangerousness of harmful chemical substances produces useful products, e.g. cement. These types of processes are covered by the appropriate subclass for making the specific product. However, in situations where processes for making products include a subset of process steps with eradicating or diminishing the dangerousness of a harmful chemical substance as its fundamental goal, and this subset is in itself novel and unobvious, this subset is covered by group A62D 3/00.
2. In this group the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
  - "harmful chemical substances" are chemical waste substances which are too hazardous or toxic to be discarded in an ordinary municipal landfill.
3. In this group, at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the first appropriate place.

4. In this group, it is desirable to add the indexing code(s) of group A62D 101/00 relating to the nature of the harmful chemical substance.
- 3/02 • by biological methods, i.e. processes using enzymes or micro-organisms [2007.01]
- 3/10 • by subjecting to electric or wave energy or particle or ionizing radiation [2007.01]
- 3/11 • • Electrochemical processes, e.g. electrodialysis [2007.01]
- 3/115 • • • Electrolytic degradation or conversion [2007.01]
- 3/13 • • to sonic energy [2007.01]
- 3/15 • • to particle radiation, e.g. electron beam radiation [2007.01]
- 3/17 • • to electromagnetic radiation, e.g. emitted by a laser [2007.01]
- 3/172 • • • Gamma rays, i.e. radiation having a wavelength of about 0.003 to 0.03 nm [2007.01]
- 3/174 • • • X-rays, i.e. radiation having a wavelength of about 0.03 to 3 nm [2007.01]
- 3/176 • • • Ultraviolet radiation, i.e. radiation having a wavelength of about 3 to 400 nm [2007.01]
- 3/178 • • • Microwave radiation, i.e. radiation having a wavelength of about 0.3 to 30 cm [2007.01]
- 3/19 • • to plasma [2007.01]
- 3/20 • by hydrolysis or destructive steam gasification, e.g. using water and heat to effect chemical change [2007.01]
- 3/30 • by reacting with chemical agents [2007.01]
- 3/32 • • by treatment in molten chemical reagent, e.g. salts or metals [2007.01]
- 3/33 • • by chemically fixing the harmful substance, e.g. by chelation or complexation [2007.01]
- 3/34 • • Dehalogenation using reactive chemical agents able to degrade [2007.01]
- 3/35 • • by hydrolysis [2007.01]
- 3/36 • • Detoxification by using acid or alkaline reagents [2007.01]
- 3/37 • • by reduction, e.g. hydrogenation [2007.01]
- 3/38 • • by oxidation; by combustion [2007.01]

## A62D

- 3/40 • by heating to effect chemical change, e.g. by pyrolysis [2007.01]
- 5/00 **Composition of materials for coverings or clothing affording protection against harmful chemical agents**
- 7/00 **Composition of materials for transparent parts of gas-masks, respirators, breathing bags, or helmets**
- 7/02 • Clear-view sheets which prevent the formation of water drops or ice
- 9/00 **Composition of chemical substances for use in breathing apparatus**

### Indexing scheme associated with group A62D 3/00 relating to the nature of the harmful chemical substances [2007.01]

- 101/00 **Harmful chemical substances made harmless, or less harmful, by effecting chemical change [2007.01]**

#### Note(s) [2007.01]

When indexing a substance in groups A62D 101/02-A62D 101/08, indexing according to its chemical structure may also be made in one or more of groups A62D 101/20-A62D 101/40.

- 101/02 • Chemical warfare substances, e.g. cholinesterase inhibitors [2007.01]
- 101/04 • Pesticides, e.g. insecticides, herbicides, fungicides or nematocides [2007.01]
- 101/06 • Explosives, propellants or pyrotechnics, e.g. rocket fuel or napalm [2007.01]
- 101/08 • Toxic combustion residues, e.g. toxic substances contained in fly ash from waste incineration [2007.01]
- 101/20 • Organic substances [2007.01]

- 
- 101/22 • • containing halogen [2007.01]
- 101/24 • • containing heavy metals [2007.01]
- 101/26 • • containing nitrogen or phosphorus [2007.01]
- 101/28 • • containing oxygen, sulfur, selenium or tellurium, i.e. chalcogen [2007.01]
- 101/40 • Inorganic substances [2007.01]
- 101/41 • • Inorganic fibers, e.g. asbestos [2007.01]
- 101/43 • • containing heavy metals, in the bonded or free state [2007.01]
- 101/45 • • containing nitrogen or phosphorus [2007.01]
- 101/47 • • containing oxygen, sulfur, selenium or tellurium, i.e. chalcogen [2007.01]
- 101/49 • • containing halogen [2007.01]

## A63 SPORTS; GAMES; AMUSEMENTS

- A63B **APPARATUS FOR PHYSICAL TRAINING, GYMNASTICS, SWIMMING, CLIMBING, OR FENCING; BALL GAMES; TRAINING EQUIPMENT** (apparatus for passive exercising, massage A61H)

### Subclass index

#### GYMNASTIC APPARATUS

- Bars; Balance beams..... 1/00, 3/00, 4/00
- Apparatus for jumping; stilts..... 5/00, 6/00, 25/00
- Freely-suspended apparatus; climbing poles, frames, or stages..... 7/00, 9/00
- Clubs..... 15/00
- Other exercising apparatus..... 17/00-23/00, 26/00
- Controls..... 24/00

#### APPARATUS FOR SPECIAL SPORTS

- Climbing, mountaineering..... 27/00, 29/00
- Swimming..... 31/00-35/00
- Balls..... 37/00-47/00
- Golf equipment..... 53/00-57/00
- Other equipment for ball games..... 49/00, 51/00, 59/00, 61/00, 63/00
- Implements for throwing..... 65/00
- Training equipment..... 69/00

- OTHER SPORTING GAMES; OTHER ACCESSORIES..... 67/00, 71/00

### Gymnastic exercising apparatus [3]

- 1/00 **Horizontal bars for gymnastics**

- 1/04 • Cleaning the rods

- 3/00 **Parallel bars or similar gymnastic apparatus**

- 4/00 **Balance beams [5]**

- 5/00 **Apparatus for jumping** (mats for jumping A63B 6/00; for racing or riding sports, e.g. hurdles, A63K) [5]

- 5/02 • High-jumping posts

- 5/04 • • Ropes therefor
- 5/06 • Vaulting poles
- 5/08 • Spring-boards (of trampoline type A63B 5/11) [5]
- 5/10 • • for aquatic sports
- 5/11 • Trampolines [5]
- 5/12 • Bolster vaulting apparatus, e.g. horses, bucks, tables
- 5/16 • Training devices for jumping; Devices for balloon-jumping; Jumping aids
- 5/20 • Skipping-ropes
- 5/22 • Foot obstacles for skipping



- 6/00 Mats or the like for absorbing shocks for jumping, gymnastics or the like [5]**  
 6/02 • for landing, e.g. for pole vaulting [5]
- 7/00 Freely-suspended gymnastic apparatus**  
 7/02 • Swinging rings; Trapezes  
 7/04 • Climbing-ropes  
 7/06 • Rotors with hanging ropes  
 7/08 • Apparatus for rope-dancing
- 9/00 Climbing poles, frames, or stages**
- 15/00 Clubs for gymnastics or the like**  
 15/02 • with illuminating devices
- 17/00 Exercising apparatus combining several parts such as ladders, rods, beams, slides**  
 17/02 • rigidly combined  
 17/04 • separable
- 19/00 Hoop exercising apparatus**  
 19/02 • Freely-movable rolling hoops, e.g. gyrowheels  
 19/04 • movably supported on a framework
- 21/00 Exercising apparatus for developing or strengthening the muscles or joints of the body by working against a counterforce, with or without measuring devices** (electric or electronic controls therefor A63B 24/00)  
 21/002 • isometric or isokinetic, i.e. substantial force variation without substantial muscle motion [5]  
 21/005 • using electromagnetic or electric force-resisters [5]  
 21/008 • using hydraulic or pneumatic force-resisters [5]  
 21/012 • using frictional force-resisters [5]  
 21/015 • • including rotating or oscillating elements [5]  
 21/018 • • including a rope moving relative to the surface of elements [5]  
 21/02 • using resilient force-resisters [5]  
 21/04 • • attached to static foundation  
 21/045 • • having torsion element [5]  
 21/05 • • Linearly-compressed elements [5]  
 21/055 • • extension element type [5]  
 21/06 • User-manipulated weights [5]  
 21/062 • • including guide for vertical array of weights [5]  
 21/065 • • worn on user's body [5]  
 21/068 • • using user's body weight [5]  
 21/072 • • Dumb-bells, bar-bells or the like [5]  
 21/075 • • • with variable weights [5]  
 21/078 • • Devices for bench press exercises [5]  
 21/08 • • anchored at one end  
 21/16 • Supports for anchoring force-resisters  
 21/22 • Resisting devices with rotary bodies  
 21/28 • Devices for two persons operating in opposition
- 22/00 Exercising apparatus specially adapted for conditioning the cardio-vascular system, for training agility or co-ordination of movements** (force-resisting aspects A63B 21/00; electric or electronic controls therefor A63B 24/00) [5]  
 22/02 • with movable endless bands [5]  
 22/04 • with movable steps [5]  
 22/06 • with rotating cycling movement (support stands for bicycles A63B 69/16; unicycles B62K 1/00) [5]  
 22/08 • • for the legs [5]  
 22/10 • • for the arms [5]  
 22/12 • • for legs and arms simultaneously [5]
- 22/14 • Platforms for reciprocating rotating motion about a vertical axis [5]  
 22/16 • Platforms for rocking motion about a horizontal axis; Balancing drums; Balancing boards or the like [5]  
 22/18 • with elements having a circulating or rotating movement, generated by oscillating movement of the user (hoop exercising apparatus A63B 19/00) [5]  
 22/20 • using rollers, wheels, castors or the like to be moved over the floor or other surface during exercising [5]
- 23/00 Exercising apparatus specially adapted for particular parts of the body** (A63B 22/00 takes precedence; force-resisting aspects A63B 21/00; electric or electronic controls therefor A63B 24/00; devices for exercising or strengthening of fingers or arms in teaching operation of keyboards G09B, e.g. G09B 15/06) [5]  
 23/02 • for the abdomen, the spinal column, the torso, or the shoulders  
 23/025 • for the head or neck [5]  
 23/03 • • for face muscles [5]  
 23/035 • for limbs, i.e. upper or lower limbs, e.g. simultaneously [5]  
 23/04 • • for lower limbs [5]  
 23/08 • • • for ankle-joints [5]  
 23/10 • • • for feet or toes [5]  
 23/12 • • • for upper limbs [5]  
 23/14 • • • for wrist-joints [5]  
 23/16 • • • for hands or fingers [5]  
 23/18 • for improving respiratory function [5]  
 23/20 • for vaginal muscles [5]
- 24/00 Electric or electronic controls for exercising apparatus of groups A63B 1/00-A63B 23/00 [5]**
- 25/00 Stilts or the like**  
 25/02 • Elastic stilts  
 25/04 • with wheels  
 25/06 • Shoes formed with stilts to elongate the step  
 25/08 • Hopping-sticks, e.g. pogo sticks  
 25/10 • Elastic bouncing shoes fastened to the foot
- 26/00 Exercising apparatus not covered by groups A63B 1/00-A63B 25/00 [5]**
- Climbing; Mountaineering**
- 27/00 Apparatus for climbing poles, trees, or the like** (safety belts for climbers A62B 35/00)  
 27/02 • Climbing devices for round poles attachable to the feet  
 27/04 • Climbing devices for profile poles attachable to the feet
- 29/00 Apparatus for mountaineering** (helmets A42B 3/00; non-skid devices or attachments for footwear, e.g. crampons, A43C 15/00; breathing masks or helmets for use at high altitudes A62B 18/00; picks B25D 7/00) [3]  
 29/02 • Mountain guy-ropes or accessories, e.g. avalanche ropes; Means for indicating the location of accidentally buried, e.g. snow-buried, persons  
 29/04 • Steps for climbing (for permanent fixing E06C 9/04)  
 29/08 • Hand equipment for climbers

**Swimming**

- 31/00** **Swimming aids** (teaching swimming A63B 69/10- A63B 69/14; life-saving in water B63C 9/00)
- 31/02 • Swimming gloves
- 31/04 • • with arrangements for enlarging the propulsive surface
- 31/08 • Swim fins, flippers or other swimming aids held by, or attachable to, the hands, arms, feet or legs (A63B 31/18 takes precedence; worn as gloves A63B 31/02) [3]
- 31/10 • • held by, or attachable to, the hands or feet [3]
- 31/11 • • • attachable only to the feet [3]
- 31/12 • • held by, or attachable to, the arms or legs [3]
- 31/14 • • with valve-flaps
- 31/16 • • with arrangements for varying the size of the swimming surface
- 31/18 • Swimming appliances with propulsive effect for hands and feet simultaneously
- 33/00** **Swimming equipment attachable to the head, e.g. swimming helmets, swimming goggles** (breathing aids, e.g. snorkels, B63C 11/12)
- 35/00** **Swimming framework with driving mechanisms operated by the swimmer or by a motor** (other vessels or like floating structures for pleasure or sport B63B 35/71, B63B 35/73; divers' sleds or like craft B63C 11/46)
- 35/02 • shaped like a fish tail
- 35/04 • with paddle wheels
- 35/06 • with twin-bladed paddles or buoyant members
- 35/08 • with propeller propulsion
- 35/10 • • operated by the swimmer
- 35/12 • • operated by a motor

**Balls**

- 37/00** **Solid balls; Marbles** (heavy throwing-balls A63B 65/06)
- 37/02 • Special cores
- 37/04 • • Rigid cores
- 37/06 • • Elastic cores
- 37/08 • • Liquid cores; Plastic cores
- 37/10 • • with eccentric centre of gravity
- 37/12 • Special coverings
- 37/14 • Special surfaces
- 39/00** **Hollow non-inflatable balls**
- 39/02 • Arrangements for maintaining the pressure
- 39/04 • • Pricking balls
- 39/06 • Special coverings
- 39/08 • • made of two halves
- 41/00** **Hollow inflatable balls**
- 41/02 • Bladders
- 41/04 • • Closures therefor
- 41/08 • Ball covers; Closures therefor
- 41/10 • Bladder and cover united
- 41/12 • Tools or devices for blowing up or closing balls
- 43/00** **Balls with special arrangements**
- 43/02 • with a handle
- 43/04 • with an eccentric centre of gravity; with mechanism for changing the centre of gravity (solid balls A63B 37/10)

- 43/06 • with illuminating devices
- 45/00** **Apparatus or methods for manufacturing balls** (working of plastics or substances in a plastic state B29)
- 45/02 • Marking of balls
- 47/00** **Devices for handling or treating balls**
- 47/02 • for picking-up
- 47/04 • for cleaning balls (apparatus for cleaning balls, as accessories for bowling- or table alleys A63D 5/10)

**Rackets, bats, or other accessories for ball games**

- 49/00** **Tennis, badminton, or like rackets**
- 49/02 • Frames
- 49/04 • • with balancing devices
- 49/06 • • with slits
- 49/08 • • with special construction of the handle
- 49/10 • • made of non-metallic materials, other than wood
- 49/12 • • made of metal
- 49/14 • • Protection devices on the frame
- 49/16 • Presses
- 49/18 • Covers
- 51/00** **Stringing tennis rackets**
- 51/02 • Strings; String substitutes
- 51/04 • • Sheet-like structures used as substitutes
- 51/06 • Double-sided stringings
- 51/08 • Diagonal stringings
- 51/10 • Reinforcements for stringings
- 51/12 • Devices arranged in or on the racket for adjusting the tension of the strings
- 51/14 • Devices for stringing
- 51/16 • • Machines or apparatus for stringing while manufacturing
- 53/00** **Golf clubs**
- 53/02 • Joint structures between the head and the shaft
- 53/04 • Heads
- 53/06 • • adjustable
- 53/08 • with special arrangements for obtaining a variable impact
- 53/10 • Non-metallic shafts
- 53/12 • Metallic shafts
- 53/14 • Handles
- 53/16 • • adjustable
- 55/00** **Bags for golf clubs; Stands for golf clubs for use on the course**
- 55/02 • with special receptacles for the balls
- 55/04 • Supports with devices for anchoring to the ground
- 55/06 • • Bags with tripod or like set-up stands
- 55/08 • Wheeled carriers for golf bags
- 55/10 • Stands for golf clubs for use on the course
- 57/00** **Golf game accessories, e.g. golf cups, golf tees**
- 59/00** **Bats, rackets, or the like, for other games** (bats with a ball tethered thereto A63B 67/20)
- 59/02 • for lacrosse, pelota, or similar games
- 59/04 • for table tennis
- 59/06 • for baseball, rounders, or similar games
- 59/08 • for cricket
- 59/10 • for croquet
- 59/12 • for hockey

- 59/14 • for ice hockey
- 59/16 • for polo
- 59/18 • Circular bats for other games

**61/00 Tennis nets or accessories for tennis or like games**

- 61/02 • Posts; Revolvably-mounted posts
- 61/04 • Straining or adjusting devices for nets

**63/00 Targets or goals for ball games** (golf cups A63B 57/00)

- 63/02 • rigidly mounted (A63B 63/08 takes precedence) [3]
- 63/04 • adjustably or pivotally mounted (A63B 63/08 takes precedence) [3]
- 63/06 • Revolving targets
- 63/08 • with horizontal opening for ball, e.g. for basketball [3]

**65/00 Implements for throwing** (throwing toys A63H 33/18)

- 65/02 • Darts, spears or the like
- 65/04 • Throwing-hammers
- 65/06 • Heavy throwing-balls
- 65/08 • Boomerangs
- 65/10 • Discus discs; Quoits
- 65/12 • Ball-throwing apparatus with or without catchers

**67/00 Sporting games not provided for in groups A63B 1/00-A63B 65/00**

- 67/02 • Special golf games, e.g. miniature golf
- 67/04 • Table games physically beneficial for the human body, modelled on outdoor sports, e.g. table tennis (other table games A63F)
- 67/06 • Ring or disc tossing games
- 67/08 • Juggling or spinning ball games played as games of skill
- 67/10 • Games with thread-suspended or swingably- mounted bodies, e.g. balls, pointed bodies shaped as birds, animals, or the like, for aiming at and hitting targets (games using a bat with a ball tethered thereto A63B 67/20; pin games with tethered balls A63D 7/00)
- 67/12 • Flip games
- 67/14 • Curling stone; Shuffleboard; Similar sliding games
- 67/16 • Tethered aerial top or spinner games
- 67/18 • Badminton, shuttlecock, or like games with feathered missiles

**A63C SKATES; SKIS; ROLLER SKATES; DESIGN OR LAYOUT OF COURTS, RINKS OR THE LIKE** (devices for underwater sports A63B 31/00, A63B 33/00, B63C 11/00; devices for gliding on water, e.g. water skis, B63B 35/79, B63B 35/81, B63B 35/83) [5]

**Subclass index**

**SKATES**

Ice skates.....1/00, 3/00  
Roller skates.....17/00

**SKIS, SNOW SHOES**

Snow skis.....5/00-11/00  
Snow shoes.....13/00

**PLAYING-COURTS, RINKS, BOWLING GREENS OR AREAS FOR WATER-SKIING, COVERS**

THEREFOR.....19/00

- 67/20 • Games using a bat with a ball tethered thereto [3]
- 67/22 • • the bat having one or more holes therein [3]

**69/00 Training appliances or apparatus for special sports** (training of parachutists B64D 23/00)

- 69/02 • for fencing
- 69/04 • simulating the movement of horses (toy animals for riding A63G 19/00)
- 69/06 • for rowing or sculling
- 69/08 • • with water-filled pools
- 69/10 • Swimming instruction apparatus for use without water
- 69/12 • Arrangements in swimming pools for teaching swimming
- 69/14 • • Teaching frames for swimming
- 69/16 • for cycling
- 69/18 • for skiing
- 69/20 • Punching balls
- 69/22 • • mounted on, or suspended from, a fixed support
- 69/24 • • mounted on, or suspended from, a movable support
- 69/26 • • • attached to the human body
- 69/28 • • Attachments located on the balls at opposite points
- 69/30 • • • Resilient attachments
- 69/32 • • with indicating devices
- 69/34 • Boxing or football dummies
- 69/36 • for golf
- 69/38 • for tennis
- 69/40 • Stationarily-arranged devices for projecting balls (traps for clay-pigeon targets F41J 9/18)

**71/00 Games or sports accessories not covered in groups A63B 1/00-A63B 69/00** (starting appliances A63K 3/02)

- 71/02 • for large-room or outdoor sporting games
- 71/04 • for small-room or indoor sporting games
- 71/06 • Indicating or scoring devices for games or players
- 71/08 • Body-protectors for players or sportsmen (protective clothing or garments for sporting purposes A41D 13/00)
- 71/10 • • for the head (in the form of caps or hats A42B 1/08; helmets A42B 3/00)
- 71/12 • • for the body or the legs
- 71/14 • • for the hands, e.g. baseball, boxing, or golfing gloves (archer's finger tabs F41B 5/16)
- 71/16 • • • air-filled

**Skates; Accessories for skating**

- 1/00 Skates** (roller skates or skate boards A63C 17/00)
- 1/02 • rigidly mounted on the sole of the boot
  - 1/04 • fastened by means of clamps
  - 1/06 • • with sole and heel plates each equipped with clamps
  - 1/08 • • with simultaneously-tightened sole and heel clamps
  - 1/10 • • tightened by the movement of the foot
  - 1/12 • • tightened by lateral swinging or shifting of the blade or of the whole skate
  - 1/14 • • tightened by means of springs
  - 1/16 • • Special structure of the clamp fastening devices
  - 1/18 • fastened by means of straps
  - 1/20 • with fastening means on special metal parts
  - 1/22 • with special foot-plates of the boot
  - 1/24 • • Elastic plates
  - 1/26 • • divided into two parts permitting adjustment to the size of the foot
  - 1/28 • • Pivotaly-mounted plates
  - 1/30 • with special blades
  - 1/32 • • Special constructions of the simple blade
  - 1/34 • • Multi-part blades
  - 1/36 • • with several blades
  - 1/38 • of the tubular type
  - 1/40 • manufactured of one piece of material
  - 1/42 • Manufacture of skates
- 3/00 Accessories for skates**
- 3/02 • Supports for the foot-joint (footwear with foot-supporting parts A43B 7/14)
  - 3/04 • Supporting frames or gliders for skaters
  - 3/06 • Supports for use whilst strapping skates on to boots
  - 3/08 • Special spikes for the blades of skates
  - 3/10 • Auxiliary devices for sharpening blades
  - 3/12 • Guards for skate blades
  - 3/14 • Keys for skates

**Skis; Accessories for skiing**

- 5/00 Skis; Ski vehicles** (sledges with runners, e.g. ski-bobs, B62B 13/00)
- 5/02 • collapsible; divided
  - 5/025 • Short skis [4]
  - 5/03 • Mono-skis [4]
  - 5/035 • Skis with ground engaging rolls or belts [4]
  - 5/04 • Structure of the ski surface [4]
  - 5/044 • • of the running sole [4]
  - 5/048 • • of the edges [4]
  - 5/052 • • of the tips or rear ends [4]
  - 5/056 • • Materials for the running sole [4]
  - 5/06 • Special devices on parts of the skis, e.g. steering devices
  - 5/065 • • Anti-crossing devices [4]
  - 5/07 • • Means for adjusting stiffness of skis
  - 5/075 • • Vibration-dampers (vibration dampers per se F16F 7/00) [4]
  - 5/08 • Motor-driven skis (A63C 5/035 takes precedence) [4]
  - 5/11 • Skis combined with sails or the like [4]
  - 5/12 • Making of skis; Selection of particular materials (materials for the running sole A63C 5/056) [4]
  - 5/14 • • using synthetic materials; having a plurality of bonded layers [4]

- 5/16 • Devices enabling skis to be used whilst held in a particular configuration with respect to each other, e.g. for training purposes [4]
- 7/00 Devices preventing skis from slipping back; Ski-stoppers or ski-brakes [4]**
- 7/02 • Skins; Substitutes for skins
  - 7/04 • Fastening-devices for skins
  - 7/06 • Tooth-shaped running sole-plates
  - 7/08 • Stoppage blades attachable to the skis in such manner that these blades are permanently in the operative position
  - 7/10 • Hinged stoppage blades attachable to the skis in such manner that these blades can be moved out of the operative position
  - 7/12 • Clamp-irons preventing lateral slipping
- 9/00 Ski bindings**
- 9/02 • Non-self-releasing bindings with swivel sole-plate or swivel parts, i.e. Ellefsen-type
  - 9/04 • Non-self-releasing long strap bindings
  - 9/06 • Non-self-releasing heel-engaging cable bindings fastened to the front end of the ski
  - 9/08 • yieldable or self-releasing in the event of an accident, i.e. safety bindings
  - 9/081 • • with swivel sole-plate
  - 9/082 • • with swivel heel-plate
  - 9/083 • • with loosenable cable strap
  - 9/084 • • with heel hold-downs, e.g. swingable
  - 9/085 • • with sole hold-downs, e.g. swingable
  - 9/086 • • using parts which are fixed on the shoe of the user and are releasable from the ski binding
  - 9/088 • • with electronically controlled locking devices [4]
  - 9/10 • Non-self-releasing toe jaw-irons; Non-self-releasing binding hooks made of one piece
  - 9/12 • Non-self-releasing elastic heel-straps
  - 9/14 • Non-self-releasing bindings without heel-straps, but with both guiding cheeks and toe-straps
  - 9/16 • Non-self-releasing bindings without straps, but with guiding cheeks
  - 9/18 • Non-self-releasing bindings without heel-straps, but with a clamping device arranged at the front end of, or behind, the binding
  - 9/20 • Non-self-releasing bindings with special sole edge holders instead of toe-straps
  - 9/22 • Arrangements for adjusting the toe-clamps
  - 9/24 • Tighteners for ski bindings (tighteners for self-releasing ski bindings A63C 9/08)
- 11/00 Accessories for skis** (fittings on vehicles for carrying skis B60R 9/12)
- 11/02 • Devices for stretching, clamping or pressing skis for transportation or storage [4]
  - 11/04 • for treating skis
  - 11/06 • • Edge-sharpeners
  - 11/08 • • Apparatus for waxing or dewaxing (ski waxes C09G 3/00)
  - 11/10 • Apparatus for towing skis
  - 11/12 • Apparatus for hooking the heel part of the boot to the ski
  - 11/14 • Apparatus for repairing damaged skis
  - 11/16 • Special devices on boots for fastening skis thereto (A63C 9/00 takes precedence)
  - 11/18 • Devices for removing snow from skis, ski-bindings or ski-boots
  - 11/20 • Snow-protectors on skis

- 11/22 • Ski-sticks
- 11/24 • • Rings for ski-sticks
- 11/26 • Devices for use in mounting ski-bindings to skis, e.g. jigs [4]

### 13/00 Snow shoes

- 13/02 • Snow shoe rings

### 17/00 Roller skates; Skate-boards [4]

- 17/01 • Skate-boards (A63C 17/02-A63C 17/28 take precedence) [4]
- 17/02 • with wheels arranged in two pairs
- 17/04 • with wheels arranged otherwise than in two pairs
- 17/06 • • single-track type
- 17/08 • • • single-wheel type
- 17/10 • with endless tracks
- 17/12 • with driving mechanisms
- 17/14 • with brakes, e.g. toe stoppers, freewheel roller clutches
- 17/16 • for use on specially shaped or arranged runways
- 17/18 • convertible into ice or snow-running skates
- 17/20 • with fixable wheels permitting the skates to be used for walking
- 17/22 • Wheels for roller skates

- 17/24 • • with ball-shaped or spherical running surfaces
- 17/26 • with special auxiliary arrangements, e.g. illuminating, marking, or push-off devices
- 17/28 • with arrangements for sitting

### 19/00 Design or layout of playing courts, rinks, bowling greens or areas for water-skiing; Covers therefor

- (water roundabouts A63G 3/00; construction of surfaces or foundations E01C; roofs E04B 7/00; buildings or groups of buildings for sports E04H 3/10; swimming or splash baths or pools E04H 4/00; coverings for baths E04H 4/06) [4]
- 19/02 • Shaping of the surface of courts according to the necessities of the different games
- 19/04 • Mats or carpets for courts
- 19/06 • Apparatus for setting-out or dividing courts
- 19/08 • • Mechanical means for marking-out
- 19/10 • Ice-skating or roller-skating rinks; Slopes or trails for skiing, ski-jumping or tobogganing (chutes A63G 21/00; ski-lifts B61B 11/00; making or maintaining surfaces of snow or ice suitable for traffic or sporting purposes E01H 4/00; removing snow or ice E01H 5/00; production of ice or snow F25C 3/00) [4]
- 19/12 • Removable protective covers for courts, rinks or games pitches or the like [4]

**A63D BOWLING-ALLEYS; BOWLING GAMES; BOCCIA; BOWLS; BAGATELLE; BILLIARDS** (indoor games using small moving playing bodies, e.g. balls, A63F 7/00)

#### Subclass index

BILLIARDS..... 13/00, 15/00  
BOWLING GAMES..... 1/00-9/00, 13/00

### 1/00 Bowling-alleys; Boccia courts (bowling greens A63C 19/00)

- 1/02 • collapsible; portable
- 1/04 • Form or material of the surface; Pin-stands integral with the surface
- 1/06 • Adjusting apparatus; Stands for players
- 1/08 • Tracks for returning or circulating the balls

### 3/00 Table alleys; Miniature bowling-alleys; Bowling games

- 3/02 • Arrangement of devices for propelling or projecting the balls

### 5/00 Accessories for bowling-alleys or table alleys

- 5/02 • Apparatus for trapping or lifting the balls; Separate devices for returning the balls
- 5/04 • Indicating devices
- 5/06 • Pin stands
- 5/08 • Arrangements for setting-up or taking away pins
- 5/09 • • the pins being assembled in right order before setting down
- 5/10 • Apparatus for cleaning balls, pins, or alleys

### 7/00 Games of pins, e.g. ninepins with tethered balls

### 9/00 Pins

### 13/00 Bagatelle; Similar games (devices for projecting or rolling-off the balls A63F 7/24)

#### Note(s)

In this group, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

- "Bagatelle" means a modification of billiards in which the player's object is to strike the balls so that they, and perhaps other balls, shall fall into numbered holes that determine the score.

### 15/00 Billiards; Billiard tables; Pocket billiards (bagatelles A63D 13/00)

- 15/02 • Billiard tables adapted to rest on ordinary tables or the like
- 15/04 • Billiard tables convertible into other tables, or the like (into beds A47C 17/62)
- 15/06 • Cushions or fastenings therefor
- 15/08 • Cues
- 15/10 • • Apparatus for holding or handing-up cues
- 15/12 • • Tip fastenings
- 15/14 • • Means for roughening the cue-tips
- 15/16 • Chalk holders
- 15/20 • Scoring or registering devices

**A63F CARD, BOARD, OR ROULETTE GAMES; INDOOR GAMES USING SMALL MOVING PLAYING BODIES; GAMES NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR** (data-processing equipment characterised by a specific application for game playing G06F 17/00, G06F 19/00) [5]

- 1/00 Card games** (aspects of games using an electronically generated display having two or more dimensions showing representations related to the game A63F 13/00) [1, 7]
- 1/02 • Cards; Special shapes of cards (card-printing methods B41K, B41M)
- 1/04 • Card games combined with other games
- 1/06 • Card game appurtenances
- 1/08 • • Card-presses
- 1/10 • • Card-holders
- 1/12 • • Card-shufflers
- 1/14 • • Card-dealers
- 1/16 • • Apparatus for indicating the dealer
- 1/18 • • Scoring or registering devices; Indicators (A63F 1/16 takes precedence; time-testing devices G07C)
- 3/00 Board games; Raffle games** (racing games, traffic games, or obstacle games characterised by figures moved by action of the players A63F 9/14; aspects of games using an electronically generated display having two or more dimensions showing representations related to the game A63F 13/00) [1, 7]
- 3/02 • Chess; Similar board games
- 3/04 • Geographical or like games
- 3/06 • Lottos or bingo games; Systems, apparatus or devices for checking such games [5]
- 3/08 • Raffle games that can be played by a fairly large number of people
- 5/00 Roulette games** (aspects of games using an electronically generated display having two or more dimensions showing representations related to the game A63F 13/00) [1, 7]
- 5/02 • Roulette-like ball games
- 5/04 • Disc roulettes; Dial roulettes; Teetotums; Dice-tops
- 7/00 Indoor games using small moving playing bodies, e.g. balls, discs or blocks** (board games, raffle games A63F 3/00; roulette games A63F 5/00; aspects of games using an electronically generated display having two or more dimensions showing representations related to the game A63F 13/00; miniature bowling games A63D 3/00; bagatelle or similar games A63D 13/00; billiards, pocket billiards A63D 15/00) [1, 7]
- 7/02 • using falling playing bodies or playing bodies running on an inclined surface, e.g. pinball games
- 7/04 • using balls to be shaken or rolled in small boxes
- 7/06 • Games simulating outdoor ball games, e.g. hockey (if physically beneficial for the human body A63B 67/00)
- 7/07 • • in which the playing bodies contact, or are supported by, the playing surface continuously, e.g. using air-cushion support [3]
- 7/20 • • in which the playing bodies are projected through the air [3]
- 7/22 • Accessories; Details [3]
- 7/24 • • Devices controlled by the player to project or roll-off the playing bodies (arrangement of such devices in table alleys, miniature bowling-alleys or bowling games A63D 3/02; in bagatelle or billiards A63D 13/00, A63D 15/00) [3]
- 7/26 • • • electric or magnetic [3]
- 7/28 • • • using gravity [3]
- 7/30 • • Obstacles; Targets; Scoring or pocketing devices; Playing-body-actuated sensors, e.g. switches; Tilt indicators [3]
- 7/32 • • • Apparatus for varying scoring values [3]
- 7/34 • • Other devices for handling the playing bodies, e.g. bonus ball return means [3]
- 7/36 • • Constructional details not covered by groups A63F 7/24-A63F 7/34, e.g. frames, game boards, guide tracks [3]
- 7/38 • • • Playing surfaces movable during play [3]
- 7/40 • • • Balls or other moving playing bodies, e.g. pinballs, discs [3]
- 9/00 Games not otherwise provided for** (aspects of games using an electronically generated display having two or more dimensions showing representations related to the game A63F 13/00) [1, 7]
- 9/02 • Shooting or hurling games (throwing-implements for sports or recreational use A63B 65/00; throwing or projecting toys *per se* A63H 33/18; targets, target ranges, bullet catchers F41J) [3]
- 9/04 • Dice (dice-tops A63F 5/04); Dice-boxes; Mechanical dice-throwing devices
- 9/06 • Patience; Other games for self-amusement (balls to be shaken in small boxes A63F 7/04)
- 9/08 • • Puzzles provided with elements movable in relation to each other
- 9/10 • • Two-dimensional jig-saw puzzles
- 9/12 • • Three-dimensional jig-saw puzzles
- 9/14 • Racing games, traffic games, or obstacle games characterised by figures moved by action of the players (games using dice A63F 3/00)
- 9/16 • Spinning-top games
- 9/18 • Question-and-answer games
- 9/20 • Dominoes or like games; Mah-Jongg games
- 9/24 • Games using electronic circuits not otherwise provided for [5]
- 9/26 • Balancing games, i.e. bringing elements into or out of balance [7]
- 9/28 • Chain-reaction games with toppling pieces; Dispensers or positioning devices therefor [7]
- 9/30 • Capturing games for grabbing or trapping objects, e.g. fishing games [7]
- 9/32 • Games with a collection of long sticks, e.g. mikado® (A63F 9/30 takes precedence) [7]
- 9/34 • Games using magnetically moved or magnetically held pieces, not provided for in other subgroups of group A63F 9/00 [7]
- 11/00 Game accessories of general use** [7]
- Note(s)**
- Game accessories specially adapted for a particular type of game are classified in one of the groups A63F 1/00-A63F 9/00 covering the particular game.

13/00	<b>Aspects of games using an electronically generated display having two or more dimensions, e.g. on a television screen, showing representations related to the game</b> (electric circuitry, <u>see</u> the relevant subclasses therefor) [7]	13/06	• • using player-operated means for controlling the position of a specific area on the display [7]
13/02	• Accessories (input or output arrangements for electrical digital computers G06F 3/00) [7]	13/08	• Constructional details or arrangements, e.g. housing, wiring, connections, cabinets, not otherwise provided for [7]
13/04	• • for aiming at specific areas on the display, e.g. with photodetecting means [7]	13/10	• Control of the course of the game, e.g. start, progress, end [7]
		13/12	• involving interaction between a plurality of game devices, e.g. transmission or distribution systems [7]
<b>A63G</b>	<b>MERRY-GO-ROUNDS; SWINGS; ROCKING-HORSES</b> (swings or rockinghorses as nursery furniture A47D 13/10); <b>CHUTES; SWITCHBACKS; SIMILAR DEVICES FOR PUBLIC AMUSEMENT</b>		

#### Subclass index

ROUNDAABOUTS.....	1/00-7/00
SWINGS, SEE-SAWS, GREAT WHEELS.....	9/00, 11/00, 13/00, 27/00
ROCKING HORSES, OTHER TOY ANIMALS FOR RIDING.....	13/00-19/00
CHUTES, SLIDES, SIMILAR APPARATUS.....	21/00, 23/00, 25/00, 29/00
OTHER APPARATUS FOR PUBLIC AMUSEMENT.....	31/00, 33/00

#### Merry-go-rounds or roundabouts

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Roundabouts</b>
1/02	• with masking tunnels
1/04	• with toboggans
1/06	• with several concentric turntables
1/08	• power-driven
1/10	• • electrically driven
1/12	• rotated by the passengers themselves
1/14	• • rotated by pushing the feet against a fixed surface or by running
1/16	• • rotated by means of grip-rings
1/18	• • rotated by oars
1/20	• • rotated by swinging or rocking
1/22	• with bicycles serving as seats
1/24	• with seats performing movements in a horizontal plane, other than circular movements
1/26	• • with seats moving with a planetary motion in a horizontal plane
1/28	• with centrifugally-swingable suspended seats
1/30	• with seats moving up-and-down, e.g. figure-seats
1/32	• with seats two or more of which form a see-saw
1/34	• with seats moving in an undulating track
1/36	• with movably-mounted swing-like seats not moving radially outwards
1/38	• with rocking turntables
1/40	• • and oblique masts
1/42	• • cone-like shaped
1/44	• with turntables moved up and down
1/46	• • moved by a screw spindle
1/48	• with turntables and movably-mounted vehicles thereon which move to the outside when the roundabout is rotated
<b>3/00</b>	<b>Water roundabouts, e.g. freely floating</b>
3/02	• with floating seats
3/04	• for swimmers
3/06	• Submarine roundabouts
<b>4/00</b>	<b>Accessories for roundabouts not restricted to one of groups A63G 1/00 or A63G 3/00</b>

#### **5/00 Games on roundabouts**

#### **7/00 Up-and-down-hill tracks; Switchbacks**

#### Swings; See-saws; Rocking horses; Other toy animals for riding [3]

#### **9/00 Swings**

9/02	• with two suspensory axles
9/04	• with moving supporting-points
9/06	• Climbing swings
9/08	• Looping-the loop swings
9/10	• with seats shaped as riding horses, breeches, or the like
9/12	• Special fastenings of the suspensory point
9/14	• elastically suspended
9/16	• Driving mechanisms, such as ropes, gear, belt, motor drive
9/18	• • moved by rocking runners
9/20	• • Oar swings
9/22	• Brakes

#### **11/00 See-saws**

#### **13/00 Cradle swings; Rocking-horses; Like devices resting on the ground**

13/02	• Cradle swings
13/04	• • Spring-supported cradle swings
13/06	• Rocking-horses
13/08	• • mounted on links or springs
13/10	• • with dismountable runners usable for other purposes

#### **15/00 Rocking horses on runners adapted for progressive movement**

15/02	• with divided runners
15/04	• with arrangements for pushing forward

#### **17/00 Hobby-horses**

#### **19/00 Toy animals for riding**

## A63G

- 19/02 • made to travel by riding movements other than by ratchet wheels
- 19/04 • with eccentric wheels
- 19/06 • Swingably-mounted toy animals for riding made to travel by means of parallelogram-joints
- 19/08 • made to travel by ratchet-wheels, e.g. by stretching the legs
- 19/10 • • by pressing the seats or saddles up-and-down
- 19/12 • • by performing oscillations
- 19/14 • • by moving the stirrups or pedals
- 19/16 • made to travel by punting
- 19/18 • made to travel by pacing
- 19/20 • motor-driven

### Chutes; Slides; Similar apparatus for public amusement

- 21/00 Chutes; Helter-skelters**
- 21/02 • without rails
- 21/04 • with fixed rails
- 21/06 • with passing arrangements for cars
- 21/08 • with additional rotation of cars
- 21/10 • with spiral tracks
- 21/12 • with special cars, e.g. horse-shaped
- 21/14 • with driven slideways
- 21/16 • with forced removal of the passenger from the seat
- 21/18 • Water-chutes
- 21/20 • Slideways with movably suspended cars, or with cars moving on ropes, or the like
- 21/22 • Suspended slideways

## A63H TOYS, e.g. TOPS, DOLLS, HOOPS, BUILDING BLOCKS

### Subclass index

MECHANICALLY OR GRAVITY DRIVEN TOY FIGURES.....	11/00, 13/00, 15/00
TOY VEHICLES	
Model railways, toy trains.....	19/00, 21/00
Other toy vehicles; tracks therefor; toy engines.....	17/00, 23/00, 27/00, 18/00, 25/00
TOPS; DOLLS, TOY ANIMALS.....	1/00, 3/00
OTHER TOYS.....	5/00, 7/00, 33/00
MANUFACTURE OF DOLLS OR TOY FIGURES.....	9/00
DRIVING MECHANISM; CONTROLLING; GEARING.....	29/00, 30/00, 31/00
JOKES, CONFETTI.....	37/00

- 1/00 Tops** (flying tops A63H 27/127)
- 1/02 • with detachable winding devices
- 1/04 • • with string or band winding devices
- 1/06 • with integral winding devices
- 1/08 • with arrangements for winding-up by blowing
- 1/10 • able to be spun by whirling the axis with both hands
- 1/12 • Whip tops; Top whips
- 1/16 • Hopping, dancing, or curve-drawing tops
- 1/18 • Double tops; Multiple tops mounted in or on one another
- 1/20 • with figure-like features; with movable objects, especially figures
- 1/22 • Colour tops
- 1/24 • with illuminating arrangements
- 1/26 • emitting blasts or explosions
- 1/28 • Musical tops

- 23/00 Rotating or rocking pots**
- 25/00 Autocar-like self-drivers; Runways therefor**
- 27/00 Russian swings; Great wheels, e.g. Ferris wheels**
- 27/02 • with special movements of the seat-carriers
- 27/04 • with tiltable axis
- 27/06 • rolling on the level
- 27/08 • mounted on roundabouts
- 29/00 Rolling drums turning somersaults with or without rolling seats**
- 29/02 • with seats staying at the bottom of the drum

### Other apparatus for public amusement

- 31/00 Amusement arrangements**
- 31/02 • with moving substructures
- 31/04 • • with jolting substructures
- 31/06 • • with undulatory motion of the substructure
- 31/08 • • with looping, hopping, or throwing motions of the substructure
- 31/10 • • with escalators or similar moving substructures
- 31/12 • • with inflatable and movable substructures (connection of valves to inflatable elastic bodies B60C 29/00)
- 31/14 • • with planes mounted on springs; with movable planes
- 31/16 • creating illusions of travel
- 33/00 Devices allowing competitions between several persons, not otherwise provided for**

- 1/30 • Climbing tops, e.g. Yo-Yo
- 1/32 • Whirling or spinning discs driven by twisted cords

### Dolls; Figures; Musical toys

- 3/00 Dolls**
- Note(s)**
- In this group, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
  - "doll" includes a toy animal.
- 3/02 • made of fabrics or stuffed
- 3/04 • with deformable framework
- 3/06 • Air-filled or inflatable toy figures
- 3/08 • of flat paper to be cut-out, folded, or clothed



- 3/10 • Flat toy figures provided with limbs, with or without arrangements for making them stand up (A63H 3/08 takes precedence) [4]
- 3/12 • Double-faced dolls
- 3/14 • into which the fingers of the hand can be inserted, e.g. hand-puppets
- 3/16 • made of parts that can be put together
- 3/18 • Jumping jacks
- 3/20 • with parts moved due to movements of other parts, e.g. limbs
- 3/24 • Drinking dolls; Dolls producing tears; Wetting dolls
- 3/26 • Floating dolls
- 3/28 • Arrangements of sound-producing means in dolls; Means in dolls for producing sounds
- 3/31 • • Bellows, cylinders or the like for sound production
- 3/33 • • Other sound-producing means specially adapted for dolls
- 3/36 • Details; Accessories
- 3/38 • • Dolls' eyes
- 3/40 • • • movable
- 3/42 • • • Manufacture of eyes
- 3/44 • • Dolls' hair or wigs; Eyelashes; Eyebrows
- 3/46 • • Connections for limbs
- 3/48 • • Mounting of parts within dolls, e.g. automatic eyes
- 3/50 • • Frames, stands, or wheels for dolls or toy animals
- 3/52 • • Dolls' houses, furniture, or other equipment; Dolls' clothing (dolls' footwear A43B 3/28)

**5/00 Musical or noise-producing devices for additional toy effects other than acoustical** (musical tops A63H 1/28; hand-thrown impact-exploded noise makers F42B 4/16)

- 5/04 • Pistols or machine guns operated without detonators; Crackers (firecrackers F42B 4/04)

**7/00 Toy figures led or propelled by the user**

- 7/02 • by pushing or drawing
- 7/04 • • moving together with a toy vehicle
- 7/06 • • with feet formed by rotary members

**9/00 Special methods or compositions for the manufacture of dolls, toy animals, toy figures, or parts thereof**

**Mechanically or gravity driven toy figures**

**11/00 Self-movable toy figures**

- 11/02 • moved by vibrations produced by rotating eccentric weights
- 11/04 • Climbing figures moving up-and-down
- 11/06 • Jumping toys
- 11/08 • Toys performing somersaults
- 11/10 • Figure toys with single- or multiple-axle undercarriages, by which the figures perform a realistic running motion when the toy is moving over the floor
- 11/12 • • Wheeled toys with figures performing a wriggling motion when moving
- 11/14 • Mechanically-moved walking figures balanced by gyrostatic effects
- 11/18 • Figure toys which perform a realistic walking motion [4]
- 11/20 • • with pairs of legs, e.g. horses [4]

**13/00 Toy figures with self-moving parts, with or without movement of the toy as a whole**

- 13/02 • imitating natural actions, e.g. catching a mouse by a cat, the kicking of an animal

- 13/03 • • Egg-laying toy animals [4]
- 13/04 • • Mechanical figures imitating the movement of players or workers
- 13/06 • • • imitating boxing or fighting
- 13/08 • • • able to perform military exercises
- 13/10 • • • shooting arrows or other missiles
- 13/12 • • • Gymnastic or acrobatic toy figures
- 13/14 • • • Rope-jumping toy figures
- 13/15 • • • imitating drawing or writing [4]
- 13/16 • Boxes from which figures jump
- 13/18 • Toy swinging chairs; Rocking-figure toys
- 13/20 • Toy roundabouts with moving figures; Toy models of fairs or the like, with moving figures

**15/00 Other gravity-operated toy figures**

- 15/02 • Figures staggering down an inclined path by means of the gravity effect
- 15/04 • Toy figures swinging about a point above the centre of gravity
- 15/06 • Self-righting toys
- 15/08 • Tumbling toy figures operated by balls enclosed therein

**Toy vehicles; Toy engines**

**17/00 Toy vehicles, e.g. with self-drive; Accessories therefor**

- 17/02 • convertible into other forms under the action of impact or shock, e.g. arrangements for imitating accidents
- 17/045 • shaped as armoured cars, tanks or the like [4]
- 17/05 • Trucks; Lorries
- 17/06 • • with tipping bodies
- 17/08 • • carrying a mechanically-raised ladder
- 17/10 • • carrying a tank for transporting liquids
- 17/12 • with cranes, winches or the like
- 17/14 • Endless-track automobiles or trucks
- 17/16 • in the form of a bicycle, with or without riders thereon
- 17/18 • Tricycles, e.g. with moving figures
- 17/21 • shaped as motorcycles with or without figures [4]
- 17/22 • Scooters with driver figure propelled by their wheels or by movement of the figure
- 17/24 • shaped as sledges, sleighs, or bobsleighs with or without figures
- 17/25 • Other wheeled vehicles with moving figures
- 17/26 • Details; Accessories (drive mechanisms A63H 29/00)
- 17/267 • • Mounting wheels on the chassis [4]
- 17/273 • • Opening or closing mechanisms for doors or the like [4]
- 17/28 • • Electric lighting systems
- 17/30 • • Direction-indicators
- 17/32 • • Acoustical or optical signalling devices
- 17/34 • • Arrangements for imitating the noise of motors
- 17/36 • • Steering-mechanisms for toy vehicles
- 17/38 • • • actuated by hand
- 17/385 • • • remotely controlled [4]
- 17/39 • • • radio controlled [4]
- 17/395 • • • steered by programme [4]
- 17/40 • • • Toy vehicles automatically steering or reversing by collision with an obstacle
- 17/41 • • • Toy vehicles prevented from falling off the supporting surface by automatic steering or reversing [4]
- 17/42 • • Automatic stopping or braking arrangements

- 17/44 • • Toy garages for receiving toy vehicles; Filling stations
  - 18/00 Highways or trackways for toys** (railway permanent way A63H 19/30; for special railways A63H 21/00); **Propulsion by special interaction between vehicle and track**
    - 18/02 • Construction or arrangement of the trackway
    - 18/04 • • Up-and-down-hill trackways (A63H 18/06 takes precedence)
    - 18/06 • • designed to cause movement of a vehicle by alteration of the inclination of part of the trackway
    - 18/08 • with mechanical means for guiding or steering
    - 18/10 • with magnetic means for steering
    - 18/12 • Electric current supply to toy vehicles through the track
    - 18/14 • Drives arranged in the track, e.g. endless conveying means, magnets, driving-discs
    - 18/16 • Control of vehicle drives by interaction between vehicle and track; Control of track elements by vehicles
  - 19/00 Model railways** (propulsion by special interaction between vehicle and track A63H 18/00)
    - 19/02 • Locomotives; Motor coaches
    - 19/04 • • spring-driven
    - 19/06 • • Steam-driven locomotives; Engines therefor
    - 19/08 • • • Boilers for locomotives
    - 19/10 • • electrically driven
    - 19/12 • • • with electric reversing gear
    - 19/14 • • Arrangements for imitating locomotive features, e.g. whistling, signalling, puffing
    - 19/15 • Special types of cars
    - 19/16 • Parts for model railway vehicles
    - 19/18 • • Car coupling or uncoupling mechanisms
    - 19/20 • • Illuminating arrangements
    - 19/22 • • Wheels; Wheel axles; Bogies
    - 19/24 • Electric toy railways; Systems therefor
    - 19/26 • • Toy vehicles with overhead trolley-wire; Trolley-buses
    - 19/28 • Mechanical toy railway systems
    - 19/30 • Permanent way; Rails; Rail-joint connections
    - 19/32 • • Switches or points; Operating means therefor
    - 19/34 • Bridges; Stations; Signalling systems
    - 19/36 • Model railway structures, e.g. kinds of arrangement of several units in containers, or on plates, or in combination with scenics for toy purposes
  - 21/00 Other toy railways**
    - 21/02 • with cable- or rail-suspended vehicles
    - 21/04 • Mono-railways, e.g. with vehicles embracing the rail in the form of a saddle (A63H 21/02 takes precedence)
  - 23/00 Toy boats; Floating toys; Other aquatic toy devices [2]**
    - 23/02 • Boats; Sailing boats
    - 23/04 • • Self-propelled boats, ships or submarines
    - 23/06 • • • jet-propelled
    - 23/08 • Cartesian or other divers
    - 23/10 • Other water toys, floating toys, or like buoyant toys
    - 23/12 • • Waterborne toy projectiles; Knock-apart toys; Exploding ship toys
    - 23/14 • • Special drives
    - 23/16 • • Aquatic toy installations; Harbour arrangements
  - 25/00 Toy steam, gas, or compressed-air engines** (for locomotives A63H 19/06)
    - 25/02 • Distributing-gear
  - 27/00 Toy aircraft; Other flying toys** (toys with parachutes A63H 33/20)
    - 27/01 • Toy aircraft with flexible or folded wings [4]
    - 27/04 • Captive toy aircraft
    - 27/08 • Kites
    - 27/10 • Balloons
    - 27/127 • Flying toys capable of landing or taking-off vertically; Flying tops [4]
    - 27/133 • • Helicopters; Gyroplanes (A63H 27/04 takes precedence) [4]
    - 27/14 • Starting or launching devices for toy aircraft; Arrangements on toy aircraft for starting or launching
    - 27/16 • Flying toys made of folded paper [4]
    - 27/18 • Constructional features of fuselages, wings or the like, e.g. for model aircraft [4]
    - 27/20 • Transmission systems for actuating flying control surfaces, lift-increasing flaps or the like [4]
    - 27/22 • Self-propelled toy aircraft, e.g. with extensible rubber bands (A63H 27/04, A63H 27/127 take precedence) [4]
    - 27/24 • • combustion engine or electric motor propelled [4]
    - 27/26 • • • Jet-propelled flying toys, e.g. aeroplanes (A63H 27/04, A63H 27/127 take precedence) [4]
    - 27/28 • Toy ornithopters [4]
    - 27/30 • Features common to propellers for model aircraft, e.g. constructional features (for helicopters A63H 27/133) [4]
    - 27/32 • Alighting gear for toy aircraft, e.g. wheeled type, floats [4]
- Driving or controlling toys, e.g. toy vehicles**
- 29/00 Drive mechanisms for toys in general**
    - 29/02 • Clockwork mechanisms
    - 29/04 • • Helical-spring driving mechanisms
    - 29/06 • • Other elements therefor
    - 29/08 • Driving mechanisms actuated by balls or weights
    - 29/10 • Driving mechanisms actuated by flowing media
    - 29/12 • • by a sand stream
    - 29/14 • • by a water stream
    - 29/16 • • by steam or compressed air
    - 29/18 • Driving mechanisms with extensible rubber bands
    - 29/20 • Flywheel driving mechanisms
    - 29/22 • Electric drives (power supply through track A63H 18/12)
    - 29/24 • Details or accessories for drive mechanisms, e.g. means for winding-up or starting toy engines
  - 30/00 Remote-control arrangements specially adapted for toys, e.g. for toy vehicles** (remotely controlled steering mechanisms for toy vehicles A63H 17/385; for model railways A63H 19/24, A63H 19/28) [4]
    - 30/02 • Electrical arrangements
    - 30/04 • • using wireless transmission
    - 30/06 • Hydraulic or pneumatic arrangements
  - 31/00 Gearing for toys**
    - 31/02 • Screw-spindle mechanisms
    - 31/04 • Friction mechanisms
    - 31/06 • Belt or string gear

- 31/08 • Gear-control mechanisms; Gears for imparting a reciprocating motion
- 31/10 • Gearing mechanisms actuated by movable wires enclosed in flexible tubes

### 33/00 Other toys

- 33/02 • Toy hoops; Sticks for propelling
- 33/04 • Building blocks, strips, or similar building parts
- 33/06 • • to be assembled without the use of additional elements
- 33/08 • • • provided with complementary holes, grooves, or protuberances, e.g. dovetails
- 33/10 • • to be assembled by means of additional non-adhesive elements
- 33/12 • • • Perforated strips or the like assembled by rods, bolts, or the like
- 33/14 • • specially adapted to be assembled by adhesive or cement
- 33/16 • Models made by folding paper
- 33/18 • Throwing or slinging toys (spring toy guns F41B 7/08)

- 33/20 • Toys with parachutes; Toy parachutes
- 33/22 • Optical, colour, or shadow toys (kaleidoscopes G02B 27/08)
- 33/26 • Magnetic or electric toys (electric drives A63H 29/22)
- 33/28 • Soap-bubble toys; Smoke toys (arrangements for producing smoke images or rings during smoking A24F 13/30)
- 33/30 • Imitations of apparatus, not otherwise provided for, e.g. telephones, weighing-machines or cash-registers [3]
- 33/32 • Moulds, shapes, spades, or the like, for playing with sand
- 33/36 • Sparking toys
- 33/38 • Picture books with additional toy effects, e.g. pop-up or slide displays [4]
- 33/40 • Windmills; Other toys actuated by air currents (driving mechanisms for toys actuated by steam or compressed air A63H 29/16)
- 33/42 • Toy models or toy scenery not otherwise provided for
- 37/00 **Jokes; Confetti, streamers, or other dance favours [4]**

**A63J DEVICES FOR THEATRES, CIRCUSES, OR THE LIKE; CONJURING APPLIANCES OR THE LIKE** (buildings for meetings, entertainments or sports E04H 3/10)

### Subclass index

STAGE OR CIRCUS ARRANGEMENTS.....	1/00-5/00
OTHER VISUAL ENTERTAINMENT.....	13/00-19/00, 25/00, 99/00
OTHER ENTERTAINMENT.....	9/00, 11/00, 99/00
APPARATUS FOR ARTISTES.....	7/00, 21/00

- 1/00 Stage arrangements** (fabrics for theatre decorations, for costumes, for curtains D03D; structural arrangements of stage or theatre E04H)
- 1/02 • Scenery; Curtains; Other decorations; Means for moving same
- 3/00 Equipment for, or arrangement of, circuses or arenas** (circus buildings E04B, E04H)
- 5/00 Auxiliaries for producing special effects on stages, or in circuses or arenas** (lighting therefor F21S)
- 5/02 • Arrangements for making stage effects; Auxiliary stage appliances
- 5/04 • • Arrangements for making sound-effects
- 5/10 • Arrangements for making visible or audible the words spoken
- 5/12 • Apparatus for raising or lowering persons (elevators, escalators or moving walkways B66B)
- 7/00 Auxiliary apparatus for artistes**

- 9/00 Centrifugal tracks, loop-the-loops, or the like** (chutes for public amusement A63G 21/00)
- 11/00 Labyrinths**
- 13/00 Panoramas, dioramas, stereoramas, or the like** (models in general G09B)
- 15/00 Peep-shows, e.g. raree-shows; Kaleidoscopic or other opalescence exhibitions** (colour toys A63H 33/22; kaleidoscopes G02B 27/08)
- 17/00 Apparatus for performing colour-music**
- 19/00 Puppet, marionette, or shadow shows or theatres**
- 21/00 Conjuring appliances; Auxiliary apparatus for conjurers**
- 25/00 Equipment specially adapted for cinemas** (cinematographic projection means G03B) [2009.01]
- 99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2009.01]**

**A63K RACING; RIDING SPORTS; EQUIPMENT OR ACCESSORIES THEREFOR** (stop watches G04F 7/06; timing G07C 1/22; indicating arrangements for variable information by selection or combination of individual elements G09F 9/00)

- 1/00 Race-courses; Race-tracks**
- 1/02 • for greyhounds or other dogs
- 3/00 Equipment or accessories for racing or riding sports**
- 3/02 • Starting-appliances, e.g. starting blocks

**A63K**

3/04 • Hurdles or the like

**99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]**

**A99 SUBJECT MATTER NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR IN THIS SECTION**

**A99Z SUBJECT MATTER NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR IN THIS SECTION [2006.01]**

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

This subclass covers subject matter that:

- a. is not provided for, but is most closely related to, the subject matter covered by the subclasses of this section, and
- b. is not explicitly covered by any subclass of another section.

**99/00 Subject matter not otherwise provided for in this section [2006.01]**